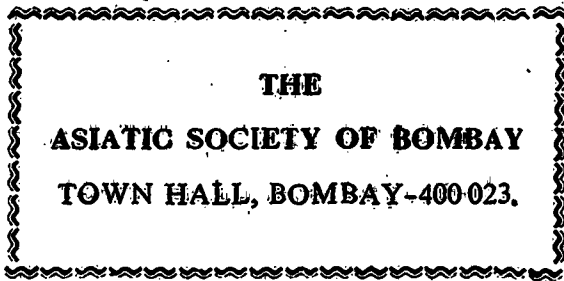




00053537









63537

Peter Langtoft's  
CHRONICLE,

(as illustrated and improv'd by ROBERT OF BRUNNE) from the Death of Cadwalader to the end of K. Edward the First's Reign.

TRANSCRIB'D,

and now first publish'd, from a MS. in the

INNER-TEMPLE LIBRARY

By THOMAS HEARNE, M. A.

TO WHICH ARE ADDED,

Besides a Glossary and other curious Papers.

- (1) A Roll concerning Glustonbury Abbey, being a Survey of all the Estates belonging to that House at the Dissolution, taken by King Hen. the Eighth's order and for his use. (2) An Account of the Hospital of St. Mary Magdalen near Scroby in Nottinghamshire, by John Slacke Master of that Hospital. (3) Two Tracts by an anonymous Author; the first relating to Conquest in Somersetshire, the second concerning Stone-heage.

IN TWO VOLUMES.

OXFORD,

Printed at the THEATER, M. DCC. XXV.

Vol I

Plinius in *Præfatione Natural.*  
*Histor: ad Vespasianum Au-*  
*gustum.*

Res ardua, vetustis novita-  
tem dare, novis auctoritatem,  
obsoletis nitorem, obscuris lu-  
cem, fastiditis gratiam, dubiis  
fidem, omnibus vero naturam,  
& natura suæ omnia.



00053537



## THE CONTENTS.

- I. **T**HE Publisher's Preface. pag. ix.
- II. De Petro Longolosta [*lege Longolosta.*] E Pitseo  
de illustrib. Angliæ Scriptoribus. xciv.
- III. De eodem. E Lelandi Comm. de Scriptorib.  
Brit. xcv.
- IV. De eodem. E Bibliotheca Gesneri. *ibid.*
- V. Concerning Peter de Langtoft. Out of Bp. Nicol-  
son's Eng. Historical Library. xcvi.
- VI. Robert of Brunne's Prologue to his Chronicle.  
*ibid.*
- VII. Extract of a Letter, relating to Robert of  
Brunne and Peter de Langtoft, written  
Vol. I. b from



## THE CONTENTS.

- from London to the Publisher by the late learned John Bridges, Esq. Nov. 28. 1723. CI.
- VIII. Robert of Brunne's Transition (called a Prologue by Mr. Bridges) from the first to the second Part of his Chronicle. CV.
- IX. The Proceedings of the Abbat and Convent of Winchester against Joan of London, A. D. 1285. From an old MS. Fragment of that Age, given to the Publisher by Thomas Ward of Longbridge near Warwick, Esq. CVII.
- X. A Letter concerning the reputed Nunnery at Little-Gidding in Huntingdonshire. From a MS. lent to the Publisher on July 6<sup>th</sup> 1724. by the foresaid Thomas Ward, of Longbridge near Warwick, Esq. CIX.
- XI. A Copy of the printed Pamphlet about the reputed Nunnery at Little-Gidding in Huntingdonshire. CXXV.
- XII. Dr. Wallis's Account of some Passages of his own Life. E Coll. MSS. Smithianis penes Editorem, Vol. 22. p. 38. CXL.
- XIII. An Extract of a Letter from Dr. John Wallis to Dr. John Fell, then Lord Bishop of Oxford, dated April 8. 1685. concerning the Report spread about of Dr. Wallis's deciphering King Charles the 1<sup>st</sup>'s Letters. E Coll. Coll.

## THE CONTENTS.

v

- Coll. MSS. Smithianis penes Editorem, Vol. 22. p.  
54. CLXX.
- XIV. Inscriptiones singulares hactenus ineditæ, Ha-  
driano Beverlando collectore. E Coll. nostris MSS.  
Vol. 75. p. 1. CLXXII.
- XV. Robert of Brunne's account of the raising of  
Stone-henge, from the French of Master Wace, who  
followed Geffry of Monmouth. CLXXXVIII.
- XVI. An Account of St. Wenefride, from an old MS.  
of the Book call'd *Festival* or *Festial* in the hands  
of the above mentioned Thomas Ward, of Long-  
bridge near Warwick, Esq. CXCVI.
- XVII. Extract of a Letter, written to the Publisher  
from Winchester July 4<sup>th</sup>. 1724. by the Reverend  
Mr. Richard Furney, relating to the Election of an  
Abbess of Rumsey Nunnery in Hampshire, *Anno*  
*D.* 1333. which confirms what is asserted in Peter  
Langtoft, that the said Nunnery was founded by K.  
Edgar for an hundred Nunns. CCI.
- XVIII. Extract of another Letter, written to the Pub-  
lisher from Winchester Aug. 15. 1724. by the said Mr.  
Furney, relating to the Number of the Nunns at Rum-  
sey some time before the Dissolution, and to a Note,  
b 2 about

about our old Historians, in a MS. of Tivet at  
Winchester. ccvii.

**XIX.** A Copy of Dr. Richardson's and Mr. Thoresby's  
Letters about the Hospital of St. Mary Magdalen,  
treated of by Mr. Slacke, in the Account mentioned  
below, Num. xxiv. ccvi.

**XX.** Bishop Wren's Narrative, touching Prince  
Charles's Judgment and Affection to the Religion of  
the Church of England. From a MS. in the Ash-  
molean Muséum. ccviii.

**XXI.** Extract of a Letter to the Publisher from Mr.  
Graves of Mickleton in Gloucestershire, concerning  
Campden in that County. With a remarkable  
Passage, upon that occasion, out of an old anony-  
mous MS. Author (stiled John Bever by Dr. Powell)  
in Trinity College Library Oxon. ccxiii.

**XXII.** Peter Langtoft's Chronicle, (as illustrated and  
improv'd by Robert of Brumme) from the Death of  
Cadwalader to the End of K. Edward the First's  
Reign. From a MS. in the Inner-Temple Library. i.

**XXIII.** The Copy of a Roll concerning Glastonbury Abbey, being a Survey of all the  
Estates belonging to that House at the Dissolu-  
tion, taken by King Hen. the Eighth's or-  
des des



THE CONTENTS.

VII

der and for his use. From a MS. in the Hands of a  
Friend at Colchester. 343

XXIV. An Account of the Hospital of St. Mary  
Magdalen near Scroby in Nottinghamshire, by John  
Slacke, Master of that Hospital. From a MS. in the  
Hands of Thomas Frewin, of Lincoln's-Inn, Esq. 389

XXV. A Discourse about some Roman Antiquities  
discover'd near Conquest in Somersetshire, supposed  
to be the Place where the Romans Conquest of Bri-  
tain was compleated. By an anonymous Author.  
Transcrib'd from a MS. lent to the Publisher by  
Mr. James West of Balliol-College, *A. D.* 1722.  
441

XXVI. A Discourse concerning Stone-Henge. From  
another MS. lent to the Publisher by the same  
Friend, Mr. James West, of Balliol-Coll. written in  
the same hand, and by the same anonymous Author.  
480

XXVII. Glossary. 518

XXVIII. Index. 690







THE PUBLISHER'S  
P R E F A C E.

*THE* Robert of Gloucester, mentioned in the printed Life of St. Thomas Cantilupe; different from the Author of the Chronicle, and even from the other Roberts of Gloucester spoke of in my Preface to that Chronicle. §. I. Yet he seems to have been in the vigour of his Age at the time of the Chronicler's Death. A Mistake of Bishop Godwin's. §. II. No reason, from the time in which they lived, to take Robert of Gloucester the Historian and Robert of Gloucester the Secretary to be one and the same person. The Historians in former Times were the Religious, who often lost their first Surnames, and, upon compiling their famous Works, were surnamed anew from the Houses of which they were Members. §. III. Yet there were rather more that retain'd their first Surnames, after they became noted for their Writings. John Wethamstede of a greater character than Matthew Paris. The Historical Passages in Dr. Gascoigne's Theological Dictionary

should be published. §. iv. Among others that retain'd their original Surnames was Peter Langtoft, who, besides his Translation into French Rhythms of Bosenham or Boscam's Life of Thomas à Becket, compiled a Chronicle of England in French. §. v. This Peter Langtoft seems to have died in the beginning of K. Edw. II<sup>d</sup>'s Reign, and to have been buried at Bridlington with much such another Epitaph as that to the memory of Robertus Scriba. §. vi. Were the Obituaries, or Obit Books of Bridlington now remaining, it is probable something certain about his Death might be learned from them. The Diligence of the Monks in registring. Many old Chartularies still in private hands, that ought to be search'd by men of a true genius. The Chronicle of England written by Thomas Blount, Esq; §. vii. Notwithstanding the French Tongue was so much in vogue in Peter Langtoft's Time, yet there were multitudes besides that despised it. The Normans not able utterly to extirpate the Saxon Language. The ill Consequence from the Endeavours that were us'd to that purpose. §. viii. Robert of Brunne one of those that cultivated the English Tongue, and he gained a great Reputation upon that score. This Robert of Brunne lived to a great age, tho' the year in which he died doth not yet occur. §. ix. He was not descended from the Founder of St. Mary Spittle extra Bishop's Gate. His Translation of Peter de Langtoft had it's intended Effect. Many Copies of it formerly, tho' it be now scarce. The

## PREFACE.

XI

*The Stories in it us'd in old time instead of Ballads.*  
§. x. *Robert of Brunne a Man of a facetious merry Temper, yet without any Mixture of Immorality. The diligence of the Monks of Winchester in obstructing the Design of Joan of London. A Passage relating to the sedes stercoraria at Rome from an anonymous MS. Author.* §. xi. *'Tis impossible to give a particular Account of the Life of Robert of Brunne. There are Precedents, as well in ancient as later Times, to justify any one in leaving behind him Memoirs of his own Life. Dr. Wallis left some particulars of this nature. The Dr's. Memorandum at the Beginning of a Book (in the Bodleian Library) containing many Things that he deciphered.* §. xii. *If Robert of Brunne had any Epitaph, it seems to have been short, agreeable to those times, and to be now irretrievable.* §. xiii. *Peter Langtoft's Original, as well as Robert of Brunne's English Work, consists of two Parts, the first Part of which is here omitted, as containing nothing but Geffry of Monmouth. A Passage out of Rastall's Chronicle about Stone-henge.* §. xiv. *The exactness made use of in publishing this piece of ancient History. To gratify some Readers, several Specimens of the French are also made publick with it.* §. xv. *And, for further Satisfaction, the Conclusion of the French MS. that belongs to the Heralds Office, is here inserted in this Preface.* §. xvi. *Out of which MS. is here likewise published a Note concerning Hugo Car-*

*Cardinalis: Actor for auctor in many MSS. The Author of liber festivalis or festialis. A Remark relating to St. Wenefride. §. xvii. Many Things in this Chronicle, that are different from what is related by other Historians. §. xviii. Some of which are here enumerated. §. xix. In lieu of the first Part of Robert of Brunne, several Things are here published of greater use and service. An account of Mr. Andrew Paschal. A Note about Mr. John Gibbon's MSS. Papers in the Heralds Office. A short Account of Dr. Walter Charleton. An Interpolation in Camden, which Mr. Webb did not discover to be such. A Passage relating to Stone-henge from Mr. Camden's MS. Supplement in the hands of the publisher. §. xx. Stone-henge perhaps a British Monument, notwithstanding it might have been a Roman Work. Mr. Camden's Approbation of, and Assistance in, Dr. Holland's Additions, may justify such as cite them for Mr. Camden's own. §. xxi.*

The Robert of Gloucester, mentioned in the printed Life of St. Thomas Cantilupe, different from the Author of the Chronicle, and even from the other Roberts of Gloucester spoke of in my Preface to that Chronicle.

§. I.



JUST after I had published Robert of Gloucester, I had the good fortune to see and converse with a learned, modest and honest Friend of Hereford-shire, (the same, I mean, that, besides his other great assistance

ance<sup>1</sup> in the Work, drew up the Indexes to the celebrated Dr. Hickes's *Thesauris Linguarum Septentrionalium*, and is so excellently well qualify'd to compile the Antiquities of that County<sup>2</sup>, about which he hath many curious Materials) at which time he was pleased to lend me the Life<sup>3</sup> of St. Thomas Cantilupe Bishop of Hereford, which tho' a printed Book, yet is very rare and seldom to be seen, as many Books of the same kind are also very scarce, and, therefore, greedily and industriously pick'd up by such curious Collectors as was the famous Mr. Richard Smith, that writ about Christ's Descent into Hell, and collected most of his Rarities<sup>4</sup> out of the Library of H. Dyson, a person of a very strange, prying and inquisitive genius in the matter of Books, as may appear from many Libraries, there being<sup>5</sup> Books, (chiefly in old English) almost in every Libra-

<sup>1</sup> See the General Preface to Dr. Hickes's *Thesaurus*, p. V. <sup>2</sup> Vide Præf. ad Lelandi Coll. §. 10. <sup>3</sup> Intit'led, *The Life and Gests of S. Thomas Cantilupe Bishop of Hereford and some time before L. Chancellor of England. Extracted out of the authentique Records of his Canonization as to the maine part, Anonymus, Mutt. Paris, Capgrave, Harpsfeld, and others. Collected by R.S.S.J. At Gant, Print.*

*ed by Robert Walker, at the Sign of the Annunciation of our B. Lady. 1674. Svo.* <sup>4</sup> See pag. 371, 372. alias p. 401, 402. or the last leaf. save one of his Auction Catalogue. <sup>5</sup> So in a MS. Note, written by my very learned Friend Mr. Thomas Baker, B. D. of St. John's Coll. in Cambr. at the beginning of my Copy of Mr. Smith's Auction Catalogue, which was given me by the said Mr. Baker.

ry, that have belong'd to him, with his name upon them. I perus'd and read over this Life of Cantilupe with some considerable pleasure and attention, there being many things in it handled in a true rational way, such as becomes a Christian Historian. But the main reason of my speaking of it now is, upon account of the Author's mentioning<sup>1</sup> a Robert of Gloucester, that was Secretary to the said venerable and most holy Bishop at the time of the Bishop's Death, and was afterwards Chancellor of Hereford. At first, one would think, that this Robert of Gloucester (whom the Writer of the Life met with in the very Process of his Canonization) was the Author of the Chronicle that bears his name, but, upon a serious and deliberate consideration of the matter, I conclude him to be a quite different person, and even different also from all the Roberts of Gloucester, that I have mentioned in my Preface<sup>2</sup>, to that Work. Neither is it likely, that, had the Secretary been the Author, he would have passed over in silence his holy Master's Life, and not brought the thread of his History down to that Period, and given a very distinct and particular Account of the Acts of so worthy, religious and conscientious a Prelate, who equall'd in

---

<sup>1</sup> See this Life, pag. 195, &c. <sup>2</sup> §. XXIV.

the great Sanctity and Severity of his Life, and in the exercise of all virtuous and religious Duties, many of the most eminent of the primitive Christians.

§. II. It must, indeed, be granted, that there was so little difference with respect to the time, in which these two Roberts (the Historian and the Secretary) flourished, that the Secretary seems to have been in his full vigour when the other died, which was, as I take it, some little time after the VI<sup>th</sup>. year of K. Edward the First's Reign, which could not, therefore, be long before the Death of Bishop Cantilupe, who was consecrated <sup>2</sup> in Christ Church Canterbury *anno Christi*, 1275. and of his Age about 56, and was cut off by a Feaver <sup>3</sup>, in the 63<sup>d</sup>. year of his Age, at, or rather near to, a Place known by the name of *Monte Fiacone* near Florence, on the 25<sup>th</sup>. <sup>4</sup> of August, though his Festivity were kept on the 2<sup>d</sup>. <sup>5</sup> of October. This I note the rather, because, tho' Bishop Godwin <sup>6</sup> be right with respect to the time of his Death, yet he is

Yet he seems to have been in the vigour of his Age at the time of the Chronicler's Death. A Mistake of Bishop Godwin's.

<sup>1</sup> See my Preface to Rob. of Gloucester's Chron. §. XVII. <sup>2</sup> So the Life, Chap. XI. p. 120. <sup>3</sup> Ibid. Chap. XVII. p. 190. <sup>4</sup> Ibid. p. 195. <sup>5</sup> So in that most rare printed Book, call'd the Missal of Hereford,

whereof I have a Copy in Vellum, in which also his Death (called there *depositio*) is made to happen on the 25<sup>th</sup> of August, or the day after St. Bartholomew's. <sup>6</sup> De Prasulib. Angl. p. 537.

mistaken

mistaken in saying<sup>1</sup>, it was at *Civita Vecchi*,<sup>2</sup> and in his way to Rome, whereas it was really<sup>3</sup> in his way from Rome (after he had happily gained the Point he went thither for) and at the Place I have assigned. Nor does Matthew Westminster<sup>4</sup>, notwithstanding what Godwin says<sup>5</sup>, inform us, that his Death happened as he was going to Rome; which particular is so much the more worthy of notice, because it would otherwise take away that part of the honour which is due to the Bishop, for accomplishing a noble Action in behalf of the Rights of the Church of Hereford, against John Peckham Archbishop of Canterbury, a business, I believe, that no one could have carried with the Pope, but one of Cantilupe's extraordinary Piety, Sincerity, and Learning.

No reason, from the time in which they lived, to take Robert of Gloucester the Historian and Robert of Gloucester the Secretary to be one and the same Person. The Historians in former Times were the Religious, who often lost their first Sir-

§. III. I am aware, that from what I have said about the Age of the Historian and the Secretary, it will be inferr'd by some, that they were one and the same person. But, unless I am much mistaken, they will be presently satisfy'd to the contrary, when they have impartially considered, that the original Sirname<sup>6</sup> of the Histo-

<sup>1</sup> Ibid. <sup>2</sup> Of which the Author of his Life mentions undenyable Proofs, pag. 195. <sup>3</sup> See his Chron. sub an. m. cclxxxvii. <sup>4</sup> P. 537. <sup>5</sup> See my Preface to Rob. of Glouc. §. xxiv.



rian is at present unknown to us, notwithstanding I do not doubt but the Secretary might have his even from the time of his Infancy. The Writers of History in those times (to say nothing of other Authors) were the Religious, and when they became famous that way, they often lost their first Surnames, and receiv'd new ones from the respective religious Houses of which they were Members. Hence William of Malmesbury<sup>1</sup> (whose true Surname, it seems, was Somerset<sup>2</sup>) and Matthew of Westminster<sup>3</sup> (commonly called<sup>4</sup> *Florilegus* from the Title<sup>5</sup> of his Work,) to say nothing of *Guilielmus Neubrigensis* (whose true Surname was Petyt<sup>6</sup>) were thus denominated from their Monasteries, after they became eminent in History. So also John of Glastonbury was so named upon account of the History or Chronicle of Glastonbury,

names, and, upon compiling their famous Works, were surnamed anew from the Houses of which they were Members.

<sup>1</sup> Lelandus de Scriptorib. p. 195. Item Lelandi Coll. Vol. II. p. 303. Pitseus de illustrib. Angliæ Scriptorib. p. 208. Guil. Cavei Hist. Lit. p. 577. Genev. 1720. <sup>2</sup> Pitseus ibid. Thomæ Galei Præf. ad XV. Scriptorum Oxoniæ 1691. fol. Henrici Whartoni Præf. ad Vol. II. *Angliæ Sacræ*; p. I. Ger. J. Vossius de Historicis Lat. p. 389. *Lug. B.* c12. **CCXXVII.** <sup>3</sup> Joannis Joscelini

Catalogus eorum, qui scripserunt historiam gentis Anglorum, & ubi extant. Ad calcem Roberti de Avesbury à nobis editi, p. 292. Append. ad Guil. Cavei Hist. Lit. p. 50. Ed. Gen. <sup>4</sup> Pitseus de Scriptorib. p. 518. Vossius de Hist. Lat. p. 491. <sup>5</sup> I. e. *Flores Historiarum.* <sup>6</sup> De quo fusissime ad initium editionis nostræ hujus Guilielmi, quam videsis.

of which he was a Confrere and Monk, as himself hath assured us in the Prologue to that usefull and excellent Work, which was never yet printed, tho' some things have been extracted from it by Mr. Dodsworth, and are published in the beginning of the *Monasticum Anglicanum* <sup>2</sup>. Now had Robert of Gloucester the Secretary been as famous as Robert of Gloucester the Historian, the better to distinguish the one from the other, it would have been proper, to have stiled the latter, *Robert the Monk of Gloucester*, and the former barely *Robert of Gloucester*. But as it happened, there was no occasion for that nicety, since the Secretary, (however, after his Master's Death, Chancellor of Hereford, tho' the published *Fasti* <sup>3</sup> do not mention him as such) was not celebrated upon account either of his writings, or any other great Undertaking, that might render his name famous to Posterity.

Yet there were rather more that retain'd their first Sir-

§. IV. But now tho' there were so many that lost their original Surnames

<sup>1</sup> *Johannes abjectissimus & humilimus ejusdem venerabilis loci [monasterii scilicet Glastoniensis] indignus confrater & monachus, id quod de se ipso testatur noster Johannes, quemadmodum è Codice colligo eximio penes nobilissimum Dominum, Carolum Dominum Bruce, qui mihi*

*perquam benevole motuo dedit. Et quidem jam alibi monui, Johannem hunc operis esse auctorem. Vide Lelandi Coll. Vol. VI. p. 97. <sup>2</sup> Vol. I. p. 1, &c. <sup>3</sup> Vide Fastos Ecclesie Anglicane per Johannem Le Neve, p. 116. ubi de Roberto nostro ne verbum.*

after

PREFACE.

XIX

after they became noted for their Writings, yet there were others, and those too as famous, and as many, yea more, that retain'd them, notwithstanding the Characters they had established for the Works compiled by them. Matthew Paris was Author of a very noble History, in which he took in what Roger Wendover had done before him<sup>1</sup>, tho' others say 'tis all the genuine Work of Matthew Paris<sup>2</sup>. Yet the great Abbey, of which he was Monk, did not take away from his primitive Sirname. Neither indeed did John Whethamstede, or Wethamstede, *alias* Bostok<sup>3</sup>, (stiled in Latin *Joannes Frumentarius*, or *Joannes de loco Frumenti*) loose his first Sirname, altho' he was even of greater note than Matthew Paris, as he was a great Writer<sup>4</sup>, and a great Benefactor<sup>5</sup> to the Abbey of St. Alban,

names, after they became noted for their Writings. John Wethamstede of a greater character than Matthew Paris. The Historical Passages in Dr. Gascoigne's Theological Dictionary should be published.

---

<sup>1</sup> Vide Guil. Watsii Præfationem ad Ed. suam Matthæi Parisiensis; uti etiam v. cl. Joannis Seldeni (nam is collegit scriptisque, quamvis non observaverit Antonius à Wood) testimonia (cum notis) de eodem Parisiensi ad initium Editionis Watsianæ. <sup>2</sup> Nicolson's Engl. Historical Library, p. 62. Ed. fol. <sup>3</sup> Lelandi Coll. Vol. VI. p. 278. <sup>4</sup> Baleus de Scriptorib. Majoris Brit. 4to. fol. 200. b. Pitseus, p. Vol. I. <sup>5</sup> Lelandi Coll. Vol. VI. p. 135. Acta Joannis Whethamsted, Abbatis monasterii S. Albani, per Joannem Agmundishamensem, Monachum S. Albani, per singulos annos ipsius regiminis, MS. in Bibl. Cott. Claud. D. I. 2. See also another MS. in the said Cottonian Library (Otho B. IV.) containing abundance of curious Things relating to Whethamstede, as they are specified by my late very learned

of which he was at length Abbat, whereas Matthew Paris was only a Monk of it. But how does it appear, that this Wethamstede was as celebrated a Writer as Paris? He is certainly characteriz'd as such. His Works were of more general learning, which shew him, therefore, to have been a more general Scholar. He was in great Reputation among all good and learned men. He was honoured by Humphrey Duke of Gloucester<sup>1</sup>, that religious, good and learned Prince, whose Hand writing I us'd, whenever I saw it in the Bodleian Library (where it occurs several times) to shew a sort of particular respect to, as some little Remains of a truly great Man, one that was both a Scholar himself and the chiefest Promoter of Learning and Scholars at that time, by condescending to whose Death his Nephew K. Henry VI<sup>th</sup>. (otherwise generally esteemed for a gentle and innocent Prince) drew on himself and this Kingdom (if the Observation of a very wise Historian<sup>2</sup> may be regarded) the greatest joyntlosse and dishonour, that ever it sustained since the Norman Conquest. Nor do I take Wethamstede to have been a worse Historian than

---

learned Friend Dr. Thomas Smith in pag. 70. of his Catalogue. <sup>1</sup> Lelandus de Scripto-rib. Brit. p. 437. Baleus Ed. 4to. fol. 200. b. Pitseus, p. 630. <sup>2</sup> Sir Walter Raleigh's Preface to his *Hist. of the World*.

## PREFACE.

XXI

Paris, tho' he did not confine himself so closely to the Affairs of this Kingdom. His *Granary*, as it is a Proof of his extraordinary Diligence, so 'tis, withall, an Instance (and that too a very noble one) of his Abilities in History. There are Remains of it in many Places. Some I have seen, and often consulted, formerly in the Bodleian Library. The most material Historical Passages, especially such as concern our own Affairs, (particularly those *de viris illustribus*, which Leland<sup>1</sup> admired) should be extracted by those, that have the best opportunity of doing it, and made publick, as should likewise those in Dr. Gascoigne's *Theological Dictionary* in Lincoln-College Library (as was many years ago noted by Dr. Gerard Langbaine<sup>2</sup>) a Specimen of which I have lately given in the *Antiquities of Glastonbury*<sup>3</sup>, written by a very worthy and pious Gentleman<sup>4</sup>, who had he lived to improve the Book as he design'd, would have enriched and adorned it with abundance of other very curious Remarks and Observations, such as Men of his genius are capable of making, whenever they employ themselves up-

<sup>1</sup> Lelandus de Scriptorib. p. V. p. 287. <sup>2</sup> Pag. 290. <sup>4</sup> Vide 437. <sup>3</sup> See a Letter of his to Mr. Selden, that I have published in Leland's Coll. Vol. Præf. ad Hemingi Chartularium Ecclesiæ Wig. §. I.

on Subjects, to the Study of which they are naturally inclin'd.

Among others that retain'd their original Surnames was Peter Langtoft, who, besides his Translation into French Rhythms of Bosenham or Boscam's Life of Thomas à Becket, compiled a Chronicle of England in French.

§. V. But 'twill be endless here to multiply Instances of such as have retain'd their Surnames after their becoming noted Writers. They will be obvious enough to such as deal in Antiquity. Waving, therefore, others, I shall mention only one more, which indeed is more material than any other I either have named or can name, and that

is Peter Langtoft, or Peter de Langtoft, the Person that hath occasioned this present undertaking of mine. He was so called from Langtoft in Yorkshire, and was not, as some have thought <sup>1</sup>, a Frenchman by birth, notwithstanding his being so very well vers'd in the French Language, that was in his time so much in vogue both at Court and elsewhere, especially among Lawyers and great Scholars, a thing which King James the I. look'd upon as of no true Advantage to Britain <sup>2</sup>. It does not appear to me, how he was originally educated; but, without question, there was nothing wanting, that might render him a compleat Scholar, as well as a Man of honesty and good Morals. After he had obtain'd a good

---

<sup>1</sup> See the Appendix to this Preface, Num. I. <sup>2</sup> See *The Royal Law* by Richard Eburne, p. 40.

fair Character, he became a Canon Regular<sup>1</sup> of the Order of St. Austin at Bridlington, or Brellington<sup>2</sup>, a Priory of Black Canons in Yorkshire, founded by Walter de Gant, (*temp. Hen. I.*) and dedicated to S. Mary and S. Nicholas<sup>3</sup>. He was a person naturally addicted to History and Poëtry, and spent a good deal of his time that way; insomuch that, besides his Translation out of the Latin Tongue into French Rhythms of Herebert Bosenham, Boscam, or Hoscham's<sup>4</sup> Life of Thomas à Becket, he compil'd in French a Chronicle of England<sup>5</sup>, written in Rhythem, and is preserv'd still in several Libraries.

§ VI. The Author begins this History at the very Original of the Britains, even as early as the Trojans, in the same manner as many others do, that have no better Vouchers than the old British Historian (and I look upon him as good<sup>6</sup> as those dark Times can

This Peter Langtoft seems to have died in the beginning of K. Edw. 11<sup>th</sup> Reign, and to have been buried at Bridlington with much such another Epitaph as that to the memory of *Robertus Scriba*.

<sup>1</sup> See the Appendix to this Preface, Num. I. II. III.  
<sup>2</sup> Lelandi Coll. Vol. III. p. 363. † Lelandi Coll. Vol. I. p. 123. & Vol. IV. p. 35. Tanner's Notitia Monastica, pag. 252. †  
<sup>3</sup> Nicolson's Engl. Hist. Library, p. 112, 113. Fol. † See the Appendix, Num. I. II. III. IV. † For which reason Geffry of Monmouth (who took from him)

hath been vindicated by many great men, and among others, that used to speak well of him, was the learned Mr. Thomas Thompson, Rector of Montgomery, in the Year 1628. as I find by the following Particulars, that I have entered at pag. 86. of Vol. 103. of my MSS Collections: "Mr. Brome (of Ewithington, near Hereford)

produce) from whom' first Alfred of Beverley, and afterwards Geffry of Monmouth (tho' Mr. Dodwell was not sufficiently aware of this <sup>1</sup>) took their Histories. He brings the Story down to the end of the Reign of K. Edward the first after the Conquest; but carrying it no lower, I take it for granted, that he died towards the beginning of the Reign of K. Edward II. but in what Year, or in what Place, it was that he finished his days, I cannot pretend to, determine, unless I could meet with some good Authority on which to ground an

" hath got *Gyraldus Cambren-* | " the beginning, at the end of  
 " *sis* of Dr. Powell's Edition, | " which *Ponticus Virunnius* is  
 " with *Ponticus Virunnius* at | " the following MS. Note:

Θιῶ δὲξα. ἀμν.

" *Legi, nec video qua ratione improbetur hæc historia, cum*  
 " *nil sapiat, quod non sit & probabile & possibile, non obs:anti-*  
 " *bus invidiosis illis pseudepigraphis prolatis à Polydoro Virgilio*  
 " *& Guilielmo Cambdeno, Viris alioquin apprime doctissimis:*  
 " *uti sentio Ego Dei servus humilimus his in studiis à pueritia*  
 " *versatus,*

" *Thomas Thompson, Rector Eccl. parochialis de*  
 " *Montgomeria, 20<sup>o</sup> Febr. 1628<sup>o</sup>.*

" Immediately after which is a spare Leaf, on the back  
 " side of which is this MS. Note in another hand:

" *The beginning of the Giralds family in Ireland, was from*  
 " *one Giraldd, which tooke to wife Nesta, Sister to Gruffin the*  
 " *prince, of whom he begate a goodly faire progeny, from*  
 " *whom descended Giraldus Cambrensis. Cambden: Britan:*  
 " *in Pembroksh: 652. P.*

" *Giraldus Cambrensis: was Archdeacon of Brechnock: above*  
 " *100 yeeres since. Cambden: in Brechnocksh: p. 627.*

" <sup>1</sup> Vide Præf. nostram ad Aluredum Bev. §. VII. <sup>2</sup> Ex-  
 " ercit. de Ætate Phalaridis, p. 25.

Asser-



Assertion. I am, however, of opinion, that he continued Canon of Bridlington till the time of his Death, and that he was buried in the Priory, with some short Epitaph upon him, much such another as that to the memory of *Robertus Scriba*, or *Robert the Scribe* (so surnamed from the many great Works, that were written and compiled by him<sup>1</sup>) who was the fourth Prior of Bridlington, and, upon his Death, was buried in the Cloyster just before the Chapter-House Door with this Inscription, as we are assured by Leland<sup>2</sup> who saw it, at the same time that he curiously look'd over his Writings, as they were then preserved in the Priory Library: *Robertus Scriba, quartus Prior*; or, as Leland gives it elsewhere<sup>3</sup>, **ROBERTUS, COGNOMENTO SCRIBA, QUARTUS PRIOR.**

§. VII. It is not at all improbable, but, if there be any of the Obit Books of the Priory of Bridlington now in being, upon a due Search, some note might be found about the exact time, when Peter de Langtoft died. For the Monks were exact in their Registering things of this nature, as may appear e-

Were the Obituaries, or Obit Books of Bridlington now remaining, it is probable something certain about his Death might be learned from them. The diligence of the Monks in registering. Many old Chartularies still in private

---

<sup>1</sup> Lelandus de Scriptorib. seum, p. 243. <sup>2</sup> De Scriptorib. p. 202. Pitseus, p. 242. <sup>3</sup> Coll. rib. Brit. p. 203. Vol. IV, p. 35. Vide etiam Pit-

hands, that ought to be search'd by men of a true genius. The Chronicle of England written by Thomas Blount, Esq;

ven from the Obituaries, or Obit Books, that I have seen, particularly one that belong'd to Eovesham Abbey. They exceeded, in many respects, what hath been done since the Reformation, notwithstanding the strict Injunctions and Orders for keeping true and accurate Registers. Men of distinction and character were then appointed for looking after such things. They did not commit such kind of business to an illiterate common person, no more than they did the care of their Chartularies, in many of which too Notes may be occasionally found, immediately relating to the great and famous Men of those Times; such as would be of very good use to those that are concern'd about our ancient Worthies. But what advantage then, it will be ask'd, will this be of, if, after abundance of time spent in searching, nothing of moment should occur, directly belonging to the subject, which gave occasion to the Searches? Or what Compensation will be made for so much pains, and the laying out so much time, upon dry Inquiries? In answer to which it must be noted, that none but persons, naturally inclin'd to these Studies, should be employ'd in searching,

---

Cujus apographum penes Graves, de Mickleton in agro Gloucestriensi, armiger. Richardus

who

who if they do not meet with much about the Lives and Deaths of eminent Men, besides what is already known, will, nevertheless, find a vast deal about our Monasteries and our ancient History not yet divulgéd, which as it will prove of unspeakable satisfaction to themselves (for no Study can be more pleasant to Persons of a genius than that of our National History and Antiquities) so it cannot but be of wonderful service to the Publick. The single Chartulary of the Church of Worcester, that I lately published, is an undeniable Proof of this, And that there are many Chartularies, very little known, in private hands, is, I think, agreed amongst all. We only want the benefit of them, by having persons of a genius imploy'd to turn them to publick Use. Thomas Blount, of Orleton in Herefordshire, Esq;. was extremely curious this way, and in the year 1669. he met with a Chartulary of the Priory of Leominster, in that County, with some other choice Antiquities, in the hands of a Friend of his'. I do not know, that there hath been as yet any publick use made of this Chartulary, but, without doubt, Mr. Blount read it all over, and extracted many things out of it, some of which, perhaps, he might have in his Eye,

---

<sup>1</sup> Id quod de seipso testatur nium à Wood scriptis, quas in in litteris quibusdam ad Anto. Muséo Ashmoliano perlegi.

(not

(not only in his *Antiquities of Herefordshire*, a Book never yet printed<sup>1</sup>, but) in the Chronicle of England that he compiled, a Work in which, I am informed, he inserted many Things about our Religious Houses, and the Sacrilegious Destruction of them (what the Clergy and the Poor ought to lament<sup>2</sup>) that was made by K. Henry VIII. of whom a very faithfull and judicious Historian writes, among other remarkable Particulars, that if all the Pictures and Patterns of a merciless Prince were lost in the World, they might all again be painted to the Life, out of the Story of this King<sup>3</sup>. But, it seems, this Chronicle was never yet printed; nor do I exactly know where it now is, tho' some Extracts<sup>4</sup> from it were, a few years since, in the Hands of a late ingenious Friend: of which Extracts, as well as of many other curious Things, I should have had a free use, had he lived longer, he being sollicitous for me to go to his Seat, and to peruse whatever he had concerning our History and Antiquities.

Notwithstanding  
the French Tongue  
was so much in vogue  
in Peter Langtoft's  
Time, yet there  
were multitudes be-

§. VIII. I have observ'd above<sup>5</sup>; that the French Tongue was much in vogue in the time of Peter Langtoft. Yet notwithstanding this there were very

---

<sup>1</sup> Coll. nostr. MSS. Vol. 94. | ter Raleigh's Preface to his Hi-  
p. 136. <sup>2</sup> Richard Eburne's | story of the World. <sup>4</sup> Coll.  
*Royal Law*, p. 44. <sup>3</sup> Sir Wal- | nostr. MSS. Vol. 68. p. 61. <sup>5</sup> §. V.

many exquisite Scholars, that had a particular regard to their own native Tongue, and as for the inferior and more illiterate sort of people<sup>1</sup>, they wholly despised the French Language. And 'twas a piece of great wisdom to do so. The introduction of the French Tongue was of very great disadvantage. It brought a disuse of the Scriptures, which having been translated into Saxon, were commonly read among the Vulgar, as well as others, (that did not understand the Originals,) 'till after the Normans came among us, who did all they could possibly to destroy every thing, that look'd like Saxon; and yet they were not able to bring their ill design to perfection. The Saxon Princes and great Men had granted abundance of Charters in their own Language. These (notwithstanding some, tho' a very few, have been suspected<sup>2</sup>) were look'd upon as genuine and authentick. Extraordinary care, therefore, was to be us'd in preserving them. Great Immunities and Privileges depended thereupon. The Monks knew this very well. They, therefore, imploy'd all their Skill in securing them from a People, that was as diligent to destroy them, as the Rebels of Somersetshire were in 1685<sup>3</sup>.

---

<sup>1</sup> Rob. of Gloucester's Chron. p. 364. <sup>2</sup> Henr. Whar. toni Præf. ad Part. II. Angl. <sup>3</sup> H. Whar. toni Præf. ad Part. I. Angl. Sacr. p. XII.

to destroy very many ancient Writings, that belong'd to the Church of Wells. This being so, we may fairly conclude, that the ignorance, which appeared after the Conquest, was owing to a Conflux of Forreigners, that were against that very Language, in which were written great Numbers of excellent Books, among which were the Scriptures, that were afterwards very diligently kept from the knowledge of the vulgar, and all others, that were not acquainted with the Originals. This was of dismal Consequence, as will be readily own'd by those, that consider, that the Saxon Version of the Scriptures was excellent, and the Words very significant, as will sufficiently appear to such, as shall consult what MSS. are remaining, relating to it, even to this day, or if they do not have recourse to the MSS. (one of which is the ancient Rushworth one in the Bodleian Archives) they may be fully satisfied of the truth of it, from the Saxon Gospels, first printed by Mr. Fox, and afterwards, more correctly, by Dr. Marshall, to say nothing of some other printed Books. John Wickliff and others had weigh'd this matter well, and upon that account partly they set upon another Version, agreeable to the Language in use in their own Times, and were very industrious in divulging it, which is the reason that we have

so many MSS. of it at this time, in which many Words appear, that are originally Saxon, and, therefore, it would be proper for any, that shall read over one Version, to compare it with the other, by which they will the more readily perceive and find out, the Alterations that have crept into the old Saxon Tongue.

§. IX. Among such as were concern'd for cultivating the English Tongue, Robert of Brunne is deservedly to be reckoned, he being the very person, to whom we owe that Piece of obsolete English, that is now here published. He was well apprized of the Credit, that Peter Langtoft's Chronicle had obtained; but then being written in French, it was far from being of general use in England. Upon which he was importuned to translate it into English for the sake of such, as did not understand either Latin or French. I say *importuned*, because himself hath assured us, that he was requested to do it. Nor is there any wonder, that he should be pitched upon above any other, since he had, many years before, obtained a very great character for several Rhythmical Translations that he made, one of which was

Robert of Brunne one of those that cultivated the English Tongue, and he gained a great Reputation upon that score. This Robert of Brunne lived to a great age, tho' the year in which he died doth not yet occur.

---

\* See his Prologue de *Historia Britannia*, in the Appendix to this Preface, Num. V.

Robert Grossthead's *Manuel de Peche*, begun by him in the year 1303. 13. Edw. I. about four years before he feasted (upon account of some honour done him) and made Observations at Cambridge<sup>1</sup>. An excellent Copy of the said *Manuel de Peche*, as translated by Robert of Brunne, is in the Harleyan Library<sup>2</sup>, as there is another in the Bodleian<sup>3</sup>, in which are some other Things probably to be ascribed to him. The true Sirname of this great Man was Mannyng<sup>4</sup>, but being (as I believe at present) born at Malton in Yorkshire, he was from thence frequently call'd Robert of Malton<sup>5</sup>. He lived<sup>6</sup> for some time in the House of Sixhill, Sixill, Syxille or Sixle, a Gilbertine Priory in Lincolnshire, founded by one Greslei, or Grelle, in the time of King John, and dedicated to the Blessed Virgin Mary<sup>7</sup>. Hence 'tis, that he afterwards express'd himself so hearty a Friend<sup>8</sup> to the Gilbertine or Sempringham Order. After he had left Sixhill, he became a Canon of Brunne<sup>9</sup>, or

---

<sup>1</sup> See below in this Chroni- | sary to that Work, p. 706.  
 cle, p. 337. <sup>2</sup> See my Preface | <sup>5</sup> See the Appendix to this Pref.  
 to Rob. of Gloucester's Chron. | Num. V. and my Glossary to  
 § XIII. <sup>3</sup> Catal. MSS. in Bibl. | Rob. of Glouc. loc. cit. <sup>6</sup> Ibid.  
 Bodl. n. 2313. <sup>4</sup> See the Ap- | <sup>7</sup> Mon. Angl. Tom. II. p. 810.  
 pendix to this Preface, Num. | Tanner's Notitia Mon. p. 129.  
 V. Also my Preface to Rob. of | <sup>8</sup> See my Pref. to Rob. of Glouc. p.  
 Glouc. §. xxiv. and my Glos- | LX. <sup>9</sup> Vide Append, ad hanc Præf.  
 Num.



Bourne, a Priory of Black Canons in the same County, founded by Baldwin de Wake (*temp. Hen. I.*) and dedicated to the honour of St. Peter', tho' others<sup>3</sup> say (and even Camden himself<sup>3</sup> seems to imply, tho' he does not directly say, that it was dedicated) to the B. Virgin. Here he lived a great many Years, continuing there, unless I am mistaken, to the time of his Death. It doth not yet appear to me in what year he died; but that he must have lived to a great age, is clear from the Notes himself hath left us. He had been of Brunne Abbey fifteen Years<sup>4</sup>, when he began to translate *Daniel de Beche*, and 'twas more than thirty Years after that, before he finished his Task about Peter Langtoft, according to this Memorandum that is put in red letters (but in the same hand) at the End of it:

*Expliciunt gesta Britonum & Anglorum in lingua materna per Robertum Mannyng transumpta anno Christi millesimo. CCC<sup>mo</sup>. tricesimo VIII. Idus Maij, littera dominicali D. Prima IX, tempore Regis Edwardi tercii à conquestu. XIo.*

---

<p>Num. V. item Præf. ad Rob. Glouc. p. LX. &amp; Gloss. ad Rob. Glouc. p. 706. <sup>1</sup> Mon. Angl. Tom. II. p. 235, &amp;c. Lelandi Coll. Vol. I. p. 96. <sup>2</sup> Tanner's Notit. Mon. p. 119. <sup>3</sup> In</p>	<p>his Defence of himself against Brook, p. 27. publish'd by way of Appendix in some Copies of his Britannia in 4to. 1600. <sup>4</sup> Præf. ad Rob. de Glouc. p. LX.</p>
---	--

He was not descended from the Founder of St. Mary Spittle *extra* Bishop's Gate. His Translation of P<sup>er</sup> de Langtoft had it's intended Effect. Many Copies of it formerly, tho' it be now scarce. The Stories in it us'd in old time instead of Ballads.

§. X. After he became famous for his Writings, he was generally called Robert of Brunne, which was partly occasioned also by his living so long in that Priory; so that I should not think, that he was descended from Walter Brune, or Broune, who, with Roisia or Rosia his Wife, founded St. Mary Spittle *extra* Bishop's Gate for Canons

Regular or Black Canons' *an.* 1197. an House of such relief to the needy, that there were found standing at the surrender thereof, nine-score beds, well furnished for receipt of poor people<sup>2</sup>; of which kind I might (were it my proper business now) give other Instances in those times, when Bishops also were Men of diffusive Charity, insomuch that Richard Redman<sup>3</sup>, first Bishop of St. Asaph, then of Exeter, and afterwards of Ely, where he died and was buried *A<sup>o</sup>.* 1505. as he was a person of great liberality and bounty, and of a virtuous and godly life, so when<sup>4</sup> he travell'd through any Towns where he stay'd but an hour, he caused a Bell to be rung, that the poor and indigent might come and partake of his Charity, which he plentifully bestowed amongst them. Now

---

<sup>1</sup> Lelandi Coll. Vol. I. p. 1633. fol. <sup>3</sup> Godwin de Præs. 36. Monast. Angl. Vol. II. p. p. 331, 473, 662. Le Neve's 383. <sup>2</sup> Stow's Survey of London, p. 86. b. 176. a. Ed. Fasti, p. 21, 70, 83. <sup>4</sup> Coll. nostr. MSS. Vol. 80. p. 54.

as Robert of Brunne undertook the Translation of Langtoft, not for Praise and Vain-Glory, but with a design of doing good, so what he proposed had it's intended Effect. He adapted himself to the Capacity of the Vulgar, and did not affect a high-flown Stile, nor hard Words, such as were complained of in the Stories of Erceldoun, of Kendale, and of Tristram<sup>1</sup>, celebrated Rhythmical Books (but<sup>2</sup> full of lyes) in Robert of Brunne's time, tho' little known since. Now as Robert of Brunne's Translation was much cryed up, so there is no doubt, but there were many Copies of it formerly, notwithstanding it be so scarce since, there being, at present, only two MSS. that I know of, one in Vellum in the Library of the Inner-Temple, the other (which is imper-

<sup>1</sup>See the Appendix to this Pref. Num. V. <sup>2</sup>And it was to such Romantick Books, that the Rhythmical Author of the Lives of the Saints (who, it may be, was Robert of Brunne) had regard in the beginning of his Work, where is this Passage, as I find it in

a very fine, but imperfect MS. thereof (written, as I take it, in Edward the III<sup>d</sup>. time) that was lent me by my very worthy Friend, Edward Sheldon of Weston-house, near to Long-Compton, in Warwickshire, Esq;.

Wel aube we loue Cristendom, þat is so dere & bouzt  
 With oure Lorde's herte blode, þat he spere hath & souzt.  
 Wen wilne þe more & here of bataile of kyngis,  
 And of knyztis hardy, þat mochel is telyngis;  
 Of Rouland and of Wiguere, and Gy of Marenwreke,  
 Of Malwage and Tristram, þat ne founde here & like.  
 Who so louetheþ to here tales of such þing,  
 Here he may & here theng þat nes no telyng.

fect<sup>1</sup>) in Paper in that of Lambeth<sup>2</sup>. The former of these MSS. belong'd lately to William Petyt, Esq;. who gave it to the Inner-Temple, from whence I have had the Loan of it by the Grant of that learned Society, at the Interest of my learned Friend, John Anstis, Esq;. Garter-Principal King of Arms, who put it into the Hands of my late very worthy Friend John Bridges, Esq;. from whom I receiv'd it a

---

Of poffoles and marteres, that hardi knyghtes were,  
And ftedefall were in bataille, and ftedde nozt for no fere.

<p><sup>1</sup> "The Chronicle" [of Peter Langtoft in MS. in Lambeth Library] "is written at one time, on the same Paper by two different hands. There is no modern</p>	<p>"mark of any Addition or Alteration to be seen throughout the whole MS. At the end indeed there is this remark added by a late hand:</p>
---	---

*Note this Book imperfect. The French Copies of Langtoft in the Cotton Library, and also in the Herald's Office end with the Reign of King Edward the first<sup>2</sup>.*

<p>E litteris amici pereruditi Edwardi Burtoni, armigeri, datis ad me Londini Mar. 5. 1724.</p> <p><sup>5.</sup></p> <p><sup>2</sup> "Robert Brunne was a Canon of the Abby of Brunne or Bourn near Depying in Lincolnshire — flourish'd in the latter end of K. Ed. I. reign, and translated into English</p>	<p>"verse the History of England, writ in French by Peter de Longatofa, Canon of Bridlington, a Specimen of which you'l find in Stow's Hist. in A. D. 1279. where and in 1266. he is join'd in the margin with Peirce Longton or Longrose; but his true Name Brunne has described thus:</p>
--	---

Peres of Langtoft a Chanoun  
Schaven y the houle of Bridlingtonne  
Dn Romaunce al this story he wrote  
Of Englysh knyges as we wel wote &c.

" This

little before his Death <sup>1</sup>. But tho' there were many intire Copies of the Work formerly, yet others were very imperfect. For notwithstanding most people then (as well as they are now) were very desirous of hearing the Acts of their famous Ancestours related, yet much the greater part were not of ability to get compleat Copies of this Book, and for that reason were contented with Transcripts of some particular Stories out of it, which for recreation (a thing aimed at by Robert of Brunne) they used to recite, and very often to sing by way of Ballads. Which method we ought not to wonder at, since our more ancient Ballads were nothing but such Rhythmical Historical Accounts, done by Persons of note for Learning, who proposed Truth in their Relations; and such Relations were stiled ancient *Gests*, which Word *Gests* was opposed to the French *Romance* <sup>2</sup>, a Word it seems that was apply'd to whatever History was compiled in French Rhythms.

§. XI. Now from Robert of Brunne's *Robert of Brunne a calculating this Work for the Diver-* *Man of a facetious merry Temper, yet*

---

"This translation is yet extant MSS. in Lambeth Library n. 131. folio." — *E litteris viri cujusdam pereruditum ad amicum.* <sup>1</sup> See the

Appendix to this Pref. Num. VI. <sup>2</sup> See pag. 205. of this Chronicle. See also the Appendix to this Preface, Num. VII.

without any Mixture of Immorality. The diligence of the Monks of Winchester in obstructing the Design of Joan of London. A Passage relating to the *sedes stercoraria* at Rome from an anonymous MS. Author.

sion and Recreation of the respective Readers, and such as met together for Mirth and Pleasure, we may easily gather, that he himself was of a cheerful, pleasant humour, and that he was very blithe and merry whenever he saw a proper occasion; at all which times, however, he behav'd himself

without any immoral or indecent Expressions. He was naturally addicted to virtue, and his being engaged in a religious course of Life made him have a stricter Guard upon himself. But 'twill be objected, that in the younger part of his Life, as hath been already noted <sup>1</sup>, he was a Member of Sixille, a House that consisted of Women <sup>2</sup> as well as Men. Can we, therefore, think, that, since he was of a jocular Temper, he could be wholly free from Vice? or that he should not sometimes express himself loosely to the Sisters of that Place? This Objection would have some weight, had the Priory of Sixille been any ways noted for Luxury or Lewdness; but whereas every Member of it, both Men and Women, were very chaste, we ought, by no means, to suppose, that Robert of Brunne behaved himself otherwise than became a good Christian

---

<sup>1</sup> §. IX. <sup>2</sup> See pag. 243, of this Work. See also the Appendix to this Work, Num. VI.

during his Abode there. Had his Life been sullied during that time, he would have been branded for it afterwards, and 'twould have been impossible for him to have obtained a Canonry at Brunne. Had the Friars and Nunns of Sixille acted against the Rules of Chastity and good Manners, they had Enemies enough to have marked them for it, not only in those more early Times, but even of late, when some, particularly a very fabulous Historian, have spared no pains to rake up all the scandalous Stories they could against the Religious; tho' I do not know, that they have particularly accused the Priory of Sixille. 'Tis indeed no wonder, that there should be always such fictitious Writers, when they have some wicked Designs to carry on. Malice hath always been at the bottom, and tho' it hath oftentimes prevailed to the utter ruin of whole Societies, yet it hath frequently likewise discovered it self so palpably, as to baffle and quite overthrow such as have promoted it. 'Twas nothing else but the virtue of the Monks of Winchester, and their Diligence to secure their Reputation, that obstructed the Designs of one Joan of London, in the time of K. Edward I. She pretended to be a religious Convert, and had obtain'd, at least got forged, an Order from Rome and Canterbury, to have a yearly Maintenance allow'd her, dur-

ing life, in the Monastery of Winchester, claiming the same Pittance, *viz.* 8 s. (or, as it should be perhaps, 8 *libs.*) a year *pro alimentis*, that every Monk had, a thing which so exasperated the Monks, that they prosecuted her in the Court of Arches, and I doubt not but they carried their Point, the matter being of pernicious consequence, if they had acquiesced and permitted such an Innovation. I did not meet with this Piece of History, 'till lately, when I read over an old Parchment Fragment<sup>1</sup>, that was given me by my ingenious Friend Thomas Ward, of Longbridge near Warwick, Esq;. The like Attempts were made, without dispute, upon other Religious Houses, which, I suppose, met with the like Success. Envy accompanies Virtue, and, therefore, there will never be wanting persons, that will be ready to calumniate the most innocent. 'Tis what is complain'd of among all Persuasions. Even the Roman-Catholicks (who, to give them their due, and to hint what hath been long since observ'd, in the point and practice of Charity, and in the provision for those that serve at God's Altar, several of which are forced to put their hands to many a servile labour and base Employment, have shew'd themselves more

---

<sup>1</sup> See the Appendix to this Pref. Num. VIII.



PREFACE.

XLI

sound and constant, more righteous and religious, more reasonable and conscionable than some of us Protestants, that in profession and knowledge go far before them<sup>1</sup>) assert, that what many eminent Protestants affirm of the *sedes Stercoraria*, in the procession of a new Pope to Lateran, is meer Fiction and Calumny. A learned anonymous Author, therefore, which I have now before me in MS.<sup>2</sup> but imperfect, being lent me by the just now mentioned ingenious Mr. Ward, tells the Story thus<sup>3</sup> :---- *When the pope cometh to Laterane, he entreth into the gallerie or cloyster of the church, wher he is receyved of the canons of the same church in theyr habites honorablye with the crosse, whych the prior of the canons offreth to be kyssed of hym descendinge from his horse, which he doth, the cardinall deacon takynge it of the prior, and houldynge it to the pope's mouth takynge of his crowne & kyssynge it. The crowne is geven to the auditors to be houlden, and he takynge his miter, is by the same prior and canons receyved and conu. icted unto a marble seat, standinge without the principall gate at the left hand, which seat is called (of the ceremonie there done) sterco-*

---

<sup>1</sup> Rich. Eburne's Royal Law, p. 44, 48. <sup>2</sup> Intit'led, *The Ceremonyes of the holy Church of Rome.* It is in 4to. and consists of two Books, the first booke whereof is of the thynges done only at

*Rome: the second of thynges done, as occasion serveth, at Rome or elsewhere.* But there is only one Chapter (and that too imperfect) of the second Book of this MS. the rest being wanting. <sup>3</sup> L. I. chap. 7.

## THE PUBLISHER'S

raria, the stercorarie. for syttinge down in that seat, and leaninge a little on one syde, so that he may seme rather to lye than to syt, the cardinales come to hym, and lyftynge him up, say : suscitāt de pulvere egenum, & de stercore erigit pauperem : he lifteth up the nedie from the dust, and exalteth the poore from the dunghill, that he may syt amonge the princyes, and possesse

Ps. 112. ut  
sedeat cum  
principi-  
bus, & so-  
lium glo-  
riæ teneat.

the throne of glorie. Then the Pope rysynge up, taketh out of the bosym of his chamberlayne so much money, as he can grip (and yet ther is neether gould nor sylver) & casteth it amonge the people sayinge :

It is a cer-  
teyne coyn,  
neither of  
sylver nor of  
gould.

argentum & aurum non est mihi, quod autem habeo hoc tibi do : I have neither sylver nor gould, yet such as I have I geve the. I know what is usually said on this occasion ; but I am not concerned, at present, either way any farther, than to represent the Author's words, as I have done, faithfully, and to leave them to the consideration of all such, as are willing, and judge it very reasonable, to examin things fairly, before they accuse any of notorious Immoralities, and among such I am sure Robert of Brunne will be look'd upon as a Man of probity and virtue ; especially since the same ingenious persons (who are far from taking up with Calumnies) cannot be ignorant, what an aspersion some wicked men were pleased to cast upon a very pious and devout Family at Little

Gid-

Gidding in Huntingtongshire, and to print a libellous Pamphlet upon the occasion, (on purpose to expose a most worthy and excellent Design as superstitious and popish) which was extracted, in good measure, though with unwarrantable Alterations, from a Letter that is now in MS. in the hands of the foresaid Mr. Ward, from which I shall print in the Appendix <sup>1</sup> to this Preface, that it may be compared with the printed Book, of which, because it is now extremely scarce, I shall, at the same time, give <sup>2</sup> a new Impression (according to the former, provided it may be call'd, Orthography) from a Copy, the loan of which was obtain'd for me by my very learned and judicious Friend Thomas Baker, B. D. of St. John's-College in Cambridge, who, upon this occasion, was so kind, among other particulars, to write to me in this manner: *If an account of that reputed Nunnery [of Little Gidding] be what you want, you have the best and most authentic account, in Bp. Williams's Life (then Bp. of the Diocese) by Bp. Hacket, Par. 2d. pag. 50, 51, &c. Fol. & somewhat in Mr. Oley's Preface to Mr. Herbert's Country Parson, who was of the same College with Mr. Ferrer, viz. Clare-Hall, where Mr. Nich. Ferrer was first Fellow-Commoner, and after Fellow, where he commenc't*

---

<sup>1</sup> Num. IX. <sup>2</sup> See the Appendix to this Pref. Num. X.

*Mr. of Arts 1613. He was so great and so good a man, that the late Bp. of Ely (Bp. Turner) had a design to write his Life, but what Collections he had made, or where log'd, I do not know: His Library was sold.*

'Tis impossible to give a particular Account of the Life of Robert of Brunne. There are Precedents, as well in ancient as later Times, to justify any one in leaving behind him Memoirs of his own Life. Dr. Wallis left some particulars of this nature. The Dr's. Memorandum at the Begiuning of a Book (in the Bodleian Library) containing many things that he deciphered.

§. XII. But I must not pretend to enter into the minute Circumstances of the Life of Robert of Brunne, who although he was so well known in his own time, yet is now, as it were, quite forgot, even among our best Antiquaries. Stow indeed hath quoted him <sup>1</sup>, and given us a remarkable passage out of him <sup>2</sup>. Otherwise I do not remember, that he hath been cited by any noted Writer. A thing much to be wonder'd at, especially since Selden was very diligent this way, and hath given <sup>3</sup> us a Passage out of the original Langtoft, whom Brunne calls <sup>4</sup> his Master. And what is still stranger is, that he should not have been known to Leland, who had been at Bourne, and had taken special notice of the Place <sup>5</sup> for it's pleasant Situation. But it seems this Author's Works were not then at Bourne, having been, it may be, convey'd off in that time of Plunder, otherwise Leland, without question, would have

<sup>1</sup> Annals pag. 196. Ed. fol. XIV. <sup>3</sup> Diss. upon Fleta, p. 548. <sup>4</sup> See pag. 206, 285. <sup>5</sup> Lelandi Coll. Vol. IV. p. 31.

## PREFACE.

XLV

judged them worthy his notice. Neither was there then, when Leland was there, as I believe, any Obit Book about the time when Robert of Brunne died, at least if there were, 'tis probable there was no note in it about his being a celebrated Writer, which particular, however, the Members of the Priory might have acquainted Leland with, had they had any inclination to gratify him, as I am apt to think they had not, upon Account of the mischiefs they wisely foresaw Henry VIII. (from whom Leland had his Commission) was apt to bring upon them. For want, therefore, of particulars, we must not think of writing a full account of Brunne's Life, the only Memoirs about him being what he hath given himself in his Prologue<sup>1</sup> to this work, in his Transition from the first Part thereof to the second, and in what he writes<sup>2</sup> in the Harleian MS. of *Manuel de Peche*, which are indeed but slender, and yet such as give us some (and that no despicable) Idea of him, I wish he had been fuller of himself, as I do likewise lament, that some other of our ancient Worthies had not left us Memoirs of their Lives. But this, it may be, was neglected by them, as disagreeable to the Rules of Modesty, which, not-

---

<sup>1</sup> See the Appendix to this Preface to Rob. of Glouc. §. Pref. Num. V. <sup>2</sup> See the Appendix, Num. VII. <sup>3</sup> See my XIII.

with-

withstanding, was a false notion, especially if they took care to conceal what they committed to writing of that kind 'till after their death, and put it into the hands of some faithfull Friends, that might make use of it in defence of their posthumous Fame against malicious Enemies. Some of the greatest Men did not look upon it as immodest to do themselves this piece of Justice, not excepting even that good man venerable Bede. And Posterity hath imitated them. Thence Sir Thomas Bodley was pleased also to leave behind him an Account written by himself of his own Life<sup>1</sup>; and, to name no others, since his time the learned Dr. John Wallis writ an Account of some Passages of his own Life, by way of Letter to my late learned Friend Dr. Thomas Smith, from whose Papers I shall publish it in the Appendix<sup>2</sup>, with part of a Letter<sup>3</sup> of the Dr's. to Bp. Fell concerning the Report of his deciphering King Charles the First's Cabinet, in reference to which I shall only here remark, that the Dr's. original Book (in his own hand) is now in the

---

<sup>1</sup> Published first in 4to at Oxford *anno D.* 1647. and afterwards, at the Beginning of *Reliquia Bodleiana*, at London in 8vo. *A.D.* 1703. This Life was translated into Latin, and 'tis still preserved in

that Language both in the Bodl. Library, and in the learned Dr. Thomas Smith's MSS. in my possession, Vol. 22. p. 60. <sup>2</sup> Num. XI. <sup>3</sup> Num. XII.

Bodleian Library, with this Memorandum (in his own hand also) at the beginning of it :

*Hanc Epistolarum Collectionem, quas Ciphris scriptas Ipse exposuerat, Celeberrimæ Bibliothecæ Bodleianæ in Illustrissima Academia Oxoniensi dedit Johannes Wallis, ibidem Geometriæ Professor Savilianus. Reservatâ sibi in posterum potestate addendi vel emendandi.*

*A Collection of several Letters and other Papers, which were at several times intercepted, written in Cipher, Deciphered by John Wallis, Professor of Geometry in the University of Oxford---Given to the Publick library there, Anno Domini 1653.*

Which Memorandum I the rather take notice of, because the being acquainted with the liberty, that Dr. Wallis reserved to himself, may be of service to such, as are concerned to defend, as well the Title of this Book in the printed Catalogue<sup>1</sup>, as what hath been said of this MS. by Henry Stubbe<sup>2</sup> and Anthony à Wood<sup>3</sup>, who (as other honest men have done<sup>4</sup>) look'd upon

<sup>1</sup> Tom. I. Part. 1. n. 3524.  
<sup>2</sup> In pag. 7. of *A severe enquiry into the late Oneirocritica; or an exact account of the grammatical part of the Controversie between Mr. Thom. Hobbes and John*

*Wallis, D.D. Lond. 1657. 4to.* <sup>3</sup> Ath. Oxon. Vol. II. col. 415. See also pag. 61. of the Life of Dr. John Barwick in English, Lond. 1724. 8vo. <sup>4</sup> See pag. 156. of a Book, intit. *The Civil Warres of Great*

this business of deciphering as a base act. And it may be the learned Dr. Smith would have spared his note on the occasion, had he been either aware of the beforesaid Memorandum, or given any credit to what Anthony à Wood had said of the Dr's. being able at any time to make black white, and white black, for his own ends, and of his having a ready knack of sophisticated evasion, a character which Anthony afterwards enlarged, notwithstanding it does not appear in the late spurious Edition of his *Athenæ Oxonienses*, in which he is made to have written Things transacted after his Death.

If Robert of Brunne had any Epitaph, it seems to have been short, agreeable to those times, and to be now irretrievable.

§. XIII. But to return to Robert of Brunne, it is very well known, that Leland in his Travells made it his business, not only to seek out and inspect

MSS. but to view and consider ancient monumental Stones, in which he shew'd a great deal of Judgment. For he did not think it worth his while, to take notes of all Inscriptions and Monuments that he happen'd to light upon, but of such only that were to the memory of persons of worth; and among other Places that

---

*Great Britain and Ireland. Containing an Exact History of their Occasion, Originall, Progress, and Happy End. By an Impartiall Pen. Lond. 1661. fol. The Author subscribes himself J. D. at the*

End of his Dedication, To the most noble Charles Duke of Richnoud and Lenox, &c. <sup>1</sup> Vol. II. coll. 816. of the genuine Edition, of his *Athenæ Oxon.*



he nicely examined, was this of Brunne, tho' his Notes upon that occasion do not now occur. Tho' therefore I am of opinion, that Robert of Brunne was buried in the Priory of Brunne, and had some Epitaph over him, yet in what part it was, and what the Epitaph said of him, is now uncertain, unless the Stone were still preserved, as I do not think that it is, or unless such Papers as Mr. Leland's were forthcoming to inform us. If he had any Epitaph, I do not at all doubt but it was short, far from the modern way of writing Inscriptions. A good man deserves praise; and the speaking often of such is of great use for promoting virtue. But then to represent ill men as good, is one effectual way to encourage wickedness; and yet this is what is now adays too often practised. A lewd vicious wretch shall have a fine Epitaph (and too often an Harangue from the Pulpit) and be characteriz'd as an exceeding good man, tho' at the same time, perhaps, he did not deserve the least share of so great an Encomium. Our Ancestors, no question, had their Defects; but then they were not guilty of such Extravagancies in their Characters of the Dead. A plain Monument, and a plain Inscription was then common. Their Names and Offices; with a *cujus animæ propicietur Deus*, was then generally the Subject of  
their

## THE PUBLISHER'S

their Epitaphs; but should such a Conclusion be made use of at this time, the Outcries would be great, and nothing but Curses denounced. The Favourers thereof should be called the worst of men, and be condemn'd as injurious to the Dead, as if the Defunct need-ed either prayers or pity, notwithstanding; it may be, none ever stood in greater need of such mercifull Offices. But what is this to Brunne? or what occasion was there to speak of the custom of writing Epitaphs? A Question that may be soon resolved by those, that will consider, that Brunne lived in an age, when the custom of writing concise Epitaphs was much practised, and that therefore, in all probability, the Epitaph, if there were any at all, upon him, did not deviate from the then receiv'd custom, when even the Date of the respective persons Deaths was frequently omitted, which is what might also be left out in that of Brunne. This Brevity and Simplicity is agreable to Antiquity, tho' it must be granted, that some of the short Roman Inscriptions carry tokens in them of their being spurious; and whether there be not such in (some, at least, of) the *Inscriptiones singulares ineditæ* of Hadrian Beverland, I shall leave to the Judgment of the Reader, after he hath perus'd them in the Appendix'.

## PREFACE.

111

§. XIV. Now since we have no more Memoirs, relating to the Life of Robert of Brunne, I shall leave the farther discussion of that Point, and will confine my self to the Historical Work he hath left behind him. This consists of two Parts, as likewise does the French Original of Peter Langtoft. The first Part brings the History

down from the most early Times to the Death of Cadwalader, the second from that Period of time to the Death of K. Edward the First.

But then whereas both Parts in the French are written in long Verse, and in one Column, on the contrary the second Part only in the English Book is in long Verse, and in one Column, and the first Part is in short Verse, and makes two Columns; which Remark, however, is not so worthy of notice, as another, which I must by no means omit, and that is this. Peter Langtoft himself had carefully read over Geffry of Monmouth, and resolv'd to make him his Standard for the first Part of his Work; but then, instead of representing him intire, he abridg'd him, and left only a Rhythmical Epitome of him; which when Robert of Brunne well perceiv'd, instead of following Peter Langtoft in that point, he judg'd it more adviseable to represent Geffry at large, but

Peter Langtoft's Original, as well as Robert of Brunne's English Work, consists of two Parts, the first Part of which is here omitted, as containing nothing but Geffry of Monmouth. A Passage out of Rastall's Chronicle about Stonehenge.

not according to the compendious Account in Langtoft, but in the manner he found done in French Rhythms to his hands by one Master Wace (the same, as I take it, that others call Wate) whose Translation being approved of, Robert of Brunne thought it a piece of prudence to follow him, without regard to the Original Latin of Geffry. The first Part, therefore, of Robert of Brunne is nothing but Geffry of Monmouth, and that too translated into English from a French Author; but then the second Part contains a translation of Peter Langtoft's second Part, yet with many Insertions, that do not appear in the Original. After I had read over the whole Work, (which, take it all together, may be properly call'd *Robert of Brunne's Chronicle*, a Title I have call'd it by lately<sup>2</sup>). I concluded it to be a needless piece of service to publish any of the first Part, (excepting the Prologue<sup>3</sup> to the whole Work, and the Transition<sup>4</sup> from the First to the second Part thereof, in both which he speaks of himself and the Work) and all my Friends, that I consulted upon the occasion, readily concurr'd with me. For which reason I have kept

---

<sup>1</sup> See Aaron Thompson's Ed. of Rob. of Glouc. <sup>2</sup> See Preface to his Translation of my Appendix to this Preface, Geff. of Mon. pag. xxv. <sup>3</sup> Num. V. <sup>4</sup> See my Appendix, in several Places of my dix, Num. VII.

PREFACE.

LIII

to, and made publick, the latter Part only, 'as containing a great many Things not commonly known, such as, all, that are curious in our English History, will be glad to be acquainted with, especially since Peter Langtoft, the original Author, flourished in Edward the First's time (whose Story he tells at large) and Robert of Brunne, his Translator and Improver, was not long after him. But then, tho' the First Part be deservedly pass'd over by me, yet the Reader may meet with several Specimens of it, if he be pleased to have recourse to my Glossary to Robert of Gloucester's Chronicle; and another Specimen also I shall annex here in the Appendix, for the sake of those who shall undertake to write about Stone-henge, which our old English Historians unanimously affirm to have been a British Work, which opinion Rastall himself seems likewise to have espoused, notwithstanding he did not readily agree with those, that held them to be natural Stones. His words<sup>2</sup> are worth reading, and therefore I shall heré transcribe them, as I found them in the Copy of his Chronicle, that was lent me by my Friend the ingenious Mr. John Murray of London; and indeed they are the rather fit to be considered, because Camden<sup>3</sup>, as

---

<sup>1</sup> Num. XIV. <sup>2</sup> In his Chron. C. jj. a. <sup>3</sup> Brit. p. 184. in Wiltshire, Ed. Lat. fol.

I believe, had them in his view at the same time that he was writing about their being artificial, notwithstanding he hath not been pleased to make any mention of his author.

¶ Thys Aurelambroſe destroyed the panyen lawys & reedfyed churchys of cryſtendome he was poſſongd at wynecheſter & was buryed at Stoneheng vnder the grete ſtonys whych ſtonys the bryttons ſay that one Wylſon which was begotin of a womā by the deuill brought out of yreland by the craft of magyk whych dyuers men thynk ſtondyth nother with good ſayth nor reaſon & alſo the bryttons ſay that thys Wylſon told & wrote many prophelges wheron they greteſy beleue But other clerkis and grete lernyng men geue lityll credence to them | & alſo they ſey that thoſe ſtonis were neuer brought out of yreland by merlion but that they were made by craft of men as of ſement & morter made of ſlynt ſtonys | one reaſon they alege therto becauſe thoſe ſtonis be ſo hard that no yryn tole wyll cut them without grete byſynes and alſo they be of one ſaycon and bygnes ſaue only there be .ij. ſortis | & ſo moſt lykly to be caſt and made in a molde & that men thynke it a thyng almoſte vnpolyble to get ſo many grete ſtonys owte of anny quarre or rokē that ſould be ſo herd ſo equall of bygnes & ſaycon | a nother reaſon they ſey that it is not well polyble to haue ſo many gret ſtonis to be all of one color & of one greyn throw and in euery place but that ſome ſtone ſould be more darker of colour in one place or another or at the leſt haue ſome bayns of other colours in them as grete ſtonis of merbell and other gret ſtonis commynly haue | But theſe ſtonis at Stoneheng be all of one gret without chaunge of colour or bayne & all of one ſaycon therefore many grete wyſemen ſuppoſe them to be made of a morter of ſlynt or other ſtonys.

PREFACE.

LV

§. XV. In publishing this old Piece of History, I have aim'd at the same accuracy and exactness as I have done in my other publick Works, and as in Robert of Gloucester, so also in this Piece of Antiquity I have made use of four Saxon Characters, viz. *ȝ* or *g*, *þ* or *th*, *ƿ* or *w* (which, however, very rarely occurs) and *ȝ* or *y*, letters that are met with in most MSS. of that age, as well as in those of the times afterwards quite down to the Beginning of printing, nay even to the Destruction of the Religious Houses, which put a stop to many laudable Employments, among which was also the Elegancy of writing, (which was much encourag'd in Abbeys,) and the profession of the Saxon Tongue, which was kept up, with more than ordinary diligence, in some of those Houses of Religion. This exactness I have always been cautious in, because 'tis what the most judicious Readers expect, and where they meet with it, they never fail to set the greater esteem upon the Writings that are so set out. And because some curious persons will be ready to inquire, what sort of French it is, that Peter Langtoft made use of; partly to gratify them on that account, and partly to illustrate some expressions of Robert of Brunne, I have given many Specimens of that

The exactness made use of in publishing this piece of ancient History. To gratify some Readers, several Specimens of the French are also made publick with it.

## THE PUBLISHER'S

Language in the Notes, that I have put at the bottom of the page, in order to which I have perus'd three French MSS. of Peter Langtoft, that were sent me, after I had begun to print this Translation of Robert of Brunne's, by that most excellent and accomplished Herald, the learned Mr. Anstis. One of these MSS. (which is the most ancient) belongs to the College of Arms, the Members whereof, as they are Men of curious Learning, and ready to promote Works of this kind, generously consented, that I should have the loan of it, just in the same manner as (a thing I have hinted before <sup>1</sup>) the Members of the Inner-Temple (who are equally ready to advance Undertakings of this nature) most willingly agreed, that I should have the benefit of the MS. of Robert of Brunne. This MS. of the Heralds Office belong'd once to that truly great, good, and generous man (a person of an unaffected Plainness and primitive Spirit) Raphe Sheldon, of Beoly in Worcestershire, Esq; as appears from this Note, written at the beginning of it by the late industrious Antiquary Mr. Anthony à Wood, to whom Mr. Sheldon was a very great and liberal Friend <sup>2</sup>:

---

<sup>1</sup> §. X.    <sup>2</sup> See *Athenæ Ox.* | don's Affection for Mr. Wood  
*on.* Vol. I. col. 364, 604. Vol. | is this, that not long before he  
 II. col. 449, 866. One In- | died (as I am inform'd by an  
 stance of the said Raphe Shel- | excellent Friend) he gave Mr.  
 Wood,



*Given to the Heralds office at London by Raphe Sheldon of Beoly in Worestersh. Esq; who died 24 June 1684.*

The other two French MSS. belong to Mr. Anstis himself, and are both bound in one and the same Volume; but then whereas one continues the Story to the Death of K. Edward I. the other (which contains only the second Part of Langtoft) ends before that Period at these Words in pag. 287.

*He granted for to gyve þe fiftē penie to þe kȳng,  
In þis werre twele to igue, & save þer oþer þing.*

§. XVI. Tho' the French Passages at the bottom of the page are sufficient for my purpose, yet, as a farther Satisfaction to the inquisitive and curious Reader, I shall here publish, in this Preface, the Conclusion of the French Peter de Langtoft, as 'tis express'd in the MS. of the Heralds Office, especially since the last Lines are the Scribe's own, which will, in some measure, confirm what I have observ'd formerly about Chaucer's Revocation of the Par-

And; for further Satisfaction, the Conclusion of the French MS. that belongs to the Heralds Office is here inserted in this Preface.

---

Wood, by word of mouth, an hundred Pounds towards printing his *Athenæ Oxonienses*, which the Father (a person of great virtue and honour) of the present Edward Sheldon, Esq; confirm'd to him, (tho' not oblig'd) when he came in to possession of the estate. See my Appendix to Rob. of Gloucester, p. 601, 602, 603.

son's Tale, and the same might be withall confirm'd from other MSS. where the like Additions have been added by the Scribes or Librarians.

En lan auant nome cum nous auons oye,  
 Le iour Seryme de Iule, pur veit vous certifye,  
 Ke nostre Reis Edward, hi alme dieu benye,  
 A Burg suz les sablours, alaunt vers Albanye  
 En uerray creaunce, son secte ad finye.  
 Mairidenaunt apre la mort vllait puplye,  
 Translatez est le cors, par barnez e clerzye,  
 A Waltham pres de Loundres la demene abbeye,  
<sup>1</sup> Quatre Mays enteres solempneint seruye,  
 Baunez iust sur here, saunz auoyz esparye,  
 Partisaunt a pouers, qe pur cele alme pryé.  
<sup>2</sup> Trent e quatre annz. viii. Mays. v. iours vous die  
 Regnaye <sup>3</sup> suz Engleterre par ley establie,  
 Et resoun e dreit mayntint la monarchye.  
 De vigour e balue de sen replenye,  
<sup>4</sup> Pere nul auoyt douint gnicz seynorye.  
 En piete son l'ynage oye est <sup>5</sup> le cors senelye  
 A Westmonster en tounbe de marbre bien polye.  
 Le prince, qi pur nous suz Pilate fu punye,  
 Le Reis sire Edward receyue en la mercye,  
 Relese al alme face des foizetz en la vye,  
 En regal mancloun la mene a compaygnye  
 On sepuile ny ad fors ioye e melodye. A.

<sup>1</sup> Quatre mois enteres solemp- | that K. Edward I. reigned 34.  
 nement Cod. Anstisianns. <sup>2</sup> | years 7 months and 21 days.  
 Robert of Brunne (pag. 341.) | For he began his reign Nov.  
 hath wrongly express'd this, | 16. 1272. and died July 7.  
 by telling us that he reigned | 1307. <sup>3</sup> Sur Cod. Anst.  
 only 24 years 8 months and 5 | <sup>4</sup> Par nul auoyt Cod. Anst.  
 days. Our later Chronicles | <sup>5</sup> Son cors pro le cors in Cod.  
 are more exact, which tell us, | Anst.

## PREFACE.

LIX

C'y finist Percs son liue; en honour,  
 Et Jon qe lescrit parfet ad son labou,  
 Al terme de la vie Dieu luy face socou,  
 Et mette salme en repose ouc Scintz en dotou,  
 Jon qe lescrit ordre poite de prestre,  
 Le vikeze de Atlyngdete Sire Jon qe fu son mestre,  
 Le pria del escriuer par la mayne destre,  
 Dieus i mene souz almes en la ioye celestre.

§. XVII. And this is all I have to observe with respect to the French MSS. made use of by me in this Work, unless it be, that at the end of that belonging to the Heralds Office is a Note, written in an old hand, (but different from that of the MS.) concerning *Hugo Cardinalis*, a Person of great Sanctity and Learning, which I shall also take the liberty of publishing here.

Out of which MS. is here likewise published a Note concerning *Hugo Cardinalis*. . . Actor for auctor in many MSS. The Author of *liber festivalis* or *festialis*. A Remark relating to St. Wenefride.

Tempore Regis H. tercij.

" Hiis temporibus floruit vita & sciencia D<sup>ni</sup>. Hu- Anno Do-  
 " go Cardinalis, fratrum Prædicatorum ordinis, mini M.  
 " qui doctor eximius doctrina sana & perlucida CC. LXXII.  
 " totam Bibliam postillavit. Concordanciarum De Hugone  
 " eciam Bibliæ primus actor, fuit, quem, propter Cardinali,  
 " vitam bonam & scienciæ famam, papa Inno- qui concor-  
 " cencijus Sanctæ Sabinæ instituit Cardinalem, dancias Bi-  
 " in quo statu licet esset de ordine fratrum bliæ com-  
 " Prædicatorum, omnibus tamen Religionibus posuit.  
 " ac eciam secularibus placidus extitit." In  
 which

## THE PUBLISHER'S

which Note *actor* is the same with *auctor*, and *Religionibus* the same with *Religiosis*. The same way of writing *auctor* I have very often seen in old MSS. and so 'tis written in an excellent MS. of the Book called *Festival* or *Festial*, lent me by my very kind Friend Thomas Ward, of Longbridge, Esq; At the top of the first page of which MS. an old, but later, hand hath written, *This booke is called The Festial. of Englische Sermones. necessari to simple Curates and parish priests. her.* and at the bottom of the same (first) page, in the same later hand; is written, *actor libri dicitur fuisse.*

*plommer.* I cannot tell who is meant by *Plommer*. Mr. Ward (and I am not willing to dissent from so candid a Gentleman) conjectures him to have been *Robertus Plimmodunensis* or *Plymton*, so surnamed from Plympton in Devonshire, of which he was a black Canon, and is said<sup>1</sup> to have written *Conciones Dominicales*. But then I find by my late learned Friend Dr. Thomas Smith's Catalogue, that the MS. in the Cottonian Library<sup>2</sup> ascribes this Work to John Mirkus a black Canon of Lulshul or Lille-shull in Shropshire; and it may be very truly. This is certain, that there is but just room or time, for Plympton's being the Author or Col-

---

<sup>1</sup> Baleus, p. 379. Ed. fol. Pitseus, p. 409. <sup>2</sup> Claudius A. II. 1.

lector. For the Author says himself in the Prologue or Preface, **this treatys is drawn oute of legenda aurea**, the Author whereof *Jacobus de Viragine* or *Voragine* flourished *anno 1290.* and died *circa an. 1300.* and Robert Plympton seems (from Le Neve's *Fasti*<sup>1</sup>) to have been Archidiacon of Totton *an. 1310,* &c. Mr. Ward's MS. is in many respects different from the printed Book, spoken of by me in my Glossary<sup>2</sup> to Robert of Gloucester, but then these Variations chiefly relate to the Orthography, which is much changed in the Print for more modern Expressions, as less lyable to stop the Reader. And yet there is one Omission I find in the print, which I cannot forbear taking notice of here, and that is the Account of St. Wenefride, which is intirely left out in the print, and for that reason I shall subjoyn it in my Appendix, as a Specimen of the MS. and that it may be the better compared with the old Rhythmical Life of this holy Virgin, printed at the End of the late Bp. Fleetwood's<sup>3</sup> Book about her from a Copy that I transcribed and sent to his Lordship, at the same time that I sent him a Transcript of *Robertus Salopiensis's* Life of her, when I should likewise have communicated to him

---

<sup>1</sup> Cavei Hist. Lit. p. 654. E- | *Wenefrede, together with her*  
dit. Genev. <sup>2</sup> Pag. 96. <sup>3</sup> Pag. | *Litanies; with some Historical*  
739. <sup>4</sup> Num. XV. <sup>5</sup> Intit. | *Observations made thereon.*  
*The Life and Miracles of St.* | Lond. 1713. 8vo.

## THE PUBLISHER'S

this Account in the Festival, had I then had the command of the MS. tho' at the same time I cannot forbear noting, that my sentiments are widely different from the Bishop's with respect to this Virgin. For whereas the Bishop hath insinuated, that there never was any such holy person, and that all which is reported of her is fiction, on the contrary, I not only believe, that there was such a virtuous, pious and holy young woman, (nor can I imagine, that she would have been inserted either in the Calendar, or in the Offices of the Missal of Hereford, had the Compilers thought otherwise) but that she perform'd many uncommon acts of Devotion, which occasion'd many Speculations; and tho' I am far from believing many Things alledg'd about her, yet I think, that the very same Arguments that his Lordship hath offer'd in this Affair (if they should be judg'd valid, as I cannot think that they ever will) may as well serve to cut off abundance of other holy persons that are celebrated in History, whose Examples conduce much to the advancement of Piety and good Works. Arguments drawn from Inconsistence in Chronology are but weak, since it appears, that the Monks were generally but indifferent Chronologers. Neither are negative Arguments of any greater Force. *Robertus Salopicnsis* was Prior  
of

of Shrewsbury, a man of a devout life, and, without doubt, followed other Writers notwithstanding they be lost since; and yet at the same time it must not be questioned, but he followed Tradition in several Things. Which we need not wonder at, since the British History, in very great measure, depended, in the more early Times, upon Traditions delivered from Father to Son; so that in this case it was very difficult to adjust the exact years, such as accurate Chronologers expect. A thing that will be readily allow'd by such as consider the uncertainty of the ancient *years*. Nor do I see any thing incredible in what is said of a Cripple's being restored to his limbs, that had pray'd and watch'd all night at the shrine of St. Wenefride, whatever the latitudinarians and libertines of this Age may think. In old time Vigils were strictly observ'd, and 'twas not look'd upon as Superstition and Foppery to continue in devotion all night, and to render Thanks to Almighty God for Founders and Benefactors, and for the good Examples of pious Persons. The Name of Vigils is still retain'd, but the practice too much laid aside. The Founders of, and Benefactors to, Churches are (alass!) generally forgot, and little care is now adays taken about Thanksgivings for them.

Many Things in this Chronicle, that are different from what is related by other Historians.

§. XVIII. Such as are studious of our History and Antiquities will the more readily peruse this Chronicle, and consider the particulars with the greater attention, when they shall understand, that there are many Things in it, that are different from what is related by other Historians. The reader himself will be much more able to collect all these together, and afterwards to pass a Judgment upon them, than I am. Nor indeed is it properly my business to point out such Passages, my immediate province, in Affairs of this kind, being to act the part of a faithfull Editor, not that of an Annotator or Commentator. And yet, for the sake of some, that have occasionally consulted me about such Passages, I shall here take notice of several of them, as I have observed a few at the bottom of the Page of the Text, and will leave the rest to those that shall take the opportunity of reading over and considering this obsolete Chronicle, which will be esteemed (unless I am very much mistaken) as such another Curiosity as that of Robert of Gloucester, to which as I added a Glossary (that hath given great satisfaction, and been well receiv'd) so I have likewise perform'd the same piece of service for Peter Langtoft, by which his Language (which is now often very difficult and intricate, notwithstanding  
in



in his own time it was the vulgar speech) will be render'd the more intelligible.

§. XIX. In pag. 5. the Author tells Some of which are us, that K. Ina had a Son named Adel-<sup>here enumerated.</sup> lus, and that he died before his Father, a particular which I do not, at present, remember to be mentioned by others. In pag. 8. he calls Eadbald K. of Lyndesay, tho' he was really K. of Mercia. He uses this stile, it may be, because Lindsay in Lincolnshire was the chief part of his Residence, and therefore afterwards<sup>1</sup> he makes use of the word *Lyndesay* for *Mercia*. In p. 13. he tells us, that Brightrick, K. of the Westsaxons, was buried at Tewksbury, whereas others say it was at Wareham. In p. 17. he acquaints us, that Wilaf, K. of Mercia was slain by K. Egbert at Doncaster. Others make him only vanquished, and observe that he was afterwards an obedient tributary Subject to Egbert. In p. 20. he notes, that K. Ethelwulph was buried at Winchester, and this is what the generality of Historians agree in, tho' Speed tells us<sup>2</sup>, that he was first buried at *Stamrige*, and afterwards removed to Winchester, which seems very true, since even Asser *Menevensis*, according to Archbishop Parker's excellent Edition in *Saxon Characters*, agrees in the very same thing, as

<sup>1</sup> Pag. 9.

<sup>2</sup> Pag. 659.

THE PUBLISHER'S

may be seen in my Discourse<sup>1</sup> upon some Historical Fragments (lent me by Mr. Murray) at the end of Heming's Chartulary of the Church of Worcester, to which I shall refer the Reader, In p. 21. he tells us, that Eadbald was buried at Shirburn; but then others tell us, that he was afterwards removed to Salisbury, which was the Roman *Sorbiadunum*: and whereas in p. 20. he makes Ethelbert to be uncle to the said Edbald, and brother of K. Ethelwulf, on the contrary Ethelbert was really brother to K. Edbald, and Ethelwulf the father of both. In the same page Elfrith (or, as others, Ethelred) is made to be son of K. Egbright, or Egbert, whereas he was his grandson. In p. 22. he tells us, that the town, where S. Edmund, King of the East-Angles, was slain, was in old time called *Dren*. Others say *Heglesdune*<sup>2</sup>, *Eglesdene*<sup>3</sup>, *Egledon*<sup>4</sup>, *Æglestoun*<sup>5</sup>, *Hoxton*<sup>6</sup>, or *Horon*<sup>7</sup>. In p. 23. he says, that K. Elfride, or Ethelred, was buried at Driffeld (or Driffield in Yorkshire) whereas others say, he was interred at Winburn, in Dorsetshire; but then he hath confounded the said Elfride with Alkfryd, or A-

---

<sup>1</sup> P. 659. <sup>2</sup> Mon. Angl. T. I. p. 284. a, b. <sup>3</sup> Mon. Angl. T. I. p. 291. a. <sup>4</sup> Legend of the Saints (pr. by W. de Worde 1495.) fol. cccxxxix. <sup>5</sup> b. in the 127 of Saine Edmund King and martyr. <sup>6</sup> Lelandi Coll. Vol. I. p. 219. <sup>7</sup> Ibid. Mon. A. Tom. I. p. 285. b.

lured,

lured, the most learned K. of Northumberland, who was really buried at Driffeld<sup>1</sup>; and 'tis with no less error, that he makes<sup>2</sup> that to belong to K. Elfrid or Ethelred, with respect to his spending his time; which belong'd really to Ælfred the Great. In p. 25. is something added by Robert of Brunne himself about Hanelok the Dane, which is not in the original Peter Langtoft, nor our common Historians, but 'tis, however, very imperfect, occasioned, I suppose, for want of Vouchers. In p. 27. he makes Edward the Elder have 14 children by two Wives. Others say three Wives. His Notes about these Wives are short but singular; yet he did not know the Names of some of these Daughters. In pag. 28. he makes K. Athelstan cast his brother Edwin headlong into the Thames, which is different from what is taught us by other Historians, as may be seen in pag. 337. of the third Ed. of Speed. In p. 29, 30. he tells us, that Charles, K. of France, married Ilde or Edhild, sister of K. Athelstan, whereas, according to others<sup>3</sup>, she was married to Hugh Earl of Paris. Authors differ mightily about the Names of Edward the Elder's Daughters and their Marriages. From p. 29. we learn,

---

<sup>1</sup> Camdeni Brit. p. 635. Ed. | <sup>2</sup> Guil. Malmesb. p. 28. & 4to. 1600. <sup>3</sup> Pag. 23, 24. | Speed p. 338.

that P<sup>er</sup>ter Langtoft cannot tell us; where K. Athelstan was buried. Robert of Brunne says at Hexham; but others report it to be at Malmshury. The Saxon Chronicle tells us not. In p. 33. he tells us, K. Edred was crowned at London. Others say at Kingston. In p. 34. he makes Edwy brother to K. Edred, whereas he was his nephew. In p. 35. he remarks, that **Rumley** or **Rumsey** Nunnery in Hampshire was founded by K. Edgar for an hundred Nunns. This was a large number. And I began to suspect, that it was a Mistake, especially when the Valuation at the Dissolution did not, as I thought, answer so many. But, upon my writing to my learned Friend Mr. Richard Furney, I was soon convinced, that there could not be fewer than are assigned in this Chronicle, from an Election of an Abbess of this Place in the year 1333. being the seventh year of the Reign of K. Edw. III. at which time there being very near 90 Nunns present, that gave their Votes, it is an undeniable Proof of what is asserted by the Historian. Mr. Furney extracted his Account from an authentick Register, and I shall beg leave to insert it at large from his Letter in my Appendix. There is no doubt but the Provision was every way equal to the Number, as well as to the Quality, of those that

were educated and lived here, notwithstanding the Valuation I have spoke of, tho' I believe the Revenues, upon some Accidents or other, had been much altered from what they had been originally, as the Number of the Nunns was also very much decreased some time before the Dissolution, as may appear from what my before mentioned Friend Mr. Furney hath observ'd in another<sup>1</sup> Letter to me, in which he hath been pleased likewise to insert a Note, about our old Historians, from a valuable MS. of Trivet. There is now a fair Church at Rumsey, being the remains of the dissolved Nunnery<sup>2</sup>. In the same page (viz. 35.) tho' the Author tells us that Edmund, Son of K. Edgar, died at Peterburgh, yet he hath not been pleased to inform us, where he was buried, which others assure us was at Rumsey Nunnery, that I have been speaking of. Whence we read in the Saxon Chronicle, An. DCCCCLXXI. Heþ forð ferðe Eadmund æþeling. 7 hyr lic lið æt Rumeri-ze. With which agrees Florence of Worcester. *Clito Eadmundus, (saith he<sup>4</sup>,) regis Eadgari filius obiit, & in monasterio Runtesiæ honorifice est sepultus.* Nor is there any variation in that most excellent Copy of Florence that I have with

---

<sup>1</sup> See my Appendix to this Preface, Numf. XVII. <sup>2</sup> See p. 95. P. 121. Pag. 358. Ed. 4to. sub anno 971.

Sir Thomas Herbert's Memoirs,

Dr. Langbaine's MSS. Notes. This Nunnery had been founded but the year before by his Father K. Edgar, and so this was one of the first Bodies of the Royal Family with the Sepulture of which it was ever honoured. In p. 36. he tells an odd, miraculous Story of K. Edgar. This K. Edgar died, according to our common Chronicles (tho' there is a difference in some Writers) in the year 975. Our Author informs us, that twenty four years after his Death (which must be *A. D.* 999.) one Edward was Abbat of Glastonbury, and that this Edward made a Tombe for K. Edgar, but that the Tombe being too little, the King's shanks were broke by the direction of the Abbat, in order to fit the Tombe for the Royal Remains. Hereupon Bloud and Water, it seems, came out of the shanks, and the Abbat became blind. Which being look'd upon as a Miracle, Bishop Oswald (the same that became Bishop of Worcester *A. D.* 960. and being translated to the Archbishoprick of York in 971. or 972. held both 'till his Death in 992.) ran and laid the Bones in a rich Shrine, and that was (as our Author asserts) in *A. D.* 973: (at which time Sigegarus, and not Edward, whose Name I do

---

<sup>a</sup> Godwin de Pras. Part. I. Fasti Ecclesiæ Angl. p. 294,  
p. 504. & Part. II. p. 17. 306.  
Isaacson's Chron. Le Neve's

## PREFACE.

LXXI

not find in the List, was Abbat of this Monastery) which could not be, if the thing happened, as our Author himself assures us it did, twenty four years after the King's Decease. But I think, after all, that the Story is to be understood of Egelward, (abbat of Glastonbury) it being reported of him by John of Glastonbury in his MS. Chronicle, and placed by him under the year 1052. a little after which sacrilegious act (for such the violence shew'd to K. Edgar's Body was esteem'd) the said abbat (as we are assured by that Author) died distracted. In p. 37. he tells us, that Edward the Martyr was buried in a Shrine at Westminster. Others tell us, that he was first buried at Warham, and afterwards removed to the Minster of Shaftsbury; tho' the Saxon Chronicle and Florence of Worcester say, that he was interr'd at Warham, without adding any thing about his being removed to Shaftsbury. Nor do they place his Death under the year 976. as our Author doth, but under 978. In p. 40. he makes Edmund Ironside to be Son of K. Ethelred by his Queen Emma, whereas others make him his Son by his first Wife Elgiva. In p. 43. he speaks of Kurkille Earl of the Danes, where, at the Bottom of the page, I have noted, that he is commonly called Turkille: and indeed it is Turkille in the French MSS. In p. 44. he

makes Swane die at Gainesborough; and so also some others: but then others relate, that it was at Thetford. In p. 46. he speaks of K. Eilred or Ethclred's falling sick at Euesham, whereas others say it was at Cosham. In p. 47. he makes mention of the Tower of Northampton, (and 'tis **tour** also in the French;) by which word Tower I take it for granted, that he means the Castle of Northampton, concerning which Leland writes thus: *The Castl stondith hard by the West Gate, and hath a large Kepe. The Area of the Residew is very large, and bullewarkes of Yerth be made afore the Castelle Gate.* In p. 49. he tells us, that Edmund Ironside had no other Child besides one Son, he means Edward surnamed the outlaw; whereas 'tis well known from other Historians, that he had another Son (younger than Edward) called Edmund. Passing over what he says in p. 50. of Harold Harefoot (the Son of K. Cnute) his being a Bastard (for the best Historians affirm the same). I cannot but remark, that whereas in p. 51. he makes the said Cnute to be buried at Westminster, others assure us it was at Winchester. In the same page (*viz.* 51.) he says, that the Assembly or Meeting about Harold Harefoot and Hardeknute was under (or near) Southampton. Others tell us it was at

---

<sup>1</sup> Itin. Vol. I. p. 6.



Oxford. In p. 58. he tells us, that Earl Godwyn's Wife, that was banished by the Earl her Husband, was named Engle. Others call her Gytha. In p. 73. he stiles William the Conqueror's Queen by the name of Elianor, whom others call Maud. In p. *ead.* he calls Harold of Kent's Sons Edmund and Edwyn. Others call them Edmuad and Godwyn. In p. 82. he calls that the third year of William the Conqueror's Reign, which was the thirteenth, and that the fourth, which was the fourteenth. In p. 105. he informs us, that Maud, K. Hen. the First's Queen, was buried in a Tomb at St. Paul's, and refers us to Westminster for her Story. Others make no mention of her being buried at St. Paul's, but tell us it was at Westminster, and so in particular the Register of the Priory of the Blessed Trinity (commonly called Christ-Church) at London, as may be seen from what I have published out of it in my Ed. of *Guilielmus Neubrigensis*<sup>1</sup>, where her Epitaph also occurs; which Epitaph, it may be, our Author had in view, when he directed us to Westminster for a particular Account of her, tho', I suppose, he had also some other Record (that was much fuller) in his mind, that is since quite lost. In p. 127. he tells us, that it was reported, that Maud the Empress

---

<sup>1</sup> P. 702.

was buried at Feversham; but others more truly observe, that it was at Bec in Normandy. The Mistake arose from Maud the Wife of K. Stephen's being buried there, and 'twas K. Stephen's Queen (and not the Empress Maud, as our Author would insinuate) that built the Offices of Feversham Abbey, which Performance, perhaps, occasioned the Author of the Prose Additions <sup>1</sup> to Robert of Gloucester, as well as Henry Huntingdon <sup>2</sup>, to ascribe the Foundation of the whole Abbey to her, whereas it was really built by her Husband K. Stephen. In p. 128. he observes, That Thomas à Becket's Father (Gilbert à Becket, Portgrave of the City of London, then the highest Governour of the City <sup>3</sup>) was rich, being able to spend 300 *libs.* that is, as I take it, *per annum*, which, indeed, was a very great Sum for those days. In p. 157. he quotes the Romance, and the Romancer, of Rich. I. A Romance is a Story or Tale. But I have said enough, relating to the Romance of that King's Reign, in my Preface <sup>4</sup> to Robert of Gloucester, whither I shall, therefore, refer the Reader. In p. 205. he tells us, that K. Richard was wounded the

---

<sup>1</sup> F. 227. b. <sup>2</sup> P. 467. | of S. Thomas Archbishops of  
<sup>3</sup> See pag. 137, 138. of a very | Canterbury. *Collonia. m. dc.*  
scarce Book, intit. *The Life* | xxxix. 8vo. <sup>4</sup> Pag. LV.  
or *The Ecclesiasticall Historie* | &c.

fourth day next before Palm-sunday, and died nine days after. Others differ from this. In p. 206, 211. he calleth K. John's Wife (by whom the King had two Sons, and two Daughters) Elizabeth for Isabell. In p. 207. he calls Arthur Earl of Britain's Sister Margaret, that is call'd Elianor by others. In p. 210. he speaks of K. John's making the Walls, (or, as he expresses it, the **Groundwalle**) of Berwick Castle very thick; a Thing which Fordun should have spoke of in particular, had he thought fit to have mentioned the Works of K. John distinctly. In p. 212. he makes K. John's Daughter Isabell to have no Children. Others say she had Children; and here, upon this occasion of the mention of K. John, I cannot but take notice of a singular Remark of John Ross, who in p. 199. of his Chronicle, that I published, calls Richard K. of Almayn *the Brother*, instead of *the Son, of K. John*. In p. 217. he tells us, that K. Hen. III. and his Retinuc lodged in the Priory of Lewes, immediately before the Battle of Lewes, (for which Priory, I believe, he had a particular regard) a Thing which tho' noted by Stowe (who had perused Brunne and other old MSS.) yet is passed over by many other of our Historians. In p. 248. he says, he *thinks* Q. Elianor, Wife of Edw. I. was buried at Westminster. He might have been positive,

sitive, since 'tis certain she was buried there. In p. 323. he tells us, that the Court of Rome is not to be trusted, and so the French MSS. too. This was a bold Stroke, and is what is alluded to by Mr. Bridges about Pope Boniface in the Fragment of his Letter, printed in the Appendix'. In p. 333. is mention made of Eymer, or Aymer, of Valence, Earl of Pembroke, a Man of great Valour, and very serviceable both to K. Edw. I. and K. Edw. II. and had suitable Rewards from each. This is the same Aymer de Valence; that, in the 8<sup>th</sup> year of K. Edw. II. (to note this by the way) obtained licence<sup>2</sup> to make a Castle of his House at Bampton in Oxfordshire, a Thing which if Dr. Plot had considered, he would not have conjectur'd; (or rely'd, I believe, upon tradition, which informs us,) that it was built by K. John.

In lieu of the first Part. of Robert of Brunne, several Things are here published of greater use and service. An Account of Mr. Andrew Paschal. A Note about Mr. John Gibbon's MSS. Papers in the Heralds Office. A short Account of

§. XX. After I had, upon mature deliberation, and with the Advice and Concurrence of learned Friends, resolved to pass over the first Part of Robert of Brunne, as being a Translation of a French Version of Geffry of Monmouth (whose Story may be best learned from the original Latin)

<sup>1</sup> Num. VI. <sup>2</sup> Pat. 8 E. 2, p. 2. m. 22. Dugdale's Baronage, T. I. p. 777.

## PREFACE.

LXXVII

I determined with my self, in lieu thereof, to publish some things besides, that would be of more benefit and service to the Reader, and be withall, less bulky, (for both the Parts, with the Glossary, would have made III Volumes.) Accordingly, therefore, besides the curious Remains, that are to

Dr. Walter Charleton. An Interpolation in Camden, which Mr. Webb did not discover to be such. A Passage relating to Stonehenge from Mr. Camden's MS. Supplement in the hands of the publisher.

be met with in the Appendix to this Preface, and in the Glossary, I have published at the End of Peter Langtoft these four Pieces following, viz.

(1.) *The Copy of a Roll concerning Glastonbury Abbey, being a Survey of all the Estates belonging to that House at the Dissolution, taken by the King's Order and for his Vse, at the Dissolution.* This Copy was transcrib'd from a noble and beautifull Original in the Hands of a Friend (personally unknown to me) at Colchester, who was pleased afterwards very kindly to present me with the said Copy, and to express himself with many particular Marks of Affection and Esteem for whatever I undertake for the publick. (2.) An

*Account of the Hospital of St. Mary Magdalen (near Bautre) in Nottinghamshire, by John Slacke, Master of that Hospital.* It was written at the Command of the most Reverend Father in God Richard Neile, Lord Archbishop of York, as appears from the Author's Letter (at the beginning of it) to the Archbishop. I transcrib'd

it

it from a MS. in the hands of a modest ingenious Gentleman, who is one of the subscribers to what I publish. 'Tis a very faulty MS. But it being the only one I know of, I could not correct it otherwise than by conjecture. What Corrections and Notes I have made occur at the bottom of the page. Only I must here beg leave farther to note, that whereas in p. 394, l. 19. it is 250. l. in the English, in the Latin, immediately following, it is (p. 395. l. 26.) at large *pro ducentis & quadraginta libris*; that the Robert Archbp. of York, mentioned p. 398. l. 4. was Robert Halgate or Holgate; that for *Commissioner* in p. 400. l. 2. perhaps should be read *Commissioners*; and that in p. 405. l. 2. may be also read *vacancy* as well as *vacante*, tho' *vacante* be nearest the MS. After I had proposed to print this MS. I writ to my ingenious and worthy Friend Mr. Thoresby of Leedes in Yorkshire, in order to get some farther Information about this Hospital, much about which time I also writ to my learned and accomplished Friend Dr. Richardson of North Bierly near Bradford in that County, that I might, if possible, get some Intelligence about the nature of Earth-horns, mentioned in this Chronicle. But tho' the Action, upon account of which these Earth-horns are spoke of, happened in that part of England, and tho' the Dr. be a person extremely

tremely curious in such Affairs, yet he was not able to satisfy me in that point, as I soon understood by a Letter from him, at which time he was pleased likewise to acquaint me, that Mr. Thoresby was incapable of writing himself to me, he having been lately seized with a palsy, which had, in a great measure, deprived him of the use of his right hand. Hereupon I writ again to Dr. Richardson, with a Request, that he would, were it not too great trouble, be pleased to give me what light he could himself in the Affair of the Hospital. Whereupon, not long after, he obliged me, not only with a Letter written by himself, but with one that he had receiv'd from Mr. Thoresby, who had employ'd a Friend to write for him; a Copy of both which shall be subjoyn'd in the Appendix'. (3.) Two Tracts written by an anonymous Author, and transcrib'd by me from two MSS. (both written in the same hand) that were lent me by Mr. West of Balliol-College, an ingenious and curious Gentleman I have mentioned formerly<sup>2</sup>) whom (I have always found very ready and willing to promote whatever I undertake for the publick service and benefit of Learning. The first of these Dis-

---

<sup>1</sup> Num. XVIII. <sup>2</sup> See at also p. 682, 706, 739. of my pag. 285. of *The History and Glossary to Robert of Glou. Antiquities of Glastonbury.* See cester.

courses is about some Roman Antiquities discover'd near *Conquest* in Somersetsshire, supposed to be the place where the Romans Conquest of Britain was compleated. The other is concerning *Stone-Henge*, and is intituled, by it's Author, *A fool's Bolt soon shott at Stonage*. It is, without doubt, the same Tract that is mentioned in the following Passage of the Additions to Bp. Gibson's English Ed. of *Camden's Britannia*<sup>1</sup>: "The opinions about *Stonehenge* may be reduc'd to these 7 heads; 1. That it is a work of the Phœnicians, as Mr. *Sammes* in his *Britannia* conceits; a conjecture that has met with so little approbation, that I shall not stay to confute it. 2. That it was a Temple of the *Druids* long before the coming of the Romans; which Mr. *John Aubrey*, Fellow of the Royal Society, endeavours to prove in his Manuscript Treatise, entitl'd *Monumenta Britannica*; 3. That it was an old Triumphal British Monument, erected to *Anawith* the Goddess of Victory, after a bloody battel won by the illustrious *Stanings*, and his Cangick Giants, from *Divitiacus* and his *Belge*; and that the Captives and Spoils were sacrific'd to the said Idol in this Temple. An opinion advanc'd (upon what grounds

---

<sup>1</sup> Col. 108. Ed. Lond. 1695.



“ I know not ) in an anonymous MS. writ about  
 “ the year 1666, and now in the hands of the  
 “ learned Mr. *Andrew Paschal*, Rector of *Ched-*  
 “ *zoy* near Bridgewater. 4. That it was a mo-  
 “ nument rais’d by the Britains in memory of  
 “ Queen *Boadicia*; advanc’d by the Author of  
 “ *Nero-Cæsar*. 5. That it was a Temple built  
 “ by the Romans to the God *Cælum*, or *Termi-*  
 “ *mus*, of the *Tuscan* order; is Mr. *Jones’s*, in  
 “ his ingenious Conjecture upon this Subject.  
 “ 6. That it was the burial-place of *Vther-Pen-*  
 “ *dragon*, *Constantine*, *Ambrosius*, and other Bri-  
 “ tish Kings; or as others would have it, a mo-  
 “ nument erected by *Ambrosius* in memory of the  
 “ Britains here slain. 7. That it was a Danish  
 “ monument, erected either for a burial-place,  
 “ a trophy for some victory, or a place for the  
 “ election and coronation of their Kings.”  
 These two MSS. are also very faulty. Some of  
 the Errors I have corrected, as the Reader  
 will perceive as he goes along. What Notes I  
 have added, I have distinguished from the Au-  
 thor’s own by the Letter *H*. I have, after my  
 usual custom, observed the Author’s spelling,  
 which sometimes is *singular*, as indeed his Ob-  
 servations, tho’ learned, are likewise frequent-  
 ly *singular*. Who the Author of these two Tracts  
 was is to me very uncertain. ’Tis probable  
 that some light may be learned from Mr. Pa-  
 schal’s

schal's Papers (provided they are still in being) which after his Death (that happened, I think, in 1696, when he was succeeded as Chancellor of the Church of Wells by Marshall Brydges, A. M. being installed ' on Nov. 23. that year) fell into the hands of the late Dr. Roger Maunder, Master of Balliol-College. As for Mr. Paschal (to whom these Tracts belong'd) he was (to observe this by the by) Fellow of Queen's-College in Cambridge, being admitted as such an: 1652. thus: *Andreas Pascall Middlesex: in Artibus Bac: electus [Socius Coll., Regim:] Jan: 18: admissus Jan: 19: 1652.* This, the Reader will observe, was in ill times, and therefore Dr. Martin the ejected President or Master upon his being restor'd in 1660: oblig'd all the Fellows that had broken Titles to a new admission; Andr: Pascall stands thus, *Andreas Pascall Londinensis in locum Mr. Johis Coldham* (who was an ejected Fellow.) And after he and the rest are nam'd, it is entred thus, *Omnes rite electi, jurati, & admissi, secundum Statuta Collegii, Aug: 23, 24, & 25, 1660.* And yet Mr. Paschal did not immediately succeed Mr. Coldham, but Mr. John Hore (as I think) the immediate Successor. Dr. Martin was a Man of very high Principles, and show'd it sufficiently

---

<sup>1</sup> Le Neve's Fasti, pag. 41.

upon this occasion, in such a manner, as I care not to describe. Mr. Paschal besides the Degree of Mr. of Arts, took that of Bach. of Div. and was presented to the Rectory of Chedzoy above mentioned by Francis Rolle, Esq;. He was afterwards Prebendary, Canon, and (as hath been already insinuated) Chancellor of Wells, but publish'd nothing that I know of, but some few Observations mention'd in the Transactions of the Royal Society. He wrot a Book upon the Revelations, but agreeing in his Notions with the late Prophetic (as he was commonly stiled) Bishop of Worcester, he never printed it. I never heard but Mr. Paschal was in himself a grave, sober, learned, and religious Clergyman; but by the Instigation of his Wife and Daughters, he did some Things which were prejudicial to his Successor at Chedzoy, and a Blemish to his own Character. But to return, the late ingenious Mr. John Bagford in his *Catalogue* (prefix'd to the late English Translation of Camden's *Britannia*) of *some Books and Treatises relating to the Antiquities of England*, speaks of a *short Treatise upon Stonehenge written by Mr. John Gibbons. MS.* Mr. Gibbon's MSS. Papers are now in the Heralds Office; but my Friend before mentioned Mr. West, who, with the learned Peter Le Neve, Esq;. Norroy K. of Arms, hath turned them all over, assures me, that

those Papers chiefly relate to Heraldry, except some few concerning Judicial Astrology, Impulses, Dæmons, &c. and that there is nothing among them concerning Stone-henge, besides a leaf at the End of Dr. Charleton's printed Book, which is indeed wrote by Mr. Gibbon, but contains only extracts from Charleton, without any mention of it's being British. This single leaf confirms Mr. Bagford's Assertion; but then what is become of Mr. Gibbon's Tract I cannot say. He was a man of Humour and some Learning; but then there is more Learning in the two imperfect Pieces I now publish than, I think, he was master of. Whoever the Author of them was, 'tis plain from what he says' himself, that he was living in the year 1670. He designed a Frontispiece to his Discourse of Stone-henge, containing a Draught of some (as many as he thought necessary) of the Stones: as also a Map of Wiltshire. But both are wanting. Nor do I think, that he ever finished them. Tho' Dr. Charleton's opinion was exploded by many, when his Book first appeared, yet it was applauded by divers very eminent Antiquaries, one of which was Sir William Dugdale, and they did not stick to affirm (what vex'd Mr. Webb, who

---

<sup>1</sup> See p. 499, 501.

PREFACE.

LXXXV

could not forbear speaking very contemptuously, as appears sufficiently from his Book, not only of Dr. Charleton, but even of that very great man Olaus Wormius,) that they verily believ'd Dr. Charleton to be in the right in making it a Danish Work, and since that time many others declare themselves to be of the same mind, as others do (one of which is the Author we publish) that it is British, in which they are confirm'd by the very old British Writer in Jesus-College Library. I care not (at present) to interpose my own opinion in this Affair, but I shall beg leave to take notice, that whereas all the three Pieces about Stone-henge, viz. Mr. Jones's, Dr. Charleton's, and Mr. Webb's, are very lately<sup>1</sup> reprinted together; it appears to me, that the Edition is by no means equal to the first Edition of those three Pieces, (I mean as they all three came out separately<sup>2</sup>) and that 'tis there<sup>3</sup> falsely insinuated that Dr. Charleton died *in one of those Islands, which are the Remains of our French Conquests*. For tho' this great man was unhappily reduced to Straits in the latter part of his Life, and found himself therefore obliged to retire into the Isle of Jer-

---

<sup>1</sup> Lond. 1725. fol. <sup>2</sup> The first, viz. Mr. Jones's, at Lond. 1655. fol. The 2d. Dr. Charleton's, at Lond. 1663. 4to. The 3d. Mr. Webb's, at Lond. 1665. fol. <sup>3</sup> Viz. at the beginning of the Edition, in p. 5. of the *Memoirs relating to the Life and Writings of Inigo Jones, Esq;*.

sey, yet he really died (in a very indigent condition, *ſ* *Anglia quam ingrata es bene de te merentibus!* . said some great Danish Lords to the famous Mr. Oughtred <sup>1</sup>) and was buried in London, as may be learned from the following Passage, that was writ in a Letter <sup>2</sup> to me by my late reverend and very learned Friend Dr. Thomas Smith, which will also correct what is said in the second (or spurious) Edition of *Athenæ Oxonienses* <sup>3</sup> about the year in which Dr. Charleton was born.—“ As to what concerns Dr. Charleton, short Memorials of whose life, I beelieve, wil be written by some one or other of his surviving friends, I can onely tell you at present very briefly, that hee was the son of Walter Charleton, Doctor of Divinity, and borne at Shipton-Mallet in Somersetshire on Candlemas day in the yeare 1620. as wee reckon, bred up in Magdalen Hall Oxon. under the care and tuition of Mr. afterwards Bp. Wilkins, created Dr. of Physic in 1642. as appears by the diploma, which hee formerly shewed mee, and was together with Dr. afterwards Sir Edward Greaves, brother of Mr. John Greaves, travelling Physician to K. Charles I. from that time forward,

---

<sup>1</sup> Coll. nostr. MSS. Vol. 82. p. 37. <sup>2</sup> Dated at London 31 May 1707. <sup>3</sup> Vol. II. coll. 1112. where we are told, that Dr. Charlton was born at Shipton-Mallet on the second day of Febr. 1619.

“ whilst

PREFACE.

LXXXVII

“ whilst that excellent, but greatly unfortunate,  
 “ Prince was able to keepe an army in the field:  
 “ which particulars, with many others, too long  
 “ to bee here related, hee has told mee more  
 “ than once. Hee dyed the 24<sup>th</sup>. of Aprīl last  
 “ in the 87<sup>th</sup>. yeare of his age, and was buried,  
 “ according to his earnest desire and express-  
 “ order, the Sunday next following, viz. 27<sup>th</sup>.  
 “ very privately and obscurely in the Church-  
 “ yard of St. Paul’s Covent-Garden”. Instead  
 of saying more of this learned Person at this  
 time, I will only insert what is spoke of him  
 in a 4<sup>to</sup>. MS. that formerly belong’d to him-  
 self, but was given by him, about a fortnight  
 before he died, (and not long after his *Ono-*  
*masiicon Zoicon*, of the folio Ed. with great  
 Improvements by the Author’s own hand, in  
 order to another Edition, which it very well  
 deserves, was sent to the University of Ox-  
 ford, and put into the Bodlejan Library, to  
 which he had in his prosperity been a Bene-  
 factor) to the said Dr. Thomas Smith, who  
 left it to me with many other MSS. at his  
 Death as a Legacy. *Omnibus in confesso est,*  
*hunc virum constantissime Regias partes calami-*  
*tosissimis etiam temporibus tutatum fuisse: sæpiùs*  
*dicentem, Religioni, nisi salvâ Rep. consuli non*

---

• Viz. in. 1707.

*posse; salvam autem Remp. servari non posse, nisi Legitima successione servatâ.* There is one thing which at this time it will be improper to pass by, and that is, that whereas Mr. Webb hath taken abundance of learned pains to refute Dr. Charleton, I have often wondered, that, whilst he was striving all he could<sup>1</sup> to weaken that Argument, to prove the Monument Danish, which the Dr. drew from an Inscription in odd Characters, quoted by him from Camden, and supposed by him to be Runick, Mr. Webb (who otherwise very readily catcht at every thing he could of that kind to expose the Dr.) had not discovered, that the Words were not really Mr. Camden's, but his Translator Dr. Philemon Holland's. The Words are these, as I find them in pag. 254. of the Translation<sup>2</sup>: *I have heard that in the time of King Henric the Eighth, there was found neere this place [of Stonehenge] a table of mettall, as it had bene tinne and lead commixt, inscribed with many letters, but in so strangè a Character, that neither Sir Thomas Eliot; nor master Lilye Schoole-Master of Pauls, could read it, and therefore neglected it. Had it bene preserved, somewhat happily might have bene discovered as concerning Stonehenge, which now lieth obscured.* Which Words are in no Latin

---

<sup>1</sup> See Webb's *Vindication of* &c. of the new Edition. <sup>2</sup> Of *Stone-Heng restored.* p. 78, | the Ed. at Lond. 1637.



Edition; nor is there any thing like them in Mr. Camden's Latin Book (of the folio Ed. 1607.) as I have it corrected and improved with his own hand, and for that reason both this, as well as other Interpolations of Dr. Holland are deservedly put at the bottom of the Page in the late Translation. And yet I cannot but acknowledge, that Mr. Camden does speak of an Inscription in his *Supplement to the Topographical Description of Britain*, which I have in MS.<sup>1</sup> in his own hand writing, where<sup>2</sup> I meet with the following Things about Stone-henge that are not in the *Britannia* it self. "As  
 " for Stone-heng uppon Sarisbury plaine, I cannot tell what to saye. I knowe oute of Vitruvius that the<sup>3</sup> auncient imitating the nature  
 " of heaven, did especially take pleasure in  
 " round Temples; yeat considering the rudnes  
 " and deformity of this work, I cannot persuad  
 " my self, that it was in Claudius the Emperour's  
 " time, when Architecture was come to the  
 " topp of perfection. To think they were

<sup>1</sup> Inter Codd. Smithianos, Num. VII. It is thus intit'led: *A Supplement of the Topographical Description of Britain published mdcx. Containing many specialities which since have intervened concerning Creations, Inscriptions and other memorable matters in England, Scotland, Ireland, and the Ysles adjacent. Dedicated to the right*

*honorable Thomas Earle of Arundell and Surrey Premier Earle of England, Lord Howard, Fitz-Alan, Maltravers, Mowbray, Segrave, Bruse and Clun, Knight of the most noble Order of the Garter, and of his Majestie's most honorable privie Councell.* <sup>2</sup> Pag. 46. <sup>3</sup> L. auncients.

“ brought hither oute of Ireland by Magick,  
 “ were doting impiety, when the like stones,  
 “ for greatness and graine, are found at Avely  
 “ and elswher. If the smale Pyramides about  
 “ the midle centure be just thirty, it may allud  
 “ to the 30 encounters, that Vespasian, sent  
 “ by Claudius, had with the Britains. If, we  
 “ have any hope of discovering the veritie here-  
 “ in, the very centre is to be digged open, and  
 “ the inscription to be looked with the letters  
 “ down-ward. How so ever it seemeth to con-  
 “ cern Aurelius Ambrosius, when as the next  
 “ town is denominated Ambresbury of him.  
 “ And because it is situated in the midst as it  
 “ were of the Isle from the East to the West,  
 “ doubtless it was a place for convention uppon  
 “ divers occasions. I doubt not but the Bri-  
 “ taines and Hengest mett here for their confe-  
 “ rence, and that it was called therupon Sten-  
 “ Hengest (as Rudborn testifieth.) How Clau-  
 “ dius remitted to the nobilitie of Britane the  
 “ confiscation of their goodes, and that ther-  
 “ fore they erected an alter to him, and adored  
 “ him as a God, and how select gentlemen  
 “ wearing Crownes of Gold spent their private  
 “ states, you maye reade in Tacitus and Aria-  
 “ nus, and the Britans called it *Chorea Gigantum*,  
 “ that is, the Temple of Giances, you may  
 “ read in the foresayd Rudborn, and how the  
 “ place

“ place was called *Kiffen Wydden*, i. the ridge  
 “ of Bath, I need not to remember, neither  
 “ how the stones of Mercolij were so disposed,  
 “ that here was one stone, ther was an other,  
 “ and the third placed upon them both. At a Selden de  
Diis Syris.  
 “ word, I am persuaded that this were so  
 “ placed by the first inhabitants of this ysle,  
 “ when as Hector Boëtius writeth that *Mainus*  
 “ *King of the Scotts did institut solemne ceremonies,*  
 “ *and erecting huge stones in divers places circularly,*  
 “ *the greatest ever toward the South, which served*  
 “ *in steed of an alter to <sup>2</sup> sacri. beastes therupon.*  
 “ *Thies stones are yeat extant called by the common*  
 “ *sort, The temples of the Gods. Any man that*  
 “ *seeth them would mervaile by what arte and what*  
 “ *strength of men they were so reared. Thus farr*  
 “ Boëtius. What other men can gather out of the  
 “ word *ycluis*, which signifieth, in the Britain  
 “ language, *lame*, I see not, albeit I know that  
 “ the name of Claudius came originaly from  
 “ *lamnes*. Not long since a hilloc was here dig-  
 “ ged down, and in it was found a stagg’s hedd,  
 “ and under neth coales, which is a manifest  
 “ profe that it was a Land marck.

§. XXI. I have above declared, that Stone-henge per-  
haps a British Monu-  
ment, not withstand-  
ing it might have  
 I have no mind at this time to inter-  
 pose my own Sentiments about Stone-

<sup>1</sup> J. these. <sup>2</sup> L. sacrifice.

been a Roman Work. Mr. Camden's Approbation of, and Assistance in, Dr. Holland's Additions; may justify such as cite them for Mr. Camden's own.

henge, and yet whereas formerly I have signify'd', that 'tis a Roman Work, I shall now so far gratify the Reader's curiosity as to assure him, that I still am inclin'd to think it so much owing to the Romans, as to have one or more of them for carrying on the Architecture, whilst, at the same time, it is probable it was, as our anonymous Author stiles it, a Brittish and no Roman Monument, or it may be even the Britains themselves raised it according to the Rules of Architecture in which they had been instructed by the Romans, both people being as it were now incorporated, and the Britains being at length so much beloved by the Romans, that the Romans were very willing to do all imaginable service to them, as may appear from the Assistance they receiv'd from the Romans even at that time when the Romans were oblig'd to relinquish the Isle for securing other Parts of the Empire. But I will not, I must not exspatiate. And yet I cannot, before I leave this Subject, but ingenuously confess, that I my self, some years ago, fell into the same mistake with Mr. Webb in taking Dr. Philemon Holland's Interpolation for

---

<sup>1</sup> *Ductor Hist.* Vol. II. p. 319. Discourse concerning some Antiquities found in York-shire, at the End of the first Vol. of Leland's Itin. p. 106. <sup>2</sup> See the said Discourse, p. 106.

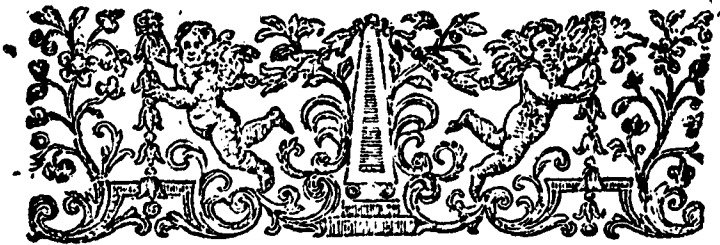
PREFACE.

XCIII

Mr. Camden's own Words. And indeed, upon recollection, I think that they may still be properly enough call'd Camden's, since he both allow'd of that and other Additions of the Dr's. and hath not any where, that I know of, disclaim'd them, having, I suppose, help'd the Dr. to many of them, and being willing enough, that they should be quoted and look'd upon as his own. And 'twas upon account of his approbation of what Dr. Holland did, that he drew up the Supplement, with a design that it should be taken into the second Edition, in which nevertheless it was omitted, being not, it may be, communicated to him. It is likely Mr. Webb himself also considered this matter, which if so it will excuse him also, as well as Dr. Charleton and others, for ascribing any Interpolation to Mr. Camden, and then it will cease to be a wonder, that either he or any one else should mention Mr. Camden's instead of Dr. Holland's name.

Oxford August 3.  
1725.

THE



THE PUBLISHER'S  
APPENDIX

To his PREFACE.

---

Num. I. Vide Præf. §. v.

E Pitseo de illustrib. Angliæ Scriptorib. p. 890.  
in Appendice.

*De Petro Longatosta.*



ETRVS Longatosta, Gallum fuisse  
susplicantur nonnulli, ego verò  
existimo natione Anglum. Fuit  
ordinis S. Augustini Canonicus  
regularis in cænobio Bridlindg-  
tonensi Eboracensis agri. Vir cui pietas  
& doctrina celebre nomen dederunt. Hu-  
maniores benè tenuit litteras, historiis le-  
gendis & scribendis non mediocriter delecta-  
tus.

tus. In Galliis aliquandò studuit, & linguam Gallicam accuratè calluit. Ex Hereberto Boscamo Latinè scriptam transtulit in rithmos Gallicanos

*Vitam S. Thomæ Cantuariensis, Librum unum. Scripsit Anglicè chronicon Angliæ, Librum unum.* MS. in bibliotheca Baronis Lumleiani. De hoc auctore nihil prorsus aliud invenio . . . . .

This is all in Pitseus. He seems to have intended more by the Points. *Longatosta*, I suppose, is a Mistake in him, as well as in Leland and Gesner for *Langatofsta*.

Num. II. Vide Præf. §. v.

*E Lelandi Comm. de Scriptorib. Brit. p. 218.*

— *Petrus Longatosta, canonicus Augustinianus in cœnobio Brillendunensi, hunc [Hereberti Bossanhamensis de vita Thomæ Becketi] transtulit in Gallicos rhythmos libellum.*

Num. III. Vide Præf. §. v.

*E Bibliothecâ Gesneri, Tiguri 1583. Fol.*

Petrus Longatosta, Gallus, Canonicus Regularis cœnobii Bridlyngtonensis in Angliâ, ex latino sermone in metra Gallica transtulit opus Hereberti de Bosham de Vitâ Thomæ Cantuariensis Lib. I. Joannes Lelandus.

Num.

## THE PUBLISHER'S APPENDIX

Num. IV. Vide Præf. §. v.

*Bp. Nicolson's Engl. Historical Library, p. 79.  
Ed. Fol.*

—*Peter de Langetoft, who drew up an ' Epitome of our Chronicles in old French Rhimes, bestows one whole Book upon Edward I.*

---

Num. V. Vide Præf. §. ix, xii, xiv.

*Robert of Brunne's Prologue to his Chronicle.  
Incipit Prologus de historia Britanniaë, transumpta  
per Robertum in materna lingua.*



Ordýnges, that be now here,  
If ze wille listene & lere  
All þe story of Inglande,  
Als Robert Mannyng wryten it fand,  
& on Inglysch has it schewed,  
Not for þe lerid bot for þe lewed,  
For þo þat in þis land wonn,  
þat þe Latyn no Frankys conn,  
For to haf solace & gamen  
In felawschip when þai sitt samen.  
And it is wisdom forto wýtten  
þe state of þe land, an haf it wryten ;  
What manere offolk first it wan,  
& of what kynde it first began.

---

<sup>1</sup> Bibl. Cott. Julius, A. 5.



## TO HIS PREFACE.

xcvii

And̄ gude it is for many thynges,  
For to here þe dedis of kynges,  
Whilk were foles & whilk were wyse,  
& whilk of þam couth mast quantýse ;  
And whilk did wrong & whilk ryght,  
& whilk mayntend pcs & fyght.  
Of þare dedes salle be my sawe,  
In what tyme & of what lawe,  
I salle zow schewe fro gre to gre,  
Sen þe tyme of sir Noe,  
Fro Noe vnto Encas,  
& what betwix þam was,  
And fro Eneas tille Brutus tyme,  
þat kynde he telles in þis ryme.  
Fro Brutus tille Cadwaladres,  
þe last Bryton þat þis lande lees.  
Alle þat kynde & alle the frute,  
þat come of Brutus þat is þe Brute ;  
And þe ryght Brute is told nomore,  
þan the Brytons tyme wore.  
After þe Bretons þe Inglis camen,  
þe lordschip of þis lande þai namen ;  
South & North, West & Est,  
þat calle men̄ now þe Inglis gest.  
When þai first amang þe Bretons,  
þat now ere Inglis þan were Saxons,  
Saxons Inglis hight alle oliche.  
þai aryued vp at Sandwyche,

In

In þe kȳnge's tȳme Vortogerne,  
 þat þe lande walde þam not wernc.  
 þat were maȳsters of alle þe toþire,  
 Hengist he hight & Hors his broþire.  
 þes were hede, als we fȳnde,  
 Where of is comen oure Inglis kȳnde.  
 A hundrethe & fifty zere þai com,  
 Or þat receȳued Cristendom .  
 So lang woned þai þis lande in,  
 Or þa herde out of Saynt Austȳn,  
 Amang þe Bretons with mȳkelle wo,  
 In sclaunder, in threte & in thro.  
 þes Inglis dedes ze maȳ here,  
 As Pers telles alle þe manere,  
 One maȳster Wace þe Frankes telles,  
 þe Brute alle þat þe Latȳn spellcs,  
 Fro Eneas tille Gadwaladre,  
 þis maȳster Wace þer leues he.  
 And rȳght as maȳster Wace saȳs,  
 I telle mȳn Inglis þe same waȳs.  
 For maȳster Wace þe Latȳn alle rȳmes,  
 at Pers ouerhippis manȳ tȳmes.  
 Maȳster Wace þe Brute alle redes,  
 & Pers tellis alle þe Inglis dedes.  
 þer maȳster Wace of þe Brute left,  
 Rȳght begȳnnes Pers est,  
 And tellis forth þe Inglis story,  
 & as he saȳs, þan saȳ I.

## TO HIS PREFACE.

XCII

Als þai haf wrytē & sayd,  
 Haf I alle in mȳn Inglis layd,  
 In sȳmple speche as I couthe,  
 þat is lightest in manne's mouthe.  
 I mad noght for no dīsours,  
 Ne for no seggers no harpours,  
 Bot for þe luf of sȳmple, men̄ ;  
 þat strange Inglis can̄ not ken̄ .  
 For many it ere þat strange Inglis  
 In rȳme wate neuer what it is,  
 And bot þai wist what it mente,  
 Ellis me thought it were alle schente.  
 I made it not forto be praysed,  
 Bot at þe lewed men̄ were aysed.  
 If it were made in rȳme couwee,  
 Or in strangere or euterlace,  
 þat rede Inglis it ere inowe,  
 þat couthe not haf copped a kowe,  
 þat outhere in couwee or in baston  
 Som suld haf ben fordon,  
 So þat sele men þat it herde,  
 Suld not witte howe þat it ferde.  
 I see in song in sedgeȳng tale  
 Of Erceldoun & of Kendale,  
 Non þam says as þai þam wroght,  
 & in þer sayng it semes noght.  
 þat may þou here in Sir Tristrem,  
 Ouer gestes it has þe steem,

## THE PUBLISHER'S APPENDIX

Ouer all þat is or wás,  
 If men̄ it sayd as made Thomas.  
 Bot I here it no man̄ so say,  
 þat of som cople som is away.  
 So þare fayre saying here beforne,  
 Is þare trauayle nere forlorne.  
 þai sayd it for pride & nobleye,  
 þat non were suýlk as þei,  
 And alle þat þai wild ouerwhere,  
 Alle þat ilk wille now forfare.  
 þai sayd in so quainte Inglis,  
 þat manyone wate not what it is,  
 þefore heuyed wele þe more  
 In strange rýme to trauayle sore,  
 And my witte was oure thýnne,  
 So strange speche to trauayle in,  
 And forsoth I couth nocht  
 So strange Inglis as þai wrought,  
 And men̄ besoght me many a tyme,  
 To turne it bot in light rýme.  
 þai sayd, if I in strange it turne,  
 To here it manyon suld skurne.  
 For it ere names fulle selcouthe,  
 þat ere not vsed now in mouthe.  
 And þefore for þe comonalte,  
 þat blythely wild listen to me,  
 On light lange I it began̄,  
 For luf of þe lewed man̄,

## TO HIS PREFACE.

ci

To telle þam þe chaunces bolde,  
þat here before was don & tolde.  
For þis makýng I wille no mede,  
Bot gude prayere, when ze it rede.  
þerfore, ze lordes lewed,  
For wham I haf þis Inglis schewed,  
Prayes to God he gýf me grace,  
I trauayled for zour solace.  
Of Brunne I am, if any me blame,  
Robert Mannyng is my name.  
Blissed be he of God of heuene,  
þat me Robert with gude wille neuene.  
In þe thrid Edwardes tyme was I,  
When I wrote alle þis story.  
In þe hous of Sixille I was a throwe,  
Danz Robert of Maltone þat ze know  
Did it wryte for felawes sake,  
When þai wild solace make.

---

Num. VI. Vide Præf. §. x, xix.

*Extract of a Letter, relating to Robert of Brunne  
and Peter de Langtoft, written from London to  
the Publisher by the late learned John Bridges,  
Esq; . Nov. 28. 1723,*

— This day, by Godfrey the Oxford  
Carrier, there goes a Packett, directed to Will-  
mott the Bookseller, in which there is the MS.  
of *Robert of Brunne*. It belongs to the Inner

h 2

Temple

## THE PUBLISHER'S APPENDIX

*Temple Library*; being given, with other MSS. to that Society by the last Will of *William Petyt*, Esq; late Keeper of the Records in the Tower of London. And Mr. *Anstis* being one of his Trustees, I have, by his means, procur'd it for you, in order to be printed.

It seems to be a perfect MS. from the beginning to the End, and written about the same time that the Author liv'd, viz. at the beginning of *Edw. 3<sup>d</sup>'s* Reign: You'll find in it severall Things worthy of Remark.

First, it appears, that he liv'd sometime in the Monastery of *Sixill* or *Sixle* in *Lincolnshire*, a mixt Monastery of Nunns and Friers: And that he calls himself *Robert Manning* of *Brunne*, now *Bourne*, a Town also in *Lincolnshire*, where was a Monastery. He calls himself also *Danz Robert* of *Malton*.

2<sup>dly</sup>. The Prologues acquaint us, that *Pers* (or *Peter*) de *Langtoft*, Canon of *Bridlington*, wrote the Original History in French Rhime. One part whereof, viz. from *Eneas* to *Cadwallader*, was taken from *Geffry* of *Monmouth*, and abridg'd by the said *Peter*, but translated more at large into French by *Mayster Wace*, which *Mayster Wace* is follow'd chiefly by the Translator; but in the other part, viz. to the End of *Edw. I.* he tells the Story according to *Langtoft*.

## TO HIS PREFACE.

ciii

3<sup>dly</sup>. There is an exact account of his being Author of this Translation by a Note at the End of both the first and second Parts, together with the Time when it was wrote.

4<sup>thly</sup>. There are some particular Passages of History found in the Translator, that are not in the Original, viz. That King *John* died at *Hauhe* (or *Haugh*) in *Lincolnshire*. That *Wentilian*, the daughter of *Lewellyn*, being an Infant about two years old when her Father was beheaded, was profess'd and died a Nun in the Convent at *Sempringham*. And that *Gladous*, her Couzin-German, daughter of *David* brother of *Lewellyn*, died also a Nun in the Monastery of *Sisle*, both of them being in the County of *Lincoln*. You'll find also in most Passages the Translator to be more copious and large than his Original.

5<sup>thly</sup>. In his Prologues he takes notice of severall sorts of Old English Verse, viz. *Courwe*, *Stranger*, *Enterlace*, and *Baston*. The first of which (*Courwe*) he gives Instances of and Marks in the Margin. He also mentions severall Tales of *Erceldown*, *Kendale* and *Tristrem*, all which were very well known in those Days. But I find none of them expounded in our Modern Glossaries, which therefore, as well as other antient Terms and Words, will need an Explanation:

## THE PUBLISHER'S APPENDIX

6<sup>th</sup>y. The Historian speaks very freely of the Vices of the Court of *Rome*, particularly Pope *Boniface*.

There is a MS. in French Metre of *Peter de Langtoft* in the *Cotton Library*, *Julius A.* In the first Page whereof are these Remarks in modern Hands :

“ Hanc P. Langtoft in Gallicam prosam ver-  
“ tit Auctor Scalæ Chronicæ. *Leyland.*

“ Multa continet notabilia, quæ apud vul-  
“ gatos Historicos haud facile invenies.  
“ T. G.” (i. e. Thomas Gale.)

“ Aliud Exemplar extat in Collegio Heral-  
“ dorum—— Extat Versio Anglicana in  
“ Lambethana Bibl. T. G.”

In the *Elenchus* of the said *Cotton Library* MS. 'tis rightly observ'd, that this Historian is very prolix or spacious in the Life of *Edw. I.*

The second part of the Chronicle begins with these four Latin Verses :

*Incipiunt Gesta, quæ sunt Anglis manifesta,  
Beda pater præsta Petro, quod dicat honesta,  
Lector narrabit id quod Scriptura parabit.  
Petrus dictabit quod sibi Beda dabit.*

At the end of the Volume (after a Tale or Romance in French of five Leaves, which intervene) are three other Verses, which seem to refer to the same *Peter de Langtoft*.

“ *Artus*



TO HIS PREFACE.

CV

“ *Artus Scriptoris careant gravitate doloris.*

“ *Sermo de Bruto fit sub dictamine tuto.*

“ *Culpa datur Petro deficiente Metro.*

This Translation was taken at first for *Robert of Gloucester* by the total Ignorance of the Owners. — It is very strange, that this Author has never been taken notice of or quoted. • In my Opinion, it far exceeds *R. of Gloucester*, both for the matter and manner of his Story. Neither do I find any Account of him in *Leland*, or the other Byographers. Bishop Nicolson says little or nothing. —————

---

Num. VII. Vide Præf. §. x, xiv.

*Robert of Brunne's Transition (called a Prologue by Mr. Bridges) from the first to the second Part of his Chronicle.*

*Explicit historia Britannicæ, transposita in linguam maternam per Robertum. Incipiunt Gesta Anglorum secundum Petrum de Langtoft, transposita per eundem R. Mannyng.*



OW haf I told of þe Bretons,  
 Of kыnges & som barons.  
 How þei maыntend þis lond,  
 Siþen Brutus first it fond,  
 Unto Cadwaldre's tyme,  
 þer of Bretons leue we to ryme,

& now of Inglis wille we telle,  
 Sen þe Bretons here gan duelle,  
 þat toke þe lond þorgh Gode's heste,  
 þer tyme we kalle þe Inglis geste.  
 Alle is cald geste Inglis,  
 þat on þis langage spoken is.  
 \*Frankis spech is cald Romance,  
 So sais clerkes & men of France.  
 Pers of Langtoft, a chanon  
 Of þe hous of<sup>1</sup> Brdlyngton,  
 On Frankis stile þis storie wrote  
 Of Inglis k ynges, for him we wote  
 He wrote þer dedes as þei wrouht,  
 After him in Inglis I it brouht.  
 Of his menyng I wote þe way,  
 Bot his faire spech I can not say.  
 I am not worþi open his boke,  
 For no konyng þer on to loke,  
 Bot forto schew his mykelle witte  
 On my spech, þat is bot skilte;  
 How he was quaynt in spech & wys,  
 þat suilk a boke mad of pris,  
 & gadred þe stories alle tille one,  
 þat neuer ore was mad for none.  
 Whan he first bigan his werk,  
 He bisoult a holy clerk,  
 To gyue him grace wele to spede,  
 þat holy man hight S. Bede.

---

<sup>1</sup> Sic.

## TO HIS PREFACE.

CVII

For in his bukes mykelle he fond,  
He mad fyue bokes of Inglond.  
I salle praie him þat ilk wais,  
Als he holy & curtais,  
He gif me grace wele to say,  
& rightly þis in ryme lay,  
þis story þat is said of Pers,  
þat alle be paied þat it hers. Amen.

---

Num. VIII. Vide Præf. §. xi.

*The Proceedings of the Abbat and Convent of Winchester against Joan of London, A. D. 1285.  
From an old MS. Fragment of that Age, given  
to the Publisher by Thomas Ward, Esq;*

Officialis curiæ Cantuariensis religioso viro priori reverenter salutem in Christo Ihesu. Sua noverit religio, ubi abbas & conventus Winchester petitione monstrarunt, quod vos, prætendentes à sede apostolica vobis esse commissum, ut in monasterio suo de Winchester, Johannæ de London, mulieri conversæ, ad sui sustentacionem, suo perpetuo de tanto faceretis annis singulis providere, quantum unus de monachis, ibidem existentibus, pro suis alimentis percipit, annuatim eidem Johannæ, <sup>1</sup> octo s. sterlingorum, percipiendos per annum, quoad

---

<sup>1</sup> F. octo scilicet libras sterlingorum, percipiendas.

vixerit,

vixerit, de monasterio Wynchester memorato, certis terris, pro æqualibus porcionibus, nomine sustentacionis hujus religiosæ, ipsis ad hæc nullatenus evocatis, nec de ipso mandato apostolico, seu de provisione ipsa, per citacionis seu denunciacionis modum, quicquam scientibus, sed ignorantibus, immo nulla super facultatibus dicti monasterii, seu super æstimatione vel valore exhibicionis seu sustentacionis cujuscunq; monachi domus ejusdem per annum, inquisitione præmissa, in ipsorum religiosorum, ac suæ domus, præjudicium non modicum & gravamen, præsertim cum in inensum ære alieno fuerint ornati, non absq; juris offensa, inique & temere providistis, à qua vestræ provisionis hujus sententia, tanquam ab iniqua, quam cito id ad notitiam eorundem pervenit, sedem apostolicam, & pro tutione sedem Cantuariensem legitime, ut asserunt, applicuerunt. Quare vobis inhibemus, & ceteris omnibus, quibus exigit inhiberi, ne, pendente in curia Cantuariensi hujus tutionis appellationis negotio, aliud hac occasione acceptetur seu acceptare faciatis, in partis pæjudicium appellantis, quominus liberam habeat prosecutionem appellationis suæ, prout justum fuerit <sup>1</sup> utriusq;. Citetur eciam, seu citare faciatis peremptorie par-

---

<sup>1</sup> Sic cum duobus punctis sub *u*, perinde ac si *utrisque* legi debeat.

tem appellatam, quod compareat coram nobis, vel commissario nostro, in ecclesia beatæ Mariæ de arcubus Londoniæ, tercio die juridico post Octavas Sanctæ Trinitatis, factura & receptura super præmissis, quod postulaverit ordo juris, & pariter ad procedendum in principali, si viderit expedire. De die vero receptionis præsentium, & quod super præmissis feceritis, nobis, vel commissario nostro, dictis die & loco constare faciatis, per litteras vestras patentes harum seriem continentes. Dat Londoniæ quarto Nonas Maii, anno Domini M°. CC°. octogesimo quinto.

---

Num. IX. Vide Præf. §. xi.

*A Letter concerning the reputed Nummery at Little-Gidding in Huntingdonshire. From a MS. lent to the Publisher on July 6<sup>th</sup>. 1724. by Thomas Ward, of Longbridge near Warwick, Esq;.*

The Coppie of my Letter to Sr. Thomas Hedley, Kt. Serjeant at Lawe, upon his Request to certifie, as I found, concerninge the reputed Nummerie att Giddinge in Huntingdonshire.

*Good Mr. Serjeant,*

I cann give you but a short Relation of my, not two howers, staye at the reputed (at least

re-

reported) Nunnery at Giddinge, and yet must leave out three partes of our passages, as fitter for Relation then a letter. I came thither after terme, and found a faire house fairelie seated, to which I passed through a faire grove, and sweete walkes, letticed and gardened on both sides, their livelihood. 500<sup>li</sup>. *per annum* (as my Lord Mountague tolde mee.)

A man servant brought me into a faire spacious Parlour, whether soone after came to mee the olde Gentlewoman's second sonn, a batchelor of a plaine presence, but of able speech and parts, whoe (after I had, aswell as in such case I coulede, deprecated anye ill conceipt of mee, for soe unusuall and bolde a visite) entertayned mee very civilly, and with humility, yet saide, I was the first that ever came to them in that kinde, though not the first that they had heard of, that determined to come. After Deprecations and some Compléments, hee said, I shoulde see his mother, if I pleased. I shewinge my desire, hee went upp into a Chamber, and presently came his mother, a tall, straight, cleare complexioned, grave Matron, of. 80. yeares of age) his eldest brother married, (but wheather <sup>1</sup>Widdowe or noe, I asked not,) a short, blacke complexioned man, his apparrell and hayre soe fashioned, as made

---

<sup>1</sup> F. Widower.

him shewe Preist like, and his sister married to one Mr. Cooles, by whom shee hath. 14. or. 15. Children, all which are in the howse, which I sawe not yet; and of these, and two or three mayde servants, the Familie consisted. I saluted the mother, and daughter, not like Nunnes, but as wee use to salute other women; and after wee were all sett circular wise, and my Deprecations renewed to the other three, I desired that, to their favour of enter-tayninge of mee, they woulde add the givinge of mee a free libertie to speake <sup>1</sup> ingeniously, what I conceived of any thinge I shoulde see or have hearde of, without any distast to them. Which beinge graunted,

I first tolde them what I had heard of the Nunnes of Giddinge; of two watchinge and prayinge all night; of their Canonically howers; of their crosses on the outside, and inside of their Chappell; of an Alter there richly decked with plate, tapestry, and tapers; of their <sup>2</sup> Adorations, Iniculations at their entringe therein, which I objected might savour of Superstition and Popery.

Heere the younger sonne (the mouth for them all) cutt mee off, and to this last answered,

---

<sup>1</sup> Sic. <sup>2</sup> F. Adorations, Genusfections, and Genuculations. Nam sic infra libello impresso.

First, with a protestation, that hee did as verely beleve the Pope to bee Antichrist, as any Article of his faith. Where with I was satisfied and silenced touchinge that pointe.

For the Nunnery, hee said, the names of Nunnes was odious, but the truth (from whence that untrue report might arise) was two of his Neeces, and lived one with thother. 32. yeares virgins, and soe resolved to continue, as hee hoped they woulde, the better to give themselves to fasting and praier, but had made no vowes.

For their Canonickal howres, hee saide, they usuallie praied. 6. tymes a daie, (as I remember,) twice a daie publiquellie in the Chappell, and. 4. tymes more privatelie in their howse; in the Chappell after the Order of the booke of Common-praier, in their house particular praiers for a private Family. I saide, if they spent soe much tyme in prayinge, they would leave little for preachinge, or for their weekelie callings. For the one I vouched the text, *Hee that turneth away his eare from hearinge the Lawe, his praier is abominable.* For the other, *sixe dayes shalt thou Labour &c.*

To the one hee answered, that a Neighbour Minister, of another Parish, came on Sunday morninge, and preached in their Chappell, and

---

<sup>1</sup> F. Neeces had lived.



some tymes they went to his Parish; To the other, that their callinge was to serve God, which he tooke to bee the best.

I replied, that for men in health, and of active and able bodies, and parts, it were a temptinge of God, to quitt our Callings, and whollie betake our selves to fastinge, praier, and a Contemplatinge lyfe, which by some is thought to bee noe better, then a specious kind of Idlenes, not to terme it, as St. Augustine termes Morrall vertues without Christ, *splendida peccata*. Hee rejoyned, that they found diverse perplexities, distractions, and almost utter ruine in their callings, but if others knewe, what comfort and content God had ministred unto them, since their sequestration, and with incredible improvement to their livelihood, it might encourage others to the like course.

I said, that such an<sup>1</sup> Invitation might bee of dangerous Consequence, and that yf any, which were in good<sup>2</sup> Cause before, shoulde thereby fall into povertie, fewe afterwards woulde followe the example.

For their night watchinge,<sup>3</sup> at their risinge at. 4: of the Clocke in the morninge, which (I said) was much for one of. 80, yeares, and for Children; To the one hee saide, it was

---

<sup>1</sup> L. Innovation. <sup>2</sup> F. Case. <sup>3</sup> L, and their.

CXIV. THE PUBLISHER'S APPENDIX

not much, sithence they alwaies went to bedd at 7, of the Clocke in the eveninge. For the other hee confest, there <sup>1</sup> was every night two (*Alternatim*) continued in their devotions, that <sup>2</sup> went to bedd untill the rest arose.

For the Crosses, he made mee, the usuall Answere, that they were not ashamed of that badge of Christian profession, which the propugners of the faith bare in their banners, and which wee in our Church disciplyne reteyne to this daie,

For their Chappell, that it was nowe neere Chappell tyme, (for eleaven is the howre in the forenoone) and that I might (if I pleased) accompany them thither, and soe satisfie my selfe best of what I had heard concerning that.

Which offer I willinglie enterteyned. Meane tyme, I told them, that I perceived all was not true; that I had heard of the place. For I coulde see noe such inscription on the frontespeece of the howse, conteyninge an Inyitation of such as were willinge to learne of them, or woulde teach them better, which was some incouragement, to mee to come (as one desirous to learne, not to teach) and might bee some excuse of my Audacity, if they will be pleased soe to accept it.

---

<sup>1</sup> F. were. <sup>2</sup> F. went not to.

## TO HIS PREFACE.

CXV.

But hee (barringe mee from further Complements) said, the ground of that Report hunge over my head; wee sittinge by the Chymney. On the Chymney peece was a Manuscript Tableture, which after I had read, I craved leave to begg a Coppie thereof, soe that they woulde not take mee for to bold a begger, which hee forthwith tooke downe, and commaunded to bee presentlie transcribed, and given mee. I offered the writer money for his deserved paines, which was refused, and they conjured mee not to offer it the second tyme, and there upon made it his suite to mee, not to offer any thinge to any of that house at my partinge, or otherwise.

The words of the protestation are as followeth :

*I. H. S.*

<p><i>Hee that, by reproofe of our Errors, or Remonstrance of that which is perfect, seekes to make us better, is welcome as an Angell of God; And</i></p>	}	<p><i>Hee that, by a chearefull participation of that which is good, confirmes us in the same, is welcome as a Christian friend.</i></p>
--	---	--

*But,*

<p><i>Hee that any waie goeth about to divert or disturbe us</i></p>	}	<p><i>And hee that faults us in absence for that which</i></p>
--	---	--

Vol. I.

us

' is'

<p><i>us in that which is, and ought to be, amongst Christians, is a burthen whilst hee staies, and shall beare his Judgment whatsoever hee bee.</i></p>	}	<p><i>is' in presence hee made a shewe to approve of, shal, by a double guilt of flattery and slaunder, violate the bands of frendshipp and Christianitye.</i></p>
--	---	--

*Mary Farrer Widdowe, and mother of this Familie, aged about. 80. yeares, that bids a dewe to all feares, and hopes of this worlde, and desires to serve God.*

To the matter of this Declaration, beinge in such generall termes, I said, I thought it without Exception, but praied leave to except against a Circumstance, namely the Inscription, beinge the proper Character of the Jesuites in every booke and exhibite of theirs. Hee said, it was that Auspicious name, worthy to be the *Alpha* and *Omega* of all our doinges, and wee are commaunded to write such thinges on the posts of our houses, and upon our gates.

I toulde him, I was farr from exceptinge against that sacred and savinge name of Jesus, onlie I coulde have wished it written at length, or anie other waies, to have differed from that the Papists onlie use, and noe Protestants, and that the text hee mentioned was in the oulde

Testament, where there was noe mention of Jesus but of Jehova, to my remembrance; but wee passed by this towards the Chappell, being about two paces from the howse, but staid a little (as with a parenthesis) with a glasse of sacke, suger-cake, and a fine napkin brought by a mannerlie maide, which refreshed my memorie, to tell them what my Lord Bishopp of Lincolne saide of them, wherein yet I brake noe Lawes of humanitie, nor hospitalitie, though spoken at the Table. For hee said nothinge but that they might, and were gladd to, heare, beinge but the Relation of the grave and discrete Answeres (as my Lord himselfe termed them) of the oulde Gentlewoman's to some of his Lordshipp's expostulations to that part concerninge the younge deacon, which his Lordshipp had heard of to come from Cambridge, to associate in their Chappell. Hee (*innuendo* ever the younger sonne,) whoe onlie was the speaker, said, that himselfe was the younge deacon intended, that hee is 42. yeares olde, was fellowe of an howse in Cambridge, and hath taken Orders of Deacon (to saie nothinge of his havinge been at Rome) whereof I coulde have excepted noe more against him, then hee might to mee. For havinge been so longe in the labour of the Chappell, it is nowe high tyme wee were at Church.

At the cntringe whereof hee made a lowe obeysance, fewe paces further a lower, comm'inge to the halfe-pace, which was at the East end, where the Table stood, hee bowed to the ground, if not prostrated himselfe, then went upp into a faire large readinge place, a preaching place beinge of the same proporcion, right over against it.

The Mother with all her trayne, which were her daughter, and daughter's daughters, had a faire Island seate. Hee placed mee above upon the halfe-pace, with two faire longe Window-Cushions of greene Velvett before mee. Over against mee was there such another seate soe suited, but noe body to sitt in it.

The daughter's 4. sonnes kneeled all the while at the edge of the halfe-pace, all in blacke-gownes, and, as they went to Church, in round Monmoth-Capps (as my man said, for I looked not backe) the rest all in blacke, save one of the daughters, whoe was in a Fryer's greene gowne.

Wee beinge thus placed, the Deacon (for soe I must nowe call him) with a very lowde and distinct voice, began with the Letany, read divers Praiers and Collects in the booke of Common-praier, and Athanasius his Creede, and concluded with *The peace of God, &c.*

<sup>2</sup> All attended<sup>1</sup>, the Mother, with all her Company, attended my comming downe; but her sonne decon toulde her, I woulde staie a while, to viewe the Chappell: soe (with all their Civill salutations towards mee, which I returned them a farr off, and durst come noe neerer, least I shoulde have light upon one of the virgins, not knowinge wheather they woulde have taken a kisse in good part or noe) they departed home. Nowe none but the deacon and I left, I observed the Chappell in generall to be fairelie and sweetelie adorned with herbes and flowers, naturall in some part, and artificiall upon every Pillar thereof a longe both sides the Chappell, such as are in Cathedralls, with Tapers (I meane, greate Virgin Waxe Candles) on every Pillar. The halfe-pace at the upper end (for there was noe other division betwixt the body of the Chappell and the East part) was all covered with tapistry, and upon that half-pace stood the Communion Table, not Altarwise (as was reported) with a rich Carpett hanginge very large upon the <sup>2</sup> halfe, and somme of plate, as a Callice and Candlestickes with waxe Candells. By the preachinge place stood the font, the legg, laver and cover all of brasse cutt and carved. the Cover

---

<sup>1</sup> F. delend. nisi malis, *All ended.* <sup>2</sup> F. *halfe-pace, and some plate.*

had a Crosse erected, the laver of the bignes of a barbor's Basen; and this is all I had leasure to observe in the Chappell, save that I asked for the Organs, which he toulde mee were not there, but that they had a paire in their house. I asked alsoe, what use they made of so many Tappers. Hee said, to give them light, when they coulde not see without them. Then havinge formerlie (as I said before) obteyned leave, to saie what I listed, I asked him, to whom hee made all those Curtisies. Hee saide, to God. I asked him, if the Papiests make any other answeare for their bowinge to Images and Crucifexes, yet wee accept them Idolaters for soe doinge. Hee said, wee have noe such Warrant, for the one, but for the other, wee have a precept to doe all things with decencie and order, as hee tooke this to bee. I demaunded then, why hee used not the same solempnitie in his service at his howse, and wheather hee thought that Chappell more holie then his howse. Hee said noe, but that God was more imediatelie present, whiles we were worshipping him in the Temple. I replied, that God was as present at Paule's Crosse as at Paule's Church, and at the preachinge place at White hall and Spittle-Sermons as elsewhere. For wheresoever two or three are gathered together in his name; God

is



is in the midst of them. And yet in those places, noe not in the bodie of the Church, though there bee sermon and praiers, we did not use this threefold reverence, nor any lowe bowinge, unlesse in the Chancell towards the East, where an Altar, or some<sup>1</sup> Crucifex, is. Hee answered mee some thinge of the Trinary number of this their bowinge, which I did not well understand, nor<sup>2</sup> wee heare. This, as all other our discourse beinge ended with mildenes and moderation (on his part, at the least) I said further, that since their devotions, from which they woulde be loath to bee<sup>3</sup> delivered or interrupted, (as in their said protestation maie appeare,) are more strict and regular, and if in their Consciences they were perswaded, that all their Formalities and Ceremonies were but<sup>4</sup> *Adiaphera* (thinge indifferent) I then thought, they were as wyse as Serpents in the<sup>5</sup> Scripture, since in<sup>6</sup> complayninge soe with Church Ceremonies, that they might themselves hould on their Course without exception, for in<sup>7</sup> this Comptenent though authoritie woulde not except against them, unlesse for exceedinge the Cathedrall, whoe make but one Reverence, whereas they make three. Hee

---

<sup>1</sup> Sic. <sup>2</sup> F. well. <sup>3</sup> F. di-  
 verted. <sup>4</sup> L. adiaphora (things  
 &c. <sup>5</sup> F. Scripture sense. <sup>6</sup>  
 An, complying ? <sup>7</sup> Sic hæc

concupiuntur. Conjeceram,  
 this, authoritic, though com-  
 petent, would &c.

saide, I spake like one that it seemed had had experience in the Worlde. Beeinge nowe neere twelve of the Clocke, wee ended our Discourse, and I called for my horses, hoping there upon, that hee woulde have invited mee to staie dynner, not for that I cared for his, or any man's meate (for you had given mee a dynner in too good a breakefast,) but that I might have gayned more 'more'' tyme to have seene and observed more of their fashions, and wheather the Virgins, and younger sorte woulde have mingled with us, with diverse other things, which a dynner tyme would have ministred matter for; but in steede of makinge mee staie, hee alsoe helped mee in callinge for my horses, accompanyng me even unto my stirropp, and soe I not returninge into the howse, as wee frends mett, soe wee parted.

Many more questions I thought on, when it was too late, and yet, you see, I was not idle for the short tyme I staide. I asked him of their monethlie receivng the Sacrament, and wheather their servants, when they received, were attended by their Masters and Mistresses, and not suffered soe much as to laye or take awaie their owne trenchers, (as I had heard;) whereat hee smiled, as at a frivolous fable, and said, that the only difference from

---

<sup>1</sup> Dele.

other daies was, that the servants, the daie they received, satt at the same Table with them. I heard alsoe, that they never rost any meate, onlie boile and bake, but not in paste, that their servants maie not be much hindered from their devotions, and that they have but one horse amongst them all; but of those I made noe mention.

They are extraordinary well reported of by their neighbours, that they are very libcrall to the poore, at greate cost in preparinge of phisick and Surgery for the sicke and sore, whom they alsoe visitt often, and some 60. or 80. poore people they taske with Catechisticall questions, which, when they<sup>1</sup> come, cann make noe Answere there unto, they are rewarded with money and dynner, by reason of which Corody of meate and money, the poore<sup>2</sup> Catechumcn learne their lessons well, and soe their bodies and soules are well fedd.

I finde them full of humanitie, and liberallitie, and others speake as much of their Charitie, which I also verelie belceve, and therefore am farr from censuringe them, of whom I thinke much better then of my selfe.

My<sup>3</sup> apposinge some of their opinions and practise (as you maie see in this my Relation,

---

<sup>1</sup> F. come, and can make Answere thereunto, &c. <sup>2</sup> L. Catechumens. <sup>3</sup> Sic.

whercin I maie have varied in some Circumstances, but nothinge from the substance) was onlie by waie of argument, and for myne ownc better Information.

I shall be gladd to observe, howe wyser men will judge of them, or imitate their Course of lyfe.

I intended not a third part of this, when I begann, as you maie see by my first lyns.

But one thinge drawinge on another, I have nowe left out a little or nothinge to my remembrance, savinge that I thought fitt in good manners, upon my first affront, to make waic for my welcome, and *ad captandam benevolentiam*, which is not worth the repeatinge if I coulde, and I am some thinge better at actinge such a part, then at relatinge it, though good at neither.

After this longe and tedious Relation, I must nowe make but short thankes to you and my Ladie, for my longe and kinde welcome, wherein my wyfe joyneth with mee, prayinge my Remembrance of my lovinge respects to our kinde Neece, hopinge the good Schollers at Westminster are well, and soe I leave you all in the grace of God, and am

The same  
Your lovinge Friend  
H. S.

Num.

Num. X. Vide Præf. §. XI.

*A Copy of the printed Pamphlet about the reputed  
Nunnery at Little-Gidding in Huntingtonshire.*

THE  
**ARMINIAN**  
**NUNNERY:**

OR,

**A BRIEF DESCRIPTION**

AND

Relation of the late erected *Monasticall Place*,  
called the **ARMINIAN NUNNERY** at little  
**GIDDING** in **HUNTINGTON-SHIRE**.

*Humbly recommended to the wise consideration of this  
present PARLIAMENT.*

The Foundation is by a Company of **FARRARS**  
at **GIDDING**.



Printed for *Thomas Underhill*. MDCXLI.





THE  
 ARMINIAN  
 NUNNERY:

OR,

A BRIEF DESCRIPTION

and Relation of the late erected *Monasticall*  
 Place, called the ARMINIAN NUNNERY at  
 little GIDDING in HUNTINGTON-SHIRE.

*The Foundation is by a Company of Farrars at*  
 GIDDING.

**T**HERE stands a faire Hovse  
 well scituated with a fine Grove  
 and sweet Walks, Letticed and  
 Gardined on both sides; their  
 livelihood or Revenew about 500. l. *per Annum*.  
 One of my Lord *Moutagues* Mansion-Houses  
 being within two or three miles off called *Hem-*  
*mington House* not farre from *Oundle*.

\* A Gentleman comming to visit the said \* Pag. 2  
*House*, was first brought to \* faire spacious Par-

---

<sup>1</sup> The Pages in the Margin answer the former Impression.

<sup>2</sup> Sic.

CXXVIII THE PUBLISHER'S APPENDIX

lour, where soone after appeared the old Gentlewomans second sonne; a Batchelour of a plain presence, but pregnant of speech and parts, unto whom when I had deprecated and excused my selfe for so sudden and bold a visit, he entertained me with seeming civilitie and humilitie.

After deprecations and some complements past betwixt us, he said I should see his Mother if I pleased, and I shewing my desire, hee went up into a Chamber, and presently returned with his Mother, (a tall ancient Gentlewoman about 80. yeares of age) shee being Matron of the *House*, his elder Brother a Priest-like man in habit and haire. Now he had a Sister married in the *House* to one Mr. *Cooles*, who had 14. or 15. Children in the *House*, and of these with a man-servant and 2. or 3. maid-servants the *Family* then consisted.

I was permitted to salute the Mother and Daughters, as we use to salute other women: and after we were all sitten Circular, I had leave to speake ingenuously of what I had heard and did or might conceive of their *House*. I first told him what I had heard of the *Nunns* at *Gidding*; of *two* watching and praying all night; of their *Canonicall houres*; of their *Crosses* on the outside and inside of the *Chappell*; of an *Altar* richly decked with *Tapestry*, *Plate* and *Tapers*; of



of their *Adorations, genuflections, and geniculations*, which I told them plainly might strongly savour of Superstition and Popery.

Now you must understand that the younger Brother who first came unto me is a jolly pragmaticall and Priest-like fellow, and is the mouth for all the rest, and he began to cut me off, and answered with a serious protestation (though not so properly) that he did as verily \* beleeve \* \* Pag. 3. the Pope to be *Antichrist*, as any Article of his Faith, which I noted and gave the hearing: and therein if he spake from his heart, he much differed from the opinons of Priest *Shelford*, Priest *Squire*, Dr. *Draffig*, the red Dragon of *Arminians*, and other eminent *Arminians*.

He denied the place to be a *Nunnery*, and that none of his *Neces* were *Nunnes*: but hee confessed that two of his *Nieces* had lived the one thirtie, the other thirty and two yeares *Virgins*, and so resolved to continue (as he hoped they would) to give themselves to *Fasting* and *Prayers*; but had made no *Vowes*.

For their *Canonick hours*, he said they usually prayed 6. times a day, *viz.* 2. times a day publicly in the *Chappel*, and 4. times a day more privatly in the *House*; in the *Chappel* after the Order of the Booke of Common Prayer, at both times chanting out aloud the *Letany*; and in their *House* particular private Prayers for a *Familie*.

And

And hee being asked, if they spent so much time in *Praying*, they would leave little for *Preaching*, or for their weekly calling for which the Text is pregnant: *He that turneth away his eares, from hearing the Law, his prayer is abominable: PRO. 18. and 19.* And the fourth Commandment, *Six dayes shalt thou labour, &c.* Unto which this Priest-like pregnant Prolocutor answered but slubbringly, That sometimes a neighbour *Parson* would come and preach in their Chappell; and to the other, That their *Calling* (forsooth) was to *serve God*, which he tooke to be best: Oh the stupid and blind devotion of these people, for Men and Women in health of able and active bodies and parts: to have no particular *Callings*, or to quit their *Callings*, and betake themselves to I wot not what new forme of *Fasting* and *Prayer*, and \* a contemplative idle life, a lip-labour devotion, and a will-worship, *Eccl. 4. & 17.* which by the word of God is no better than a specious kind of idleness, as *St. Augustine* termes them to be but *splendida peccata*: as if diligence in our particular lawfull callings were no part of our service to God.

Pag. 4.

And doubtlesse such a Monastick Innovation in a settled Church-government, is of dangerous consequence in many respects.

For

For their *night-watching* and *rising at 4. of the Clock in the morning* (which was much for the Matron of 80. yeares of age, and for her Grand-children) the Priestlike Prolocutor did not want a premeditated excusive Justification: But how neere it complieth with the superstitious *Nunneries* in Popish places beyond the Seas, I and others that have travelled and seene them may plainely perceive and notifie; especially considering hee could not but confesse there were every night two (*alternatim*) continued in their Devotions untill the rest rose.

For their divers *Crosses*, the <sup>†</sup> Prolocuter made me this answer; That they were not ashamed of the badge of Christian profession, which the first Propugnators of Faith bore in their Banners, and which are in our *Church Discipline* retained unto this day.

How confused and absurd this Crosse Answer was, let every Christian man judge.

On the Chimney-peice where wee sate, there was a Manuscript Tableture with this Inscription following, whereof I desired, and had a Coppy transcribed.

---

<sup>†</sup> Sic.

\* Pag. 5.



He that by reproof of  
our errors or remem-  
brance of that which is  
more perfect seeks to  
make us better is wel-  
come and an Angel of  
God.

Hee that by a cheere-  
ful participation of that  
which is good confirms  
us in the same, is wel-  
come as a Christian  
Friend.

But

He that any way goes a-  
bout to divert or disturb  
us in that which is and  
ought to be amongst  
Christians though it be  
not usuall with the  
World, is a burthen  
whiles he staves and  
shall beare his judge-  
ment whosoever he be.

Hee that faults us in ab-  
sence for that which in  
presence hee made shew  
to approve of, shall by  
a double guilt of flattery  
and slander violate the  
bonds of Friendship and  
Christianity.

*MARY FERRAR Widdow, Mother and Matron  
of this Familie; aged about 80. yeares, that  
bids adue to all feares and hopes of this world,  
and desires to serve God.*

The Letters of the top of which Inscription  
are the proper Character of the Jesuites in eve-  
ry

ry

TO HIS PREFACE.

CXXXIII.

ry *Booke* and *Exhibite* of theirs. And the lines of the Inscription, how full of nonsense, justification and ostentation of superstitious devotion, besides their Creation of *Angels of God*; Let every understanding Christian Reader or hearer hereof judge.

The Prolocutor in justification of the Jesuiticall *forme* of Letters which I excepted against: he said it was the auspicious name worthy to be the *Alpha* and *Omega* of all our Actions, and wee are commanded to write such things upon the posts of our Houses, and upon our Gates: Whereas indeed the Text which hee aimed at is in the Old Testament and not in the New, where there is no \* mention of *Jesus* \* Pag. 6. but *Jehovah*: And the words are most plainly; *Moses* Precept of the Law of God, and not of the Name, &c. *Deut. 6. &c.*

Therefore this his Apologeticall answer was nothing but ignorant Eloquence, or eloquent Ignorance; most grossly and absurdly applied.

This Prolocutor confessed himselfe to be about 42. yeares old, was a fellow in a House in *Cambridge* (he named not what *House*) and that he had taken Orders of a Deacon (but he said nothing of his having beene at *Rome*, as it is well knowne he hath beene.)

Now I was invited by this Deacon to goe with him into the Chappell to their devotion,

at the entrance whereof this Priestlike deſt Deacon made a low obeysance, a few paces farther lower, and comming to the half-pace which is at the Eaſt end where the *altered Table* ſtood, hee bowed and proſtrated himſelfe to the ground; then he went up into a faire large reading place (having placed mee above with a faire large Window Cushion of green Velvet before me:), The *Mother Matron* with all her *Traine*, which were her *Daughters* and *Daughters Daughters*, who with foure *Sonnes* kneeled all the while on the bodie of the halfe pace, all being in black gownes, and as they came to Church in round Monmouth Capps, all I ſay in blacke, ſave one of the *Daughters* who was in a Friers grey gowne.

We being all placed before the Deacon (for now ſo we muſt call him) with a very loud and ſhrill voyce began and trolled out the *Letanie*; and read divers other Prayers and Collects, in the Book of *Common Prayer* and *Athanasius* his Creed; and concluded with the forme of words, of, *The Peace of God*, &c.

Pag. 7. Their Service ended, the *Mother* with all her Company attending my comming downe; but I durſt not come very neere leſt I might happily have light upon one of the Virgins lippes, not knowing whether they would have taken a ſecond kiſſe in good part or no, with their

their civill salutations towards mee, which I returned them a far off, they departed from the Chappell home.

Now the Deacon and I left, I observed the Chappell in generall to bee fairely and spe-  
ciously adorned with herbes and flowers natur-  
all and artificiall; and upon every pillar along  
on both sides the Chappell (such as are in Ca-  
thedrall Churches,) *Tapers*; I meane, great Vir-  
gin-waxe-Candles on every Pillar: The *halfe-  
pace* at the upper end (for there was no other  
division betwixt the body of the Chappell and  
the East end) was all covered with Tapestry  
and upon that halfe-pace stood the *Altar-like  
Table*, with a rich Carpet hanging very large on  
the halfe-pace, and some Plate, as a Challice,  
and Candlesticks with waxe Candles in them:  
By the preaching-place stood the Font, a Leg-  
laver and cover all of Brasse cut and carved  
with Imagery worke, the Laver of the bignesse  
of a Barbers Bason, and the Cover had a Crosse  
erected on it. And this is all I had leisure to  
observe in the Chappell.

Then I made bold in temperate termes to  
aske the Deacon what use they made of so ma-  
ny *Tapers* on the Table, and in the Chappell;  
he answered (forsooth) to give them light,  
when they could not see without them. And  
having formerly as I said before obtained leave

to say what I listed, I asked him to whom he made all these Courtesies, bowings and prostrations, he said to God; I told him the Papists make no other answer for their bowing to Images and Crucifixes, yet we account them Idolaters for so doing, as justly wee may: Hee

\* Pag. 8. said wee \* have no such warrant for the one; but for the other we had a precept (forsooth) *to doe all things with decencie and order*, as he tooke this to be. I demanded then why hee used not the same solemnitie in his house, and whether he thought the Chappell more holy then his *Honse*, he said no, but that God was more immediately present in the *Chappell* then in the *House*, whilst we were worshipping him, I replied that God was as present at *Paules Crosse*, as in *Paules Church*, at the *Preaching-place* at *White hall* and the *Spittle-Sermons*, as in other Churches and Chappels. For *wheresoever two or three*, &c. and in those fore-named places, no not in the bodie of any Churches, though there be Sermons and Prayers there, we do not use this threefold reverence, or bowing, or prostrating, no nor the Papists themselves, unless in the Chancell towards the East, wherein an Altar or some Crucifix is; He answered me somewhat confusedly, for this their *trinary number* of bowing which I did not well understand, nor well conceive what he meant,



It seemes moreover that at their monthly receiving the Sacrament (which this defendant Deacon performeth and consecrateth the *bread* and *wine*) their servants when they received, were attended by their Master and Mistris, and not suffered to lay or take away their owne trenchers as it is reported.

They also take upon them to be Phisitians and Chirurgions in ministring Physicke and Chirurgery for the sick and sore, and pretend to be very charitable to the poore; but as it is verily thought in a meritorious way.

They also take upon them to be Catechisers and to task many poore people with Catechisticall questions; Which when they come and can make answer thereunto, they are rewarded with money and their dinners,\* and <sup>†</sup> Pag. 9. so they pretend they feed the poores bodies and soules. But their Catechisme or Catechisticall questions (some say) are strange ones and <sup>‡</sup> for different from our Orthodox Catechismes. <sup>§</sup> Your may take notice that since the observation of the premisses, th' old Matron of the place is dead.

And now beloved and Christian Reader, you have had an ingenuous Relation of this late erected *religious House* for the service of God (as the Founders would have it termed, and

CXXXVIII THE PUBLISHER'S APPENDIX

held.)" But certes we may wonder at nothing more that in a settled Church-government our Bishops who are accounted *Governours of the Church* will permit any such erection or Foundation, so neerly complying with *Poperie*, and that by a fond and fantastickall *Family of Furrars*, the principall Priest a *poly-pragmaticall* Fellow, having been at *Rome*, and there (as it is credibly reported) he was conformable to all the abominable *Ceremonies* and *Services* of the *Church of Rome*. Now forsooth, in outward shew, hee would pretend that hee and the rest disclaime the *Pope* and *Poperie*, but by and by you shall see him and his Companions crouching, cringing, and prostrating to the ground to the Altar-like poore *Communion-Table*, or the rich gilded candlesticks, and waxe Tapers and other knacks thereon standing; And for another shew that they would not bee accounted Popish, they have gotten the *Booke of Martyrs* in the *Chappell*; but few or none are suffered to read therein, but onely it is there (I say) kept for a shew; and besides their lip-labour of trolling out the *Letanie* foure times a day, they have promiscuous private Prayers all the night long by nightly turnes, just like as the English *Nunnes* at *Saint Omers* and other Popish places: which private Prayers are (as it

---

<sup>1</sup> Sic.

seemes)

seemes) taken out of *John Cozens* his *Cozening Devotions*, (as they are rightly discovered to be <sup>\* Pag. 10.</sup> by Orthodox men) and extracted out of divers *Popish Prayer-Bookes*. This *Fryer-like Familie* and as they are not unfitly termed *Arminian Nunnery* have divers other *Commick* and *Mim-mick* actions of will-worship to the great dishonour of Almighty God, who will be served *in spirit and truth*, and he will oncc say unto them as hee did by the Prophet *Isaiah*, to the superstitious and ceremonious Jewes, *Who hath required this at your hands? &c.*

Surely we may marvell that the present *Pri- w. Cant.*  
*mate of all England and Metropolitane* being the principal *Governour* of the Church, under his sacred *Majestie*, and as hee professeth such an *Anti-Papist* and enemy to *superstition* and *Idolatry*, should permit this *Innovation*, and connive at such *canting* betwixt the barke and the tree in matter of *Religion*: But by what hath beene related of these Peoples practises, we see that position made good, That *Arminianisme* is a bridge to *Popery*, the bridge was not not onely made (a great part of the Clergie of this Land being downright *Arminians*) but some have past over it; witnesse *Preist Shelford*, *Preist Cozens*, and this Familie in this Booke treated on with divers others, and had not God of his

great mercy undermin'd the chiefe Arches of that bridge, causing them to fall in the River of confusion, wee have cause to think that the greater part of this Land would also have followed the rest; but now God hath hindred it, not only by breaking the bridge in the just downfall of many of the chiefe of the *Arminian Faction*, but also by setting up that strong, high, and thick wall of the late Parliamentary nationall Protestation; for which (as also for all his mercies at all times, especially for this years wonders) his name be for ever praised (say I) and let all Protestants say, *Amen*.

*FINIS.*

---

Num. XI. Vide Præf. §. xii.

*Dr. Wallis's Account of some Passages of his own Life. E Coll. Smithianis, penes Editorem, Vol. 22. p. 38.*

For the Reverend and Learned, Thomas Smith, D<sup>r</sup>. in Divinity, late Fellow of Magdalen College in Oxford<sup>r</sup>.

S<sup>r</sup>,

In compliance with what you have oft desired of me, I send you these Memorials of my Life.

---

This Superscription is writ- his amanuensis, only here and ten by Dr. Wallis's own hand; there Dr. Wallis hath corrected but the Letter is of the hand of it himself.

My

My Father was *John Wallis*; a grave and Reverend Divine: Son of *Robert* and *Ellen Wallis*, of *Thingdon* (or, as it is usually pronounced, *Fyenden*) in the County of *Northampton*: Born in *January* 1567, and there baptised the 18<sup>th</sup>. of that Month. He was educated in *Trinity College* in *Cambridge*: where he took the Degrees of Bachelor and Master of Arts: and (about the same time) entred into Holy Orders; in the Reign of *Queen Elizabeth*.

Toward the end of *Qu. Elizabeth's* Reign; he was made Minister of *Ashford*; a great Market-Town in *Kent*. Where he continued the remainder of his Life, in great esteem and reputation, not only in that Town and Parish, but with the Clergy, Gentry, and Nobility round about.

He was a Pious, Prudent, Learned and Orthodox Divine; an Eminent and Diligent Preacher; and with his prudent carriage, kept that great Town in very good Order; and promoted Piety to a great Degree.

Beside his constant preaching twice on the Lord's-day, and other occasional Sermons, and his Catechising and otherwise Instructing the younger sort; he did (with some of the most eminent Neighbour-Ministers) maintain a Week-day Lecture, on Saturday, their Market-day. Which was much frequented (beside a numerous

rous auditory of others) by very many of the Neighbour-Ministers, the Justices of the Peace, and others of the Gentry. Who (after Sermon) did use to dine at an Ordinary, and there confer (as there was occasion) about such affairs as might concern the welfare and good Government of that town and the parts adjacent, wherein they were respectively concerned.

He died at *Ashford*, *Novemb. 30.* and was there buried *Decemb. 3. 1622.* much lamented; and left behind him a good memory, which is not yet extinguished.

My Mother was *Joanna*, Daughter of *Henry* and *Sarah Chapman*, then of *Godmersham* in the County of *Kent*; who afterward removed to *Ashford*; and lived (both of them) with my father and mother, during my father's life; and with my mother, afterwards, to a great age and with great esteem, which *Sarah* was Daughter and Heiress of *Drew Sanders*, an eminent Merchant in *London*.

My Mother was born in *March*, and baptised *March 15. 1581.* She was married to my Father (after the death of his former Wife) *March 12. 1612.* By whom he had (beside myself) two Daughters (*Sarah* and *Ellen*) who were elder than I; and two Sons (*Henry* and *William*) who were younger than I.

I was born at *Ashford* (as I find among other of my Father's Memorials) *Novemb. 23. 1616.* and baptised *Decemb. 1.* then following.

My Father dying while I was a child; I was beholden to the Piety, Care and Kindness of my Mother for my Education. Who, after my Father's death, continued a Widdow, for the good of her Children, (tho' otherwise, she had fair opportunities of marrying well; if she had been so disposed:) she continued for the most part, (after my Father's death) to live in *Ashford*, in a house which she there purchased after my Father's death; but sometimes with one or other of her two daughters then married, and, at last, with my brother *Henry*, who was then a Linnen-Draper in *Ashford*; where she died, *Sept. 26. 1643.* Leaving her children all surviving and in good circumstances, and the youngest of us about 21 years of age.

In the year 1625 (the first year of K. Charles the first) there happened a great Plague at *London*, and many other places of the Kingdome; and (particularly) at *Ashford*, which caused many of the Inhabitants to remove thence to Neighbour Parishes for safety.

I had, til then, been educated at *Ashford*; in learning *English*, and, somewhat of *Latin*. But, upon this occasion, was sent to School to *Tenterden* (another great Market-Town in *Kent*;) where,

where, at a place called *Ley-green* (within that Parish) lived *Mr. Finch*, a worthy Gentleman, of a good Estate; who having divers children of his own, entertained a School-Master in his Family, *Mr. James Movat*, a *Scotchman*, who was a very good School-Master, and kept a private School for the Instruction of all the Children of that Gentleman, and of divers others who lodged in the Neighbor-hood.

His Scholar I continued for divers years; and was by him well grounded in the Technical part of Grammar; so as to understand the Rules, and the grounds and reasons of such Rules; with the use of them in such Authors as are usually read in Grammar Schools. For it was always my affectation even from a child, in all pieces of Learning or Knowledge, not merely to learn by rote, which is soon forgotten, but to know the grounds or reasons of what I learn; to inform my Judgement, as well as furnish my Memory; and thereby, make a better Impression on both.

In the year 1630, that Gentleman's eldest Son being designed for the University. (and the others, otherwise) that School broke up. I might then perhaps have gone to the University, as well as some who did; (being not inferior to them in Learning) but I was thought too young.

My



## TO HIS PREFACE.

CXLV

My School-Master (who had a great kindness for me) soon after travailed, as Tutor to another Gentleman; and would have had me travailed with him, (into *France, Italy,* and other places;): but my Mother was loth to send me abroad.

At *Christmass* 1630, I was sent to School to *Mr. Martin Holbeck*, at *Felsted* in *Essèx*; who was reputed (as indeed he was) a very good School-Master. He there taught a Free School of the Foundation of the Earl of *Warwick*, whose Seat at *Leez* was within that Parish. At this School, though in a Countrey Village, he had at that time above an hundred or six score Scholars; most of them Strangers, sent thither from other places, upon reputation of the School; from whence many good Scholars were sent yearly to the University.

*Mr. Holbeck* was very kind to me; and used to say, I came to him the best grounded of any Scholar that he received from another School.

I continued his Scholar for two years; and was by that time pretty well acquainted with the *Latin* and *Greek* tongues, having read divers Authors therein (such as at Schools are wont to be read) and was pretty accurate in the *Grammars* of both; and in such other Learning as is commonly taught in such Schools; and

as well qualified for the University as most that come thither. I had been used in both the Schools, to speak *Latin*; which made that Language pretty familiar to me; which I found to be of great advantage afterward.

I learn'd there somewhat of *Hebrew* also. So much at least, as to be able (with my Grammar and Dictionary) to proceed further without a Teacher: which I did afterwards prosecute to a good Degree of accuracy, as to the *Grammar* of it; (for this I was wont to be very careful of, in all Languages that I meddled with;) and in a few years, had read over all the *Hebrew Bible*, and much of it more than once.

And I was there taught somewhat of *Logick*; as a preparation to a further study of it in the University.

While I continued a Scholar there, at Christmas 1631, (a season of the year when Boys use to have a vacancy from School,) I was, for about a fortnight, at home with my Mother at *Ashford*. I there found that a younger Brother of mine (in Order to a Trade) had, for about 3 Months, been learning (as they call'd it) to *Write and Cipher*, or *Cast account*, (and he was a good proficient for that time.) When I had been there a few days; I was inquisitive to know what it was, they so-called. And (to satisfy my curiosity) my Brother did (during  
the

the Remainder of my stay there before I return'd to School) shew me what he had been Learning in those 3 Months. Which was (besides the writing a fair hand) the *Practical* part of *Common Arithmetick* in *Numeration, Addition, Substraction, Multiplication, Division, The Rule of Three (Direct and Inverse,) the Rule of Fellowship (with and without, Time) the Rule of False-Position, Rules of Practise and Reduction of Coins,* and some other little things. Which when he had shewed me by steps, in the same method that he had learned them; and I had wrought over all the *Examples* which he before had done in his book; I found no difficulty to understand it, and I was very well pleased with it: and thought it ten days or a fortnight well spent. This was my first insight into *Mathematicks*; and all the Teaching I had.

This suiting my humor so well; I did thenceforth prosecute it, (at School and in the University) not as a formal Study, but as a pleasing Diversion, at spare hours; as books of *Arithmetick*; or others *Mathematical* fell occasionally in my way. For I had none to direct me, what books to read, or what to seek, or in what Method to proceed. For *Mathematicks*, (at that time, with us) were scarce looked upon as *Academical* Studies, but rather *Mechanical*; as the business of *Traders, Merchants,*

*Seamen, Carpenters, Surveyors of Lands, or the like; and perhaps some Almanack-makers in London.* And amongst more than Two hundred Students (at that time) in our College, I do not know of any Two (perhaps not any) who had more of *Mathematicks* than I, (if so much) which was then but little; And but very few, in that whole University. For the Study of *Mathematicks* was at that time more cultivated in *London* than in the Universities. At this time also I learned the rudiments of Musick and of the French Tongue.

About *Christmass 1632*. I was sent to the University of *Cambridge*; and was there admitted in *Emanuel College*, under the Tuition of *Mr. Anthony Burgess*; a pious, learned and able Scholar, a good Disputant, a good Tutor, an eminent Preacher, a sound and orthodox Divine; and (after he had left the College) I was under the Tuition of *Mr. Thomas Horton*, and lastly of *Mr. Benjamin Whichcot*; all able Scholars, and Eminent Divines. *Mr. Burgess* was afterwards Minister of *Sutton-Coldfield* in *Warwickshire*; *Dr. Horton* was afterwards Master of *Queen's College* in *Cambridge*, and *Dr. Whichcott*, Provost of *King's College* there; and all of them in their time, eminent Preachers in *London*.

When

When I was come to the University; I found it was no disadvantage to have stay'd a year or more at School longer than perhaps I need- ed to have done. I found that, beside the improvement of what skill I had in *Latin, Greek* and *Hebrew* Languages (which I pursued with diligence) and other *Philologick* studies, my first business was to be the study of *Lo- gick*.

In this, I soon became Master of a *Syllogism*, as to it's true structure, and the Reason of it's Consequences, however Cryptically proposed: so as not easily to be imposed on by Fallacies or false Syllogisms, when I was to Answer or Defend: and to manage an Argument with good Advantage, when I was to Argue or Op- pose; and to Distinguish ambiguous Words or Sentences, as there was occasion; and was able to hold pace with those who were some years my Seniors; and had obtain'd the reputation of a good Disputant. And indeed I had the good hap all along (both at School and in the University) to be reputed (if not equal) not much inferior, to those of the best of my rank.

From *Logick*, I proceeded to *Ethicks, Physicks* and *Métaphysicks*, (consulting the School- men on such points) according to the Methods of *Philosophy*, then in fashion in that Univer- sity.

## THE PUBLISHER'S APPENDIX

And I took into it the Speculative part of *Physick and Anatomy*; as parts of *Natural Philosophy*; And as *Dr. Glisson* (then *Publick Professor of Physick* in that University) hath since told me, I was the first of his Sons, who (in a publick Disputation) maintain'd the Circulation of the Bloud, (which was then a new Doctrine,) tho' I had no Design of Practising *Physick*. And I had then imbib'd the Principles of what they now call the *New Philosophy*.

For I made no Scruple of diverting (from the common road of Studies then in fashion) to any part of useful Learning... Presuming, that Knowledge is no Burthen; and, if of any part thereof I should afterwards have no occasion to make use, it would at least do me no hurt; And, what of it I might or might not have occasion for, I could not then foresee.

On the same account, I diverted also to *Astronomy and Geography* (as parts of *Natural Philosophy*) and to other parts of *Mathematicks*; though, at that time, they were scarce looked upon, with us, as Academical Studies then in fashion.

As to Divinity, (on which I had an eye from the first,) I had the happiness of a strict and Religious Education, all along from a Child: Whereby I was not only preserved from vicious Courses, and acquainted with Religious Exercises;

cises; but was early instructed in the Principles of Religion, and <sup>1</sup> *Catarchical Divinity*, and the frequent Reading of *Scripture*, and other good Books, and diligent attendance on Sermons. (And whatever other Studies I followed, I was careful not to neglect this.) And became timely acquainted with *Systematick and Polemick Theology*. And had the repute of a good Proficient therein.

Soon after my admittance into *Emanuel College*, I was chosen into the *Foundation*, as *Scholar* of the House. And so continued during my stay in that College. But I was not in capacity of being *Fellow* there, by reason of a *Proviso* in the *College Statutes*; not permitting more than one *Fellow*, of one and the same County, at the same time. So that, there being already a *Fellow of the County of Kent*, (*Mr. Wellar*) who continued there, 'til long after I had left the College, there was no room for me (being of the same County) to be *Fellow* there. Otherwise I was well esteem'd, and well beloved in the College, and had certainly been chosen *Fellow* if I had been in a capacity for it: and loth they were that I should go away.

And, (as I afterwards understood) *Dr. Oldsworth* then *Master* of the College (who had a kindness for me) had been consulting with them.

about founding a *new Fellowship* on my account; rather than I should leave them. But, the times, becoming troublesome, left no room for such thoughts. I was afterwards Fellow of *Queen's College in Cambridge* for a short time, but soon quitted it upon my Marriage, on March 4. 1644, 5.

In *Hilary Term 1636, 7.* I took the Degree of *Batchelor of Arts*; and in 1640, the Degree of *Master of Arts*, and then left *Emanuel College*; and the same year I entered into *Holy Orders*, ordained by *Bishop Curle*, then *Bishop of Winchester*.

I then lived a *Chaplain* for about a year, in the house of *S<sup>r</sup>. Richard Darley*, (an antient worthy Knight,) at *Buttercramb in Yorkshire*; and then, for two years more, with the *Lady Vere*, (the Widdow of the Lord *Horatio Vere*,) partly in *London*, and partly at *Castle-Hedingham in Essex*, the antient seat of the *Earls of Oxford*.

In the year 1644, I was one of the Secretaries to the *Assembly of Divines at Westminster*. Not from the first sitting of that *Assembly*; but some time after, and thenceforth during their sitting. Wherein I do own my self to have received much advantage by the Conversation and the learned Debates of so many Grave, Reverend and Learned Divines, on all points of  
Di-



## TO HIS PREFACE.

CLIII

Divinity, while they were compiling the *Confession of Faith*, and the *Larger and lesser Catechism*.

The Occasion of that *Assembly*, was this; The Parliament which then was, (or the prevailing part of them,) were engaged in a War with the King: Occasioned, *Partly*, from divers innovations in *Ceremonies* and *Super-Conformity*, introduced and strictly urged within ten or twelve years then last past, tending (as was apprehended) to a nearer compliance with Popery; of which, divers of the Bishops then in power were presumed the Authors and Fomentors; Together with the imposing of Bishops (there long disused) and the *Common-Prayer Book* on the Scots, which much enraged that Nation. *Partly* by several *Incroachments on Liberty and Property* (as was apprehended) by several Methods practised for *raising of Money on the Subject, without the consent of Parliament*, with other *Grievances*, of which there were great *Complaints*, and the long *intermission of Parliaments*. *Partly*, by divers Severities of the *Star-Chamber and High-Commission Court*, (against persons otherwise Conformable) for not complying therein. The Issue of which War, proved very different from what was said to be at first intended. As is usual in such cases; the power of the sword frequently passing from hand to hand, and those

who begin a War, not being able to foresee where it wil end.

The Parliament thus engaged, had (amongst other things) a great displeasure against the *Order of Bishops*; (or rather, not so much against the *Order*; as the Men, and against the *Order* for their sakes,) and had resolved upon the *Abolition of Episcopacy* as it then stood; before they were agreed what to put instead of it. And did then convene this *Assembly*, to consult of some other *Form* to be suggested to the *Parliament*, to be by them set up, if they liked it; or, so far as they should like it.

The Divines of this *Assembly* were, for the Generality of them, *Conformable, Episcopal Men*; and had generally the reputation of *Pious, Orthodox and Religious Protestants*; and (excepting the seaven *Independents*, or, as they were called, *Dissenting Bretheren*,) I do not know of any *Non-Conformist* among them (as to the *legal Conformity then required*,) many of them were professedly *Episcopal*; and (I think) all of them so far *Episcopal* as to account a well-regulated *Episcopacy* to be at least allowable, if not desireable, and advisable; yet so as they thought the present Constitution capable of *Reformation* for the better.

When I name the *Divines* of this *Assembly*, I do not include the *Scotch Commissioners*; who  
tho'

## TO HIS PREFACE.

CLV

tho' they were permitted to be present there, and did interpose in the *Debates* as they saw occasion; yet were no *Members* of that Assembly, nor did Vote with them; but acted <sup>1</sup> separately, in the behalf of the *Church of Scotland*, and were zealous enough for the *Scotch Presbytery*; but could never prevail with the *Assembly* to declare for it.

On the other hand; the <sup>2</sup> *Independants* were against all *united Church Government* of more than one single Congregation; holding that each single *Congregation*, voluntarily agreeing to make themselves a *Church*, and chuse their own Officers, were of themselves <sup>3</sup> *Independant*, and not accountable to any other *Ecclesiastical Government*; but only to the Civil Magistrate, as to the Publick Peace. Admitting indeed, that Messengers from several Churches might meet to consult in Common, as there might be occasion; but without any Authoritative Jurisdiction.

Against these, the rest of the *Assembly* was Unanimous (and the *Scotch Commissioners* with them,) That it was lawful by the word of God, for divers particular *Congregations* (beside the inspection of their own *Pastor* and other Officers) to be united under the same *Common Government*. <sup>1</sup> And such *Communities* to be further sub-

---

<sup>1</sup> Sic.   <sup>2</sup> Sic.   <sup>3</sup> Sic.

ordinate

## THE PUBLISHER'S APPENDIX

ordinate to *Provincial and National Assemblies*, (which is equally consistent with *Episcopal and Presbyterian Principles*.) But, whether with or without a Bishop or standing President over such Assemblies, was not determined or debated by them.

When any such Point chanced to be suggested, the Common Answer was; That this Point was not before them; but was precluded by the *Ordinance* by which they sate; which did first *Declare* the Abolition of Episcopacy (not refer it to their Deliberation;) and they only to suggest to the Parliament, somewhat in the room of that so Abolished.

And this is a true Account of that *Assembly* as to this Point. (And when as they were called *Presbyterians*; it was not in the sense of *Anti-Episcopal*, but *Anti-Independants*.) which I have the more largely insisted on, because there are not many now living, who can give a better account of that *Assembly* than I can.

To this may be objected, Their agreement to the *Covenant*, (which was before I was amongst them.) But this, if rightly understood, makes nothing against what I have said.

The *Covenant* as it came from *Scotland*, and was sent from the *Parliament* to the *Assembly*, seem'd directly against all *Episcopacy*, and for

---

<sup>1</sup> Sic.

setting up the *Scotch Presbytery* just as among them. But the *Assembly* could not be brought to assent to it in those terms. Being so worded as, *To Preserve* the Government of the Church of Scotland; and, *to Reform* that of England; and so *to Reduce* it to the nearest Uniformity. But, before the *Assembly* could agree to it; it was thus mollified, *To Preserve* that of Scotland (not absolutely, but) *against the common Enemy*; And *to Reform* that of England (not, so as it is in Scotland, but) *according to the word of God, and the example of the best reformed Churches*; And *to endeavor the nearest Uniformity* (which might be as well by Reforming that of Scotland, as that of England, or of both.)

And whereas the *Covenant*, as first brought to them, was against *Popery, Prelacie, Heresie, Schism, Prophaness, &c.* They would by no means be persuaded to admit the word *Prelacy*, as thus standing absolute. For though they thought the *English Episcopacy*, as it then stood, capable of *Reformation*, for the better in divers things; yet to Engage indefinitely against all *Prelacy*, they would not agree.

After many days debate on this Point (as I understood from those who were then present) some of the Parliament (who then pressed it) suggested this Expedient; that by *Prelacy*, they did not understand all manner of *Episcopacy*

or

or Superiority, but only the present Episcopacy, as it now stood in *England*, consisting of Arch-Bishops; Bishops and their several Courts; and subordinate Officers, &c. And that if any considerable alteration were made in any part of this whole frame, it was an Abolition of the present Prelacy, and as much as was here intended in these words; and that no more was intended but a Reformation of the present Episcopacy in England. And in pursuance of this; it was agreed to be Expressed with this Interpretation, *Prelacy; that is, Church Government by Arch-Bishops, Bishops, their Chancellors and Commissaries, Deans, Deans and Chapters, Arch-Deacons, and all other Ecclesiastical Officers depending on that Hierarchy.* And with this Interpretation at length it passed. And the *Scotch Commissioners*, in behalf of their Church, agreed to those *Amendments*.

I know some have been apt to put another sense upon that Interpretation; but this was the true intendment of the *Assembly*, and upon this occasion.

During my attendance on the *Assembly*; I was a Minister in *London*; first in *Fan-church street*; and afterwards in *Iron-monger Lane*; where I so continued till my Remove to *Oxford*.

About the beginning of our Civil Wars, in the year 1642; a Chaplain of *Sr. Will. Waller's*,

(one

(one evening as we were sitting down to Supper at the *Lady Vere's* in *London*, with whom I then dwelt,) shewed me an intercepted Letter written in *Cipher*. He shewed it me as a Curiosity (and it was indeed the first thing I had ever seen written in *Cipher*.) And asked me between jeast and earnest, whether I could make any thing of it. And he was surprised when I said (upon the first view) perhaps I might, if it proved no more but a new Alphabet.

It was about ten a clock when we rose from Supper. I then withdrew to my chamber to consider of it. And by the number of different Characters therein; (not above 22 or 23:) I judged that it could not be more than a new Alphabet, and in about 2 hours time (before I went to bed) I had deciphered it; and I sent a Copy of it (so deciphered) the next morning to him from whom I had it. And this was my first attempt at *Deciphering*.

This unexpected success, on an easy Cipher, was then looked upon as a great matter; and I was some while after pressed to attempt one of another Nature; which was a Letter of *Mr. Secretary Windbank*; then in *France*, to his Son in *England*, in a Cipher hard enough, and not unbecoming a Secretary of State. It was in Numeral Figures, extending in number to above seven hundred, with many other Characters

in-

intermixed. But not so hard as many that I have since met with. I was backward at first to attempt it, and after I had spent some time upon it, threw it by as desperate: But, after some months, resumed it again, and had the good hap to master it.

Being encouraged by this success, beyond expectation; I afterwards ventured on many others (some of more, some of less difficulty) and scarce missed of any, that I undertook, for many years, during our civil Wars, and afterwards. But of late years; *the French Methods of Cipher* are grown so intricate beyond what it was wont to be, that I have failed of many; tho' I have master'd divers of them. Of such deciphered Letters, there be copies of divers remaining in *the Archives of the Bodleyan Library in Oxford*; and many more in my own Custody, and with the Secretaries of State.

On March 4. 1644, 5. I married *Susanna* daughter of *John and Rachel Glyde* of *Northjam* in *Sussex*; born there about the end of *January* 1621, 2. and baptised *Feb. 3.* following. By whom I have (beside other children who died young) a Son and two Daughters now surviving; *John* born *Dec. 26.* 1650. *Anne* born *June 4.* 1656. and *Elizabeth* born *Sept. 23.* 1658.

My Son *John*, sometime of *Trinity College* in *Oxford*, afterwards of the *Inner Temple* *London*,



don, Barrister at Law, *Feb. 1. 1681, 2.* married *Elizabeth* daughter of *John* and *Mary Harris*, of *Soundels* by *Nettlebed*, in the County of *Oxford*; and afterward Heiress to her Brother *Tavernier Harris*, to a fair estate, at *Soundels*. She died *Aug. 8. 1693*, leaving three children now surviving, *John, Mary* and *Elizabeth*.

My daughter *Anne* married *Dec. 23. 1675*, to *John Blencow*, son of *Thomas* and *Mary Blencow* of an antient family at *Marston St. Laurence*, in *Northamptonshire*, then Barrister at Law, now one of the Barons of the Exchequer, by whom she hath seven children, all now surviving, *John, Mary, Anne, Thmoas, William, Elizabeth* and *Susanna*.

My Daughter *Elizabeth*, married *Feb. 21. 1681, 2.* to *William Benson* son of *George* and *Mary Benson* of *Towcester* in *Northamptonshire*; and is now a Widdow. He died *Nov. 5. 1691.* leaving no child surviving.

My Wife died at *Oxford Mar. 17. 1686, 7.* after we had been married more than 42 years.

About the year 1645, while I lived in *London* (at a time, when, by our Civil Wars, Academical Studies were much interrupted in both our Universities :) beside the Conversation of divers eminent Divines, as to matters Theological; I had the opportunity of being acquainted with divers worthy Persons, inquisitive into

Na-

Natural Philosophy, and other parts of Humane Learning; And particularly of what hath been called the *New Philosophy* or *Experimental Philosophy*.

We did by agreement, divers of us, meet weekly in *London* on a certain day, to treat and discourse of such affairs. Of which number, were *Dr. John Wilkins* (afterward *Bp. of Chester*) *Dr. Jonathan Goddard*, *Dr. George Ent*, *Dr. Glisson*, *Dr. Merret*, (*Drs. in Physick*,) *Mr. Samuel Foster* then Professor of Astronomy at *Gresham College*; *Mr. Theodore Hank* (a German of the *Palatinate*, and then Resident in *London*, who, I think, gave the first occasion, and first suggested those meetings) and many others.

These meetings we held sometimes at *Dr. Goddard's* lodgings in *Woodstreet* (or some convenient place near) on occasion of his keeping an Operator in his house, for grinding Glasses for Telescopes and Microscopes; and sometime at a convenient place in *Cheap-side*; sometime at *Gresham College* or some place near adjoining.

Our business was (precluding matters of Theology and State Affairs) to discourse and consider of *Philosophical Enquiries*, and such as related thereunto; as *Physick*, *Anatomy*, *Geometry*, *Astronomy*, *Navigation*, *Staticks*, *Magnetics*, *Chymicks*, *Mechanicks*, and *Natural Experiments*; with the state of these Studies, as then cul-

cultivated, at home and abroad. We there discoursed of the *Circulation of the Bloud, the Valves in the Veins, the Venæ Lactææ, the Lymphatick Vessels, the Copernican Hypothesis, the Nature of Comets, and New stars, The Satellites of Jupiter, the Oval Shape (as it then appeared) of Saturn, the spots in the Sun, and it's Turning on it's own Axis, the Inequalities and Selenography of the Moon, the several Phases of Venus and Mercury, the Improvement of Telescopes, and grinding of Glasses for that purpose, the Weight of Air, the Possibility or Impossibility of Vacuities, and Nature's Abhorrence thereof, the Torricellian Experiment in Quicksilver, the Descent of heavy Bodies, and the degrees of Acceleration therein; and divers other things of like nature. Some of which were then but New Discoveries, and others not so generally known and imbraced, as now they are, with other things appertaining to what hath been called *The New Philosophy*; which, from the times of *Galileo at Florence, and Sr. Francis Bacon (Lord Verulam) in England*, hath been much cultivated in *Italy, France, Germany, and other Parts abroad, as well as with us in England.**

About the year 1648, 1649, some of our company being removed to *Oxford* (first *Dr. Wilkins*, then *I*, and soon after *Dr. Goddard*) our company divided. Those in *London* continued to meet there as before (and we with them, when

we had occasion to be there;) and those of us at *Oxford*; with *Dr. Ward* (since *Bp. of Salisbury*) *Dr. Ralph Bathurst* (now *President of Trinity College in Oxford*) *Dr. Petty* (since *Sr. William Petty*) *Dr. Willis* (then an eminent *Physician in Oxford*) and divers others, continued such meetings in *Oxford*; and brought those Studies into fashion there; meeting first at *Dr. Pettie's Lodgings*, (in an *Apothecarie's house*) because of the convenience of inspecting *Drugs*, and the like, as there was occasion; And after his remove to *Ireland* (tho' not so constantly) at the *Lodgings of Dr. Wilkins*, then *Warden of Wadham Coll.* And after his removal to *Trinity College in Cambridge*, at the *Lodgings of the Honorable Mr. Robert Boyle*, then resident for divers years in *Oxford*.

Those meetings in *London* continued, and (after the *King's Return* in 1660) were increased with the accession of divers worthy and *Honorable Persons*; and were afterwards incorporated by the name of *the Royal Society*, &c. and so continue to this day.

In the year 1649 I removed to *Oxford*, being then *Publick Professor of Geometry*, of the *Foundation of Sr. Henry Savile*. And *Mathematicks* which had before been a pleasing *Diversion*, was now to be my serious *Study*. And (herein as in other *Studies*) I made it my business to

## TO HIS PREFACE.

CLXV

examine things to the bottom; and reduce effects to their first principles and original causes. Thereby the better to understand the true ground of what hath been delivered to us from the Antients, and to make further improvements of it. What proficiency I made therein, I leave to the Judgement of those who have thought it worth their while to peruse what I have published therein from time to time; and the favorable opinion of those skilled therein, at home and abroad.

In the year 1653 I was persuaded to publish a Grammar of the *English Tongue*; chiefly to gratify strangers, who were willing to learn it (because of many desirable things published in our Language) but complained of it's difficulty for want of a Grammar, suited to the propriety and true Genius of the Language.

To this I prefixed a Treatise of Speech (*de loquela*) wherein I have Philosophically considered the Formation of all Sounds used in Articulate Speech, (as well of our own, as of any other Language that I know;); By what Organs, and in what Position each sound was formed; with the nice distinctions of each, (which in some letters of the same Organ, is very subtil:) so that, by such Organs, in such Position, the Breath, issuing from the Lungs, will form such Sounds, whether the Person do

or do not hear himself speak. Which was, I think, a new attempt, not before undertaken by any (that I know of) before that time. For tho' it were observed, that some letters were Labials, some Dentals, some Palatines, and some Gutturals; and some Grammarians have in some few shewed a different Formation<sup>1</sup> in some few<sup>2</sup> of the same Organ; yet it is but of very few they have so done; and very imperfectly; None (that I know of) had before attempted it, as to all; whatever may have been done since in pursuance of what I had then taught.

In pursuance of this, I thought it very possible to teach a Deaf person to speak, by directing him, so to apply the Organs of Speech, as the sound of each letter required, (which children learn by imitation and manifold attempts, rather than by art:) And in the year 1660 being importuned by some friends of his, I undertook so to teach *Mr. Daniel Whalley* of *Northampton*, who had been Deaf and Dumb from a Child. I began the work in 1661, and in little more than a year's time, I had taught him, to pronounce distinctly any words, so as I directed him, (even the most difficult of the *Polish Language*, which a *Polish Lord* then in *Oxford* could propose to him, by way of trial, of those five or six select hard words, which

---

<sup>1</sup> F. delend.

TO HIS PREFACE.

CLXVII.

they use to propose to others, as not to be pronounced by any but themselves:) and in good measure to understand a Language and express his own mind in writing; And he had in that time read over to me distinctly (the whole or greatest part of) the English Bible; and did pretty well understand (at least) the Historical part of it.

In the year 1662, I did the like for *Mr. Alexander Popham* (son of the *Lady Wharton*, by her former husband *Admiral Popham*;) with like success. On whom *Dr. William Holder* had before attempted it, but gave it over.

I know that both of these (who I think are yet living) were apt to forget (after their parting from me) much of that nicety (which before they had) in the distinct pronouncing some Letters, (which they would recover, when I had occasionally been with them to set them right;) wanting the help of their Ear to direct their speaking, as that of the Eye directs the hand in writing. For which reason a man who writes a good hand, would soon forget so to do, if grown blind. And therefore, one who thus learns to speak, will (for the continuance and improvement of it) need somebody continually with him, who may prompt him, when he mistakes.

I have, since that time (upon the same account) taught divers Persons (and some of them very considerable) to speak plain and distinctly, who did before hesitate and stutter very much; and others, to pronounce such words or letters, as before they thought impossible for them to do: by teaching them how to rectify such mistakes in the formation, as by some natural impediment, or acquired Custome, they had been subject to.

About February 1657, 8. (upon the death of *Dr. Gerard Laigbain, Provost of Queen's College in Oxford*, a very worthy person) I was chosen *Custos Archivorum* in this University; to keep and to inspect their Records, Charters, and other Muniments. And was therèby engaged in the Study of our Charters, Rights and Privileges: which I did with great diligence. And in pursuance thereof, I was concerned from time to time in defending their just Rights and Privileges, in such Law-Suits, as did arise, of the *University* with the *City of Oxford*, the *Stationers of London*, and others. Wherein I found that some little knowledge, which I had before acquired, by occasional inspection (amongst other Studies) into our Books of Law, was of great use unto me; and of which I was hereby ingaged into a further Study, especially as to those Cases, wherein the University was  
con-



concerned. And I think it will be acknowledged, that I have therein done the University considerable services. I am sure it hath been my endeavour so to do, when I have been employed by them.

It hath been my Lot to live in a time, wherein have been many and great Changes and Alterations. It hath been my endeavour all along, to act by moderate Principles, between the Extremities on either hand, in a moderate compliance with the Powers in being, in those places, where it hath been my Lot to live, without the fierce and violent animosities usual in such Cases, against all, that did not act just as I did, knowing that there were many worthy Persons engaged on either side. And willing whatever side was upmost, to promote (as I was able) any good design for the true Interest of Religion, of Learning, and the publick good; and ready so to do good Offices, as there was Opportunity; And, if things could not be just, as I could wish, to make the best of what is: And hereby, (thro' God's gracious Providence) have been able to live easy, and useful, though not Great.

Thus in Compliance with your repeated desires, I have given you a short account of divers passages of my life, 'till I have now come to more than fourscore years of age. How well

## THE PUBLISHER'S APPENDIX

I have acquitted my self in each, is for others  
rather to say, than for

Your friend and servant

Oxford January  
29. 1696,7.

John Wallis.

Num. XII. Vide Præf. §. XII.

*An Extract of a Letter from Dr. John Wallis to Dr. John Fell, then Lord Bishop of Oxford, dated April 8. 1685. concerning the Report spread about of Dr. Wallis's deciphering King Charles the 1<sup>st</sup>'s Letters. E. Coll. MSS. Smithianis penes Editorem, Vol. 22. p. 54.*

My Lord,

I understand there have of late been complaints made of mee, that I deciphered the late King's letters, meaning those taken in the late King's cabinet at Nase-by fight, and after printed. As to this without saying any thing, whether it bee now proper to repeat what was done above forty yeares ago; the thing is quite otherwise. Of those letters and papers, (whatever they were) I never saw any one of them, but in print: nor did those papers, as I have been told, need any deciphering at all, either

by

by mee, or any body else : being taken in words at length, just as they were printed : save that some of them were, I know not by whom, translated out of French into English. 'Tis true, that afterwards some other letters of other persons, which had been occasionally intercepted, were brought to my hands: some of which I did decipher, and some of them I did not think fit to do, to the displeasing of some, who were then great men. And I managed my selfe in that whole busines by such measures, as your Lordship, I think, would not bee displeas'd with. I did his Majesty, who then was, (K. Charles the first) and his friends many good offices, as I had opportunity, both before and after the King's death: and ventured farther to do them service, than perhaps some of those, who now complaine of mee, would have had the courage to do, had they been in my circumstances. And I did to his late Majesty, K. Charles the second, many good services, both before and since his restauration: which himselfe has been pleas'd divers times to profess to mee with great kindnes. And if either my Lord Chancellour, Clarendon, or Mr. Secretary Nicolas, or his late Majesty, were now alive, they would give mee a very different character, from what, it seems, some others have done. And I thinke, his Majesty, that  
now

now is, knowes somewhat of it, and some other persons of honour yet alive. &c.

I am,

My Lord,

Your very humble servant

John Wallis.

*Transcribed (saith Dr. Smith) from the copy, which Dr. Wallis lent mee at Oxford 6 August 1698.*

*Tho. Smith.*

*In the Oxford Catalogue of MSS. (saith Dr. Smith also) in hyperoo Bodleiano, it is said there pag. [170. num. 3524.34.] that Dr. Wallis decyphered several of King Charles I. Letters, and that they are in the book of Cyphers, which hee gave to the Vniversity Library, (in the year 1653.) which is a great and scandalous slander.*

---

Num. XIII. Vide Præf. §. XII.

*Inscriptiones singulares hactenus ineditæ, HADRIANO BEVERLANDO collectore. Ad fidem Codicis MS. viri magnæ apud omnes litteratos auctoritatis HENRICI ALDRICHI, non ita pridem Ædis Christi Decani. Mecum vero (de more suo) perquam humaniter communicavit vir pereruditus (sodalis noster è paucis jucundissimus, nam mihi cum eo amicitia conjunctissima fuit) CA-  
RO-*

TO HIS PREFACE.

CLXXIII

ROLVS BRENT, A.M. & *Ædis Christi*  
*Alumnus, funere immaturo (id quod viris littera-*  
*tis, quibuscum habuit consuetudinem, maximæ fuit*  
*acerbitati) nuper præreptus. E Coll. nostris MSS.*  
*Vol. 75. p. 1.*

In via Tiburtina.

CHIAE TI CLAU-  
DIVS BITHUS  
b. m. TRIBVIT  
Hoc MERVERAT.

C. MUSIÓ QVIR.  
ASCLAE H. B. M. F.  
LOCVS SACER  
AD PERPETUAM  
AURELII  
MEMORIAM  
INSTAURATUS.

---

OLLAE QVI  
ETI MYRTALE  
SABINAE ET  
POMPONIAE  
FESTAE UXORIB  
S. TARQVITIUS  
ASPER

ET

---

ET TARQVITIAE FILIAE  
 INNOCENTISS. VIX. AN. IIII  
 M. X. D. IX. FECIT PATER  
 INFELIX ET SIBI NEMO NOS  
 INQVIETET. HAVE ET VALE  
 QVISQVIS ES.

---

D. M.  
 CVI PLACET PLA  
 CEAT NOBIS NON  
 CVM HIC COMMODI  
 TAS NULLA SIT  
 HABITANDI

---

Salonae.  
 METRIVS PIVS  
 DIVES JAM HEBES  
 DECREPITUS ET MEN  
 DICANS LVCE CARENS  
 ATRIBVS LIBERTIS ET DVA  
 BUS LIBERTABVS EXPVLSVS  
 SITI PERI.

---

SACRVM MIHIMET CONSTI  
 TUI HIC HUMATUS SVM.  
 CINERA ET OSSA RENUO.  
 IN HOC UT QVIESCAM NOLO  
 SOBOLEM NEGO PRIVO  
 POSTEROS OMNES.

---

ME LEGITO ET SE : : : :  
VIX AN. CXXV. M: III  
ET NEMINI  
POSTERI.

---

AURELIO HERA  
CLIDÆ AGITATORI  
FACTIONIS VENETAE  
ET L. DOCTORI FAC  
TIONIS SS PRASINAE  
FECIT VLPIUS APO  
LAUSTIANUS TATULAE  
B. M.

---

TYRO APOL  
LONIO INSTAU  
RATORI MOENIUM  
NOSTRORVM ET  
TARSIAE SANCTISS.  
VIRGINI EJUS FILIÆ  
UNIVERSUS POPVLVS  
MITILENORVM  
AB NIMIO AMORE  
AETERNUM DECYS  
AD MEMORIAM.

DIS MAN  
PONTIUS  
MAXIMUS  
ETC. PONT.  
PAULINUS

DIS MAN  
ETC. PONT  
PONTIANUS  
FIERI IUSS.

CORNELIO  
SYLLAE  
IMPERATORI  
FORTUNATO

MARTI  
SANCTO  
SACRVM.

SUM CASTÆ CINERVM  
LAPIS PVELLÆ CVSTOS  
ME RELEGENS PIVS  
VIATOR HVIVS SI  
TIBI FVISSET VIRTVS  
COGNITA LACRIMU  
LIS RIGARES EYΩ DI  
AE CIPARAE



TO HIS PREFACE.

CLXXVI

L. DAPHNUS  
RYODAN FECIT SIBI  
ET CHRISOGONI  
PIISSIMO FRATRI  
ET SPVRIAE VERNAE  
DULCISSIMAE  
FOEMINAE.

---

DIS OMNIB. COL  
Q. GRISIDIO Q. F.  
SABINIANO FISTULA  
RIO CANTORI IMAGINA  
RIO AGRIMESTR  
VIX AN XLIII M. X.  
D. III.  
CUJUS INGENII NEMO  
C TIPHERNIUS  
C. F  
SACERDOS.

---

LICINIO  
PRISCO  
FL. AMYNTAE  
QUÆ EX FIDE  
EADEM MENS VITA  
ET TUMULVS FVIT.

---

M.

CLXXVIII THE PUBLISHER'S APPENDIX

M. ANTONII  
TRIB MILIT LEG  
II ADIUT TRIB  
PLÆ FIDEL XVIR  
STITIT JUD . . . .  
SIBI ET SUEIS.

---

DI S MANI  
QVISQVIS ES  
SALVUS SIS MA  
CEDO. SVM TIRIUS  
MACEDO DICITO  
MEIS ME MORTUUM  
ESSE.

---

DI S MANIB  
HIC SITA SVM VARIOS AVIUM  
PERFRINGERE CANTUS  
DOCTA AVIS E SICVLO PRÆ  
DA PETITA SINU  
NUPER HERVM STUDIIS  
FESSVM CVRISQ LEVABAM  
NUNC MANES BLANDIS  
MULCEO RAPTA SONIS.

---

TO HIS PREFACE.

CLXXIX

D . . . M.  
L. CATORIUS P. F.  
FAB. HIC SEPULTUS EST  
HIC LOCVS PATET  
INFRA P. XX:  
ET MEDIA A FOSINERO  
VERSVS XXV. . . .  
HUNC LOCVM MONIMEN  
TUMQVE DO LEGO.

---

L. CORNELIVS  
HERMES SIBI  
ET SUIS LIBER  
TIS LIBERTABVS  
QVE LORVM

---

M. AURELIUS  
AUG. LIB. SALVIUS  
ET POSTUMIA  
MARINA UXOR  
SIBI VIVO  
FECERE.

---

L. EORVM.

D M

M. MARCELLVS  
ET M ALEXIS  
UTERQ ALTER  
HOC SARCOPHAGO  
SITI SVNT.

---

PARVULUS HIC SITUS EST  
VIXIT TRES USQ PER ANNOS  
INQVE NOVEM MENSES INVALI  
DOSQVE DIES  
NOMINE GRVSOLOSVS  
AMABILIS UTQVE ERAT INFANS  
FLEBILIS ET MISERE RAPTUS  
AD INFERIAS  
  
SATVRNINUS  
FILIO VETIA  
LATEMA DELI  
CATO SVO P.

---

TO HIS PREFACE.

CLXXXI

D M

L. PISANDER L. F. AGRORVM PO  
TENS PARENTIBVS CLODIO ET MAJESTAE  
QUI INIMICORVM MANU ULLO PACTO PERIERE NON  
POTERANT CAPTO CONSILIO SVO ET LANIPPE  
MERETRICIS. VENENO VULVÆ LANIPPAE IMPOSITO  
IN CONCVBITUS PRIMORDIO PERIERVNT. NAM RA  
BIEM LIVOR DEVOVIT.

---

D M

A QVINTILIA  
NO DISPENSA  
TORI EGREGIO  
ARISTIDES QVINTI  
LIANO PATRONO  
SVO EX MERITO.

---

D. M.

MAVORTIO VICTORI S.

ET DIIS OMNIB.

OB P. R. DEVOTIONEM

SINGULIS ANNIS RENOVANDAM

IN PARTHICAM EXPEDITIONEM

SI QVIS HANC ARAM LÆSERIT  
NUMINA OMNIUM DIVORVM  
ET GENIUM P. R. IRATUM HABEAT

A CAVLIO SILVANO  
A CALVIUS RESTITUTUS  
FILIO PISSIMO  
VIX ANN X MENS VI  
DIS  
Manib.  
S.

---

DIIS  
MANIBVS  
M. POSTUM ET.  
HELIOD. VIVUS  
POSUIT SIBI ET  
TORANIAE SPEI  
CONIUGI SANCTIS  
SIMÆ

---

D. O. M.  
CALPURNIUS  
DEUM MATRI  
SACERDOS FAMILIÆ  
SUE POSTREMUS.

---

TO HIS PREFACE.

CLXXXIII

D. M.

L. CORNELIUS  
HERMES SIBI  
ET SUIS LIBERTIS  
LIBERTABVSQVE  
EORVM.

---

DIS MAN  
LOCVS L M CATTIORV  
SEX F. ET TERENCEIAE MF.  
SERAE ET TITIAE L. F.  
POSTHUMAE ET M. CATT.  
L. F.

IN FRONT. P. XXXV

IN AGR. P. XXXV.

---

D  M

P. JULIO

P. F. FESTO

P. JULIVS FESTUS

DAT DONUM LIBENS AGRVM

ET PVTEUM MACERIA CLVSVM

NEPOTI CARISS

EX TESTAMENTO

---

## THE PUBLISHER'S APPENDIX

De Sarcophago turpibus figuris ornato.

Turpia tot tumulo defixit crimina Balbus

Post Superos spurco Tartara more premens.

Pro facinus! finita nihil modo vita retraxit

Luxuriam ad manes mœcha sepulchra gerunt.

Romæ in columna.

LYMPHÆ MATRIS.

SI HUMANO INGENIO PERPËTUO

VIATORIBVS PARARI VINA POTUISSENT

NON AMOENUM QUEM CERNIS AQVARVM

FONTEM C. LEPIDUS

MAGNA IMPENSA

ADDUXISSET

POTA FELIX.

IMP. L. SEPTIMIUS SEVERVS

PERTINAX AUG PONT. MAX.

COS. VII. D. O. M. SALVTARI

ID. APR.

JUNONIQ REGINÆ

COLVMNAM

EREXIT



TO HIS PREFACE.

CLXXXV

HELPE DICTA FVI SICVLAE REGIONIS  
ALVMNA  
QUAM PROCUL A PATRIA CONJUGIS  
EGIT AMOR  
PORTICIBUS SACRIS JAM NUNC PEREGRI  
NA QUIESCO  
JUDICIS AETERNI TESTIFICATA  
THRNUM  
NE QVA MANUS BVSTVM VIOLET: NISI  
FORTE JUGALIS  
HÆC ITERVM CVPIAT JUNGERE MEMBRA SUIS  
LUX MEA NON CLAUSA EST TALI: NAM MORTE  
REVELER  
ET SOCIOS VITAE NECTET UTERQVE CINIS.

---

Dubiæ fidei.

Romæ prope templum D. Andrae.

TERTIAE AEMILIAE  
DIV. MAG. SCIPIONIS AFR.  
CONLIBERTÆ ET UXORIS GRATISS.  
QVÆ VIXIT ANN  
XLIII. M. II. D. XVII.

---

CLXXXVI THE PUBLISHER'S APPENDIX

Extra Portam Portuensem.

ASAPHAT IUDAEUS TARS  
ORIUNDUS OB GRANDEM NUMMUM  
E PATRIA PULSVS ROMAE QVIESCO.  
POSTEROS VETO NE QVIS SEPVLCHRVM  
INGREDIATUR QVOVSQVE RESVRGAM.

fidei suspectæ.

---

Dubiæ fidei.

PRIAPO INDULGENTISS  
CRESCENTIA  
BENEMERENTI

---

Viterbii.

COLLATINUS TARQVINIUS  
DULCISSIMÆ ET INCOMPARABILI CONIUGI  
LVCRETIAE  
PVDICITIÆ DECORI ET MULIERVM  
GLORIÆ QVÆ VIX ANN. XXII.  
M. V. D. XVI PROH DOLOR  
QVANTUM FVIT CARISSIMA.

adulterinum.

---

TO HIS PREFACE.

CLXXXVII

VALERIA - - - -  
HIC SITA - - - VIX  
AN. XIX VIRGINITAS - -  
FVIT GRAVIS: SIT NUNC  
EI TERRA LEVIS

& hoc fictitium.

---

DIS MAN  
TU QVICVNQVE  
TITVLVM NOSTRV  
RELEGES ROGO  
PER SVPEROS SI  
AD INFERNAS  
PARTES RECEPTA  
RIS NE VELIS  
TRIBVS SEPVLCHRIS  
MOLESTARI.

---

IACET HIC PICUS  
MIRANDULA

Cætera NOSCUNT ET TAGES  
ET GANGES FORSAN ET  
ANTIPODES

---

CLXXXVIII THE PUBLISHER'S APPENDIX

HADRIANUS. BEVERLANDUS.

HIC. SVM. UBI. TU. QVI.

HAEC. LEGIS. ESSE. NOLLES.

RIDES.

NON. RIDEBIS. CREDE. MIHI.

EADEM. DECRETA. SVBITURUS.

Sibi vivo.

P.

---

Num. XIV. Vide Præf. §. xiv.

*Robert of Brunne's account of the raising of Stonehenge, from the French of Master Wace, who followed Geffry of Monmouth.*

*Reparavit  
[Ambrosius] Lon-  
doniam.*

¶ Fro siþen [York] to London he [Aurelius Ambrosius]  
went,

þe toun he found paired & schent,

Kirkes, houses beten doun.

To þe kýng þei ment þam of þe toun,

þat many of þe best burgeis,

Were fled & ilk man zede his weis.

He bigged it eft þat are was playn,

Clerkes burgeis did com agayn,

& gaf ilkon agayn þer estre.

Siþen he turned to Wychestre,

Bigged kirkes & houses þere,

Als he had don els where.

*Vent ad  
Wyntu-  
niam.*

¶ Siþen

## TO HIS PREFACE.

CLXXXIX

¶ Sihen he gede to Salebiri,  
 & to þe abbey of Ambisbiri,  
 & to þat stede he toke his way,  
 þer Hengist did þe Bretons deie.  
 þare biriels he þouht to honoure  
 With som þing þat aȝ myȝht doure,  
 & frithe þat stede þer þei lay,  
 þat myht last tille domesday.  
 He did masons deuȝse & cast,  
 What werk mot langest last.  
 With þe kȝng a clerke was þore,  
 His name was Sir Tremore,  
 Was archblysshop of Kerliouu.  
 He did þe kȝng in reson,  
 “ If he wild mak a werk of fyne,  
 “ Send your sond to seke Merlȝne,  
 “ Mak þis werk maȝ no man,  
 “ Gif suilk conseile as he can.  
 “ He can gow telle what salle betide,  
 “ After him I rede your werk abide.  
 “ þe kȝng said it salle so be,  
 “ Mykille I desire Merlȝn to se.  
 “ Of his wisdom wild I here,  
 “ He sais selcouthes many manere.  
 At a welle fer in Wales,  
 Baynes it hight bi olde tales,  
 þe messenger þer Merlȝn fond,  
 Come speke with king he sent his sond.

*Locus ubi  
magnates  
fuerunt oc-  
cisi.*

*Consilium  
Tremorii  
episcopi.*

*Rex misit  
pro Merli-  
no.*

¶ Whan

*Responsio  
Merlini ad  
regem.*

¶ Whan he come be fore þe kýng,  
 Joye he made for his comýng,  
 & honourd him for he was wyse,  
 & cherisid ouer alle oþer of prise.  
 He praid him with fulle louand speche,  
 What suld be tide he wild him teche.  
 “ Sir kýng”, said Merlyn, “ certis naý,  
 “ To opýn mý mouthe I dar ne may.  
 “ Bot if it be a behouely þing at nede,  
 “ þat were warnýng or tokýn of dred.  
 “ & zit with grete lounes of hert,  
 “ þat pride tourn noght ouer theurt,  
 “ For if I spake þrow pryde or bost,  
 “ Or for scorn a gayn my gost :  
 “ þat ilk gost that in me wons,  
 “ þat alle me kennys, & alle me mons,  
 “ Owt of mý mouthe it wild him draw,  
 “ Off my conyng reue me my saw,  
 “ þat no more myght I speke with mouthe,  
 “ þan a noþer þat noght ne couthe.  
 “ þerfor of suilk priuete  
 “ þink not þer on, lat it be.  
 “ þink on þat whi þou me souhtes,  
 “ Bring þat tille end whi þou me brouhtes,  
 “ If þou wille mak a werk stedfast,  
 “ þat faire wille euermore to last,  
 “ Send for þe stonnes þer þei stand,  
 “ þat þe Geantz brouht tille Ireland.  
 “ Rounde

## TO HIS PREFACE.

CXCI

“ Rounde about ere þei set,  
 “ Out of Aufrik were þei fet.  
 “ Ilkon on oþer is set vpright,  
 “ No man in erth has now þat myght,  
 “ For to tak down o stone,  
 “ Ne set þam eft es þer none.  
 þan said þe kýng, & on him louh,  
 “ It were þan grete ferly how,  
 “ þat þo stones þat þou of sais,  
 “ Ere so heuy and of suilk pais,  
 “ þat non has force ne fosoun,  
 “ To remoue þam vp ne down,  
 “ & ere so fer ouer þe see ;  
 “ Who myght þam þan bring to me ?  
 \*\*\*\*\* an said Merlýn to þe kýng;  
 \* þ \*  
 \* \* “ Quayntise ouercomes alle þing.  
 \*\*\*\*\*  
 “ Strength is gode vnto trauaile,  
 “ þer no strength may sleght wille vaile.  
 “ Sleght & conýng dos maný a char,  
 “ Begynnes þing þat strength ne dar,  
 “ With sleght may þou þe stones wynne,  
 “ & in Bretayn set þam in,  
 “ þer þou ne sallę with strength  
 “ Remoue þam a stone length.  
 “ In Aufrik were þei compást & wrouht,  
 “ Geantz tille Ireland fro þiþen þam brouht,  
 “ & set þam one a hille fulle hii  
 “ With engýns fulle quayntly.

*Prudencia  
superat om-  
ne robur.*

“ Fi...

*Ecce de  
Ston-  
henges, &  
virtute eo-  
rum.*

“ First whan þei were compast newe,  
 “ þei did grete gode to þo þam knewe.  
 “ þo þat were seke & lauh t scathes,  
 “ Wesch þe stoness did it in bathes.  
 “ þat felt þam greued of grete þinges,  
 “ Bathed þam of þe self wasshýnges,  
 “ & heled wele of þer pýne,  
 “ Had þei non oþer medicýne,  
 ¶ Whan þe kýng herd of þer vertu,  
 þat þei mot falle þe folk to pru,  
 He had longýng for þam to go.  
 & of þat wille were oþer mo,  
 þe stoness to Bretaýn forto bring,  
 þat Merlýn mad of sermonýng.  
 þei ches Uter þe kýnge's broþer,  
 þe kýng offred him self þe toþer.  
 Of folk þei led fíften þousand;  
 Agaýn þe Iris forto stand.  
 With þam went danz Merlýn,  
 For þe stoness to mak engýn.  
 ¶ Whan Uter with his folk was gære,  
 þei went to schip ouer þe se to fare,  
 & arýued vp bi þat coste,  
 þe Iris kýng gadred his oste.  
 Agaýn þe Bretons þei <sup>1</sup> tom zerne,  
 þe lond if þei mýght þam werne.  
 þis Irisch kýng þat regned þare,  
 His name was sir Guíllomare.



TO HIS PREFACE.

CXCIII

Whan he wist whi þei kam,  
 So fer viage for þe stones nam,  
 Ouer þe see tille an oþer lond,  
 For þei ne stones hender fond,  
 & said þo stones þei salle haf here,  
 þei salle bie þam first fulle dere.  
 If we may salle not spede,  
 þo stones out of our lond to lede.  
 He scorned & said, it salle be nouht,  
 þei salle faile þat þei haf souht.  
 So long he manaced & þrette,  
 At þe last togider þei mette.  
 At þer metýng was no lite,  
 þat þei gon togidere smýte.  
 Fulle wele sauht boþe parties,  
 Bot þe Bretons wan þe pris.  
 þe Iris couth not so wele seiht,  
 Ne of armore had þei no sleiht,  
 Ne were þer of so wele bone,  
 þerfor the Iris fled fulle sone.  
 Fro stede to stede þei fled to skulk,  
 One hij hilles to hide & hulk.  
 Whan þe Bretons had don þat chace,  
 & rested þam a long space,  
 Merlým had þam alle at ones  
 To þe hille to se þe stones.  
 Killomare hight þat hille,  
 þore þe geantz brouht þam tille.

*Qualiter  
 Britones  
 per Merli-  
 num aspor-  
 tauerunt  
 lapides de  
 Ibernia ad  
 Britanniam.*

¶ þis

¶ þis Bretons-renged about þe feld,  
 þe karole of the stones beheld,  
 Many tyme zede þam about,  
 Biheld within biheld without.  
 Alle þei said so said þe kýng,  
 þei sauh neuer so selcouth þing,  
 How þei were raised þi had wondere,  
 & how þei suld be brouht o sondere.  
 With þat worde þei þam rescued,  
 þei ne wist how þei suld remued.  
 Merlým said, "Now makes assaý,  
 " To putte þis stones douu if ze may.  
 " & with force fond þam to bere,  
 " þer force is mykille þe lesse wille dere.  
 þe oste at ons to þe hille went,  
 & ilk man toke þat he mot hent,  
 Ropes to drawe, trees to put,  
 þei schoued, þei þrist, þei stode o strut,  
 One ilka side behýnd beforu,  
 & alle for nouht þer trauaile lorn.  
 Whan alle þe had put & þrist,  
 & ilk man don þat him list,  
 & left þer puttýng manyon,  
 zit stired þei not þe lest ston.  
 Merlým wist it suld not vaile  
 Strength of body ne trauaile.  
 He bad þam alle draw þam o dreih,  
 þorgh strength ne com ze þam neigh

## TO HIS PREFACE.

CXCV.

A litille he stode, siþen him bi went,  
He spak, bot non wist what he ment.  
þei sauh his lippes stir vp & doun,  
Bot non herd his quirisoun.

Whan he had gon alle aboute  
Within þe karole & withoute,  
& said his quirisons,  
Agayn he cald þe Bretons,  
& said, “ Now may ze lightly bere  
“ þise stones to schip, withouten dere.  
“ Go now alle & spedis zow,  
“ For ze salle welde þam wele inouh.  
Als Merlȳn þam tauht & said,  
Into schippes þam lightly laid.

þan had þei won þei fer had souht;  
To þe playn of Salesbiri þam brouht,  
Of Amnesbiri beside þe abbaý,  
& was at þe Whitsonendaý,  
þe kȳng did mak somons  
Of bisshopes, erles & barons,  
& oþer folk of noble geste,  
& did him croune at þat feste.  
þre daies sat þe feste of fode,  
One þe ferth daý gaf he giftes gode,  
Kroces to clerkes of pris,  
To Saynt Sampson & Saynt Dubris.  
Seýnt Dubris he gaf Kerlion,  
zork he gaf to Saynt Sampson.

þis gaf he at his croument,  
 & many mo bi comon assent.  
 Bi for þe lordes, þat com þider,  
 Merlyn set þe stones togider.  
 Als þei were ore in þat certaÿn,  
 Stand þei now vpon þe playn.  
 Within þe compas of þe stones  
 Er biried alle þe lordes bones,  
 þat Hengist at þe parlement slouh,  
 Here beforn ze herd wele how.

---

Num. XV. Vide Præf. §. xvii.

*In Account of St. Wenefride, from an old MS. of  
 the Book call'd Festival or Festial, in the hands  
 of Thomas Ward, of Longbridge near Warwick,  
 Esq;.*

*De Sancta Wenefreda virgine.*

**G**OOD men & women, suche a day ze schalle haue sent Wenefredus day, þe whiche day is nott ordeynyd by holy churche to be halowed, but þerre as men han deuocyon to þis holy madon. Wherefore ye þat han deuocion to þis holy seant, cummythe þat day to churche to worschip God, & þis holy maydon & martir. þen how sche suffered martir-dome ze schalle here. For þowz sum knowen hit, zet sum knowon hit nott, & also þowz a goode tale be twyus tolde, hit is but þe better for to lorne and to vndurstonde. þerre was in her tyme an holy armet was called Bennowe, þe whiche com to a goode monnus hose, þat was called Thownythe, and was sent Wenefredus fadur, & was a ryche mon of londus & rentus, & prayd Thewnythe to zyff hym a place of erþe, vpon the whiche he mygthe bylde a churche,

## TO HIS PREFACE.

CXCVII

churche, to serue God in, and to preche Goddus worde to þe pepulle. þen was þis Thewnythe glad of his askyng, & ordeynyd hym a place nyz to his owne howse, þat he myzte so cum to Goddus seruice. þus þe meyne tyme while the churche was in byldyng, ofte he preched Goddus worde to þe pepulle, and Wenefrede com þydur with her fader to here hit. And when sche harde hym speke of þe grete mede & joy, þat madones schuld haue in Heynon, passyng oþer oorderes, þen had sche so grett deuocyon in his sayinge, þat a non sche made a woye, þat sche wolde neuer haue parte of mon, but a byde euer in her madon hode, while þat sche lyffed. þen on a Sonday, when þis churche was made and bylde, Thewnythe, with alle his mene, gude to þe churche, but Wenefrede bode at home, for a seknuus þat greuyd her þoo, þat sche myzte nott goo with hem to churche. þen as sche sott at home her selfe, þer com a kyngus sonne, was called Cradoke, to haue layen by þis madon. But when he spake to hur of doying of þe synne, sche said, sche wolde go in to hur chambur, & make her more honeste þen sche was, & cum a gayne to hym a non. and when sche cum to her chawmbur by an vtter durre, sche ran towarde churche as faste as sche myzte, hopyng to haue socur þerre. but when Cradok syz hur ren towarde churche, he ron astur, and ouer toke her, & sayde, but sche wolde assent to his wyll, he wolde a non smyte of hur hed. þen kneled Wenefrede downe & saide, “ I haue leuer þat þou do me to dethe, þen defowle my body, þat I haue made a woo to kepe in maydon hede; while þat I lyue, to my lorde Jhesu Criste.” þen Cradok owte with his swerde, and at on stroke he smotte of her hed, & for hit was downe the hylle to þe churche, þe hed stynte neuer tumbullyng, tulle hit com þydur in to þe syzte of alle þat were þerre. Wherfore men weren so a fryzte, þat þey madon suche a nowse, þat Bennowe had grett merwayle what hit myzte be, & com to hem to wytte what was þe cause of þat noyse. þen when he syz the hed, he toke hit vppe, and cussed hit ofte tymes sore wepyng, and bare hit vp to the body, byholldyng on Cradoke how he wyped his swerd on þe gras, þat was alle bloody of the stroke. þen said Bennow to hym, “ þou wykked mon & an sely, aske  
o 2 “mercy

“mercy of God for his orribulle dede, and zett God wulle  
 “haue mercy on þe; & yf þow wylt nott, I pray God þat  
 “he send vegance on þe”. & a non ryzte in syzte of þis  
 alle pepulle, and for he wolde not crye mercy in syzte of  
 alle pepulle, a non he felle downe to þe erþe, & þer with  
 the erþe oponyd & snowlowyd hym down, body and sowle  
 in to Helle. þen toke Bennow þe hed, and sett hit agayne  
 to þe body, & helled hit with her mantelle, & zude to his  
 masse, and when he had songon and preched þe pepulle, &  
 tolde myche of þis madon, he sayde, God wold nott that sche  
 schulde so be ded, zett. For he had ordeynyd myche pe-  
 pulle to be holpon by hur. Wherfore he bad yche mon pray  
 to God, to reyse hur a zayne to lyue, and so God dyd; &  
 when þey commyn to hur, sche satt vppe, and with her  
 honde sche wyped of her face þe doste þat was þer on, &  
 spake to hem as holle and sounde as sche was by fore. þen  
 God schewnid þerre þree grett myraculis. On was when  
 þe erþe swoloyd hym bodily, þat had slayne hur. A no-  
 þer was, for þer as þe hed a bod, a non spronge a fayre  
 welle þerre as non seen be fore. þe þride was, when sche þat  
 was slayne sche rose a zayne to lyue. þe IIII<sup>th</sup> was, þat euer  
 astur while sche lyffed, þer was a white circle a bowte her  
 nekke þer as þe stroke was lyke a white þrede. Wherfore  
 þer as sche was called be fore Brewa, fro þat day fowthe  
 men called hur Wenefrede, þat is in Englysche, a white  
 þrede. þen syz Wenefrede þe grett myraculle þat God  
 wrowzte in hur, and toke hit hyzly to herte, and gaff hur  
 euer astur to holy lyffynge, and nyzte and day was besy to  
 serue God, as Bennow thawzte hur. þen when sche was  
 perfytt in alle doynsus, Bennow zude to a noþer place þer  
 as weron inne mony holy virgynnus, and when he com þy-  
 dur schee lyffyd so perfyttly in alle þyngus, þat alle tokon en-  
 sampulle of hur, & for þat ylke white cerue was an euydent  
 token of her martirdome, þerfore alle men and <sup>1</sup> womon  
 haddon grett deuocion in her wordus, and in alle her do-  
 yngus, so þat mony laston þe worldis ocupacion, and weron  
 fayne to comme and dwelle in her companye. So when  
 sche had lyffyd þerre mony eyrus, sche was warned by God,

<sup>1</sup> Sic.

þat her dethe day was nyzte. Wherefore sche made hur ready, & when sche had þe sacramentis of holy church, þen, in syzte of halle her systeren, scho gaff vpp þe goste to Jhesu Criste, þat sche louyd with alle her herte, and byrried in the church zorde þer mony oþer seyntis weron byrried in by fore. Now how the holy sent com in to þe abbey of Schrowysbury, ze schalle here. When þey abbey of Scrowysbury was newe made, þe monkus of þe place madon ofte gret mone, for þey haddon no sent with hem to be her patrone, and beyrer of her prayers to God, as oþer abbeus of þe cuntrye hoddon. Wherefor þe abbot of þat howse, for he had herde by fore of sent Wenefrede, he made his prior to go in to Waylys, and seche were þat sche was byrried. So wente þis prior forthe, and, by the grace of God and reuelacion of þe holy madon, he com to þe place where sche laye, and so with strenþe of lordschip, and oþer helpe þat he hadde, he browgte her bownus in to sent Gylus church at Scrowesbury townus ende, and þerre abode to a certen day, in þe whiche sche schulde be translated, & with honour and worschip be browgte in to þe abbey. þen when þis day com, gret multitude of pepulle com hyder in party for a gret miraculle, þat was done in that church, of a chelde þat was heyled of grett sekenes, and also to do worschip to þat holy madon, and so þen the abbot of þe place and þe convent, with mony oþer men of holy church, browgtan hur in to þe abbey, and setton her þere as sche is now, where God in schorte tyme astur wrowgte þrytty grett myraculs þat byn wrytton, with owte oþer mony þat byn not wrytton, bothe of þose þat sche dyd in her lyue, and oþer mo mony þat byn wrowgte at her walle. þen to sterre yowre deuocyon þe more to þis sent, now I wulle telle yow a myraculle þat was done to a mon of Erkalle towne, þat was called Adam. þis mon was greuesly payned with þe fallyng euelle, and bothe his hondus weron turned ageynward, and layen flatt to his armes, so þat þe armys weron stompus and noe armes. He had also suche a greuance in his ou legge, þat he myzte nott goo but with myche peynance. So þis Adam, with þese grett greuus, with myche penance he com to þe schryne of sent Wenefrede, & was þerre in his prayers alle a nyzte. But an þe morowe, what for wach-

ched, what for avery, he felle on slepe, and when he woked he feld hym selfe hoole in alle his lymmys, & syz his hondus streygte euon owte, and stirryd his syngurs alle at his lykynge, and sayed whedur he mygzte goo, and gude forthe wythe owton greue, and felde welle þat he was hoole of þe fallyng euelle. Wherfore with hyz voyce he þonked God & þis holy madon, and was fayne of his heyle, þat he made a woo, þat he wolde neuer goo from hur, but by a seruand in þat churche alle his lyue astur, and so he was. þus, gode men & women, ze han ensampulle to do worschip to þis holy maydou and martir, and þawz ze by now hooly in body fulle helt, mony of yow byn seke in sowle; wherfore ye han þe more nede to seche hur to haue heyle in sowle þen in body. For ofte tymes God sendus sekenes in body fo hele to þe sowle. but sekenes of sowle ys heredeth, but sche be þe soner heylyd. Wherfore pray to too hur to gete yow hele bothe in body and in sowle, so þat ye cum to hym þat is heyle to alle sowlus, þat is, Jhesu Criste God son of heyuon. *Aliud miraculum.* In the towne of Schrowysbury setau III<sup>e</sup> men to gedur, and as þey seton talkyng, an aturcoppe cum owte of þe wowz, and bote hem by the nekus alle þre, & þowz hit greuyd hem at þat tyme but lytulle, sone astur it roncoled & so swalle her protus, & forset her breythe, þat II. of hem weron deed, and þe þrydde was so nyz deed, þat he made his testament, & made hym redy in alle wyse, for he hoped nowzte but only dethe. þen as he lay in his turment, he þowgt on sent Wenefrede and of her myraculus, & so as he mygte he had his modur go þyder, & offur a canduile to þe schryne, & brynge hym of þe water þat her bones were wasschon yn, and so sche dyd. & when he had þis water, he made whasseche his sore þer with, & when he had done so, he felde þat he amended; & þen he made a wooe to sente Wenefrede, þat giff he mygte haue lyffe & hele, he wolde make an ymage of syluer & offur to her. þus he mended yche day astur oþer, tyll he was alle hoole, & þen he made an ymage of syluer as he be hette, & gude þyder, & offeryd hit to þe schryne, & be cum her seruand euer whille he lyffyd astur. *Aliud miraculum.* Also to a day of her translacion þer cum owte of Wayles knyghtus, & mony men with hem, to se the solempnite & þe maner þer of, &



## TO HIS PREFACE.

CCI

& so in her company com̄ a gret mon, þat was downbe, & myzte no þynge speke, but alle by signes. So when þey common in to þe church, sodenly þis downbe mon felle doune to þe grownde, & felle on slepe. þen as he lay sent Wenefrede com to hym, and bad hym drynke watur þat her bonus were wasschon yn, & he schuld be hoole of his speche, & of oþer euel þat he had. þen a non he woke, and bad giff hym holy watur. þen haddon his felowus gret wondur, þat þey hardon hym speke, & asked hym what watur he wolde haue. þen sayd he, þe watur þat sent Wenefredus bonus weron waschon yn; & when he had dronkon of þat water, he was hoole as any fysche, & a non he zude in to þe quere, & by þe couent he tolde oponly þat he com̄ þyður for no oþer þyng, but only to se þe doying of þe solemnite. but now for sche hathe, of her gret curtesy, zessen me my speche, and heled me in my body also, þerfore I wulle be her pylgryme while þat I lyue, & so he was euer aftur.

---

Num. XVI. Vide Præf. §. XIX.

*Extract of a Letter, written to the Publisher from Winchester July 4th: 1724. by the Reverend Mr. Richard Furney, relating to the Election of an Abbess of Rumsey Nunnery in Hampshire Anno D. 1333. which confirms what is asserted in this Chronicle, that the said Nunnery was founded by K. Edgar for an hundred Nunns.*

Dear Sir,

Upon receiving your's, I look'd into the Register of John Stratford, some time Bishop of Winton, afterwards Archbishop of Canterbury, and therein, fol. 82. found the following particulars, which relate to what you mention-

## THE PUBLISHER'S APPENDIX

ed, viz. That Sibil Carbonel the Abbess dying on June 1. 1333. Joane Icche was elected June 25. following, there being at the time of the Election Agnes de Stanlegh Priorissa, Johanna Gervays Sub-Priorissa, Alicia de Roppeligh Sacrista, Johanna Icche Celerariar. (the same that was elected Abbess,) Oliva Beaufou Præcentrix, Agnes de Bromore, Cecilia de Blontesdone, Ela Croupes, Elena Baa, Alicia de Roucestr, Agatha de Wynton, Katerina de Grymstede, Beatrix Beaufou, Amicia Bluet, Marg. per me, Agnes Beaufou, Alicia de Waltham, Sarra Okly, Alicia Brembelsshete, Margar. de Tydeleshide, Lucia Gower, Matild de Grimstede, Margir. Deneys, Margar. Poyntz, Amicia Malure, Johanna de Farnlington, Amicia de Forstebury, Johanna de Compton, Alicia Levynton, Katerina Joevene, Johanna Poyntz, Johanna Beaufou, Agatha Bekks, Johanna Payn, Beatrix Neyvill, Isabel de Hameldone, Marger. filia Warini, Amicia de Wynhale, Eugenia Chartes, Marg. Cracy, Margar. Warblynton, Alicia de Groveneye, Katerina de Aysshelonde, Margar de Buctesthorn, Isolda Roches, Matild. Trenchard, Agnes de Wynton, Johanna de Roppelye, Agnes Waram, Hawysia Luffegrave, Dionisia Golaffre, Alic. de Wynton, Isabella de Staunford, Maria de Roppelye, Alicia de Thuddene, Marg. Forest, Elizabeth

zabeth Syfrewast, Johanna de Sparkeford,  
 Marg. Pauncefot, Marg. Atte Rye, Johanna  
 Boyton, Johanna Purie, Isabella Fraunceys, Ju-  
 liana de Romeseye, Cristna Okham, Eva Doi-  
 gnel, Matild de Roppelye, Eliz. Silvayn, Cri-  
 stina Brikevill, Muriele Cotel, Katerina de  
 Dopton, Margar. de Weston, Elianora Rude,  
 Cristina Bromham, Katerina Warham, Johan-  
 na de Totteford, Johanna Carbonel, Alicia  
 Carbonel, Joanna de Enedford, Editha Ey-  
 mer, Alic. de Aune, Constancia Wauncy; Jo-  
 hanna de Tystede, Johanna de Winterbourne,  
 Katerina Warham, Alic. de Cicestr. Petronilla  
 de Wendlesworth, Margar. Fokeram, Isabell  
 Walraund, sorores: Mag. Ricardus de Chadd  
 Canonicus & Præbendar. Eccles. Cenventual.  
 Mag. Robertus de Stratford Canonicus & Præ-  
 bendar. Eccles. Conyventual. de Romsey per  
 Procurator. elegunt Abbatissam. \* \* \*

\* \* \* \* \*  
 \* \* \* \* \*  
 \* \* \* \* \*  
 \* \* \* \* \*

Num. XVII. Vide Præf. §. XIX.

*Extract of another Letter, written to the Publisher  
 from Winchester Aug. 15. 1724. by the said Mr.  
 Fur-*

THE PUBLISHER'S APPENDIX

*Furney, relating to the Number of the Nuns at Rumsey some time before the Dissolution, and to a Note, about our old Historians, in a MS. of Trivet at Winchester.*

\*   \*   \*   \*   \*   \*   \*   \*   \*

\*   \*   \*   \*   \*   \*   \*   \*

\*   \*   \*   \*   \*   \*   \*   \*

Concerning Rumsey I learn, that the number of the Nuns was very much decreased before the dissolution. For Elizabeth Ryprose being elected Abbess 16 Dec. 1523. but 23 Nuns are mentioned. The same Eliz. Ryprose was Abbess in 1534. when the true yearly value of the Nunnery is said to be 395l. 12s. 1d.

The following particulars, tho' they tell no more than what you know already, yet as they are taken out of a valuable MS. of Nich. Trivet's Chronicle, wrote on paper, now remaining in the library of the Dean and Chapter of Winchester, I thought, you would give them the reading.

“ Historiam de origine & gestis Britonum  
 “ primus ex Gwallico sermone in Latinum tra-  
 “ duxit Galfridus Monothmotensis, desinens in  
 “ Athelstanum.  
 “ Res Gwallicas exceptit ab eo Galfrido Mo-  
 “ nomethensi Karadocus Lancarvensis.

“ An-

TO HIS PREFACE.

CCV

“ Anglorum res gestas ab eorum primo ad-  
“ ventu in Britanniam Beda scripsit ad sua  
“ usq; tempora.

“ Willielmus Malmisburiensis Bedam exci-  
“ piens & succincte colligens usq; ad regem  
“ Egbritum, qui, varia sorte profligatis regu-  
“ lis, insulæ pæne totius nactus est monarchi-  
“ am. Inde pleno cursu tempora lucide des-  
“ cribit usq; ad finem Henrici primi.

“ Nicolaus Trivettus, Malmisburiensem ex-  
“ cipiens, incipit à Stephano, & desinit in mor-  
“ tem Edwardi primi.

“ Ab hoc qui filum Historiæ recto tramite  
“ deinceps deducèrent, non sunt reperti, sed  
“ pleriq; suo quisq; studio particularia dele-  
“ git sibi persequenda, principium finemq; pro  
“ arbitrio statuens.

“ Edmerus sobria sermonis festivitàte à Re-  
“ ge Edgardo usq; ad Willielmum primum rap-  
“ tim tempora perstrinxit, & inde licentius  
“ evagatus usq; ad obitum Radulphi Archie-  
“ piscopi diffusam & necessariam historiam stu-  
“ diosus exhibuit.

“ Ita prætermisissis à tempore Bedæ ducentis  
“ & viginti tribus annis, temporum cursus clau-  
“ dicavit.

“ Henricus Hontendonensis archidiaconus.

“ Galterus Oxnefordensis.

“ Alfridus Beverlacensis thesaurarius.

“ Wil-

“ Willielmus Rivalensis.

“ Giraldus Cambrensis Res Hiberniæ.

“ Joannes Sarisburiensis.

“ Florentius Wigornensis Monachus.

“ Thomas Walsyngham ab irruptione Nor-  
mannorum usq; ad principium regni Henrici  
6<sup>ti</sup>. cui opus dedicavit.

“ Secuti sunt qui omnium ante se scribentium  
“ particulas in unum corpus conflarent, ut sunt  
“ hi :

“ Ranulphus Cestrensis scripsit varii generis  
“ variarumq; gentium historiam, orsus à mun-  
“ di origine, eam texens usq; ad Henricum  
“ quartum, quam *Polichronica* voluit appellari.

No other particulars are mentioned in this  
note, which seems to have been written at the  
same time, that the Index to the MS. was,  
much later than the MS. which seems to have  
been written about the time of the Authour.

\* \* \* \* \*  
\* \* \* \* \*

Num. XVIII. Vid Præf. §. xx.

*A Copy of Dr. Richardson's and Mr. Thoresby's Let-  
ters about the Hospital of St. Mary Magdalen near  
Bawtre.*

For Mr. Thomas Hearne in Edmund-Hall  
Oxford.

Dea

TO HIS PREFACE.

CCVII

Dear Sir,

I received your second letter, which I communicated to a neighbouring gentleman, who immediatly wrote to a friend at Bawtree, to make inquiry after St. Mary's Hospitall. I received an answer, but no satisfactory one. I alsoe at the same time wrote to Mr. Thoresby. He sent me word, that he hoped shortly to give me some satisfaction about it, through the mediation of a new Curate, that was come to Leedes and born at Bawtree. The inclosed I received yesterday, which I beleive wil, in a great measure, answer what you desire. I can not get the least information about the Earth-Horns. If in this or any other respect I can be serviceable to you, freely command

Your friend and servant

Ric: Richardson.

North Bierley  
Feb. 8th. 1724.

For Dr. Richardson at North Bierley near  
Bradford

These.

Honoured Sir,

Just now I receiv'd this Account from the Vicar. concerning the Hosp. of St. Ma. Mag. near Bautre. That the Chappel, Hospital and  
Alms

Alms House are all in good repair, that the annual pensions are 12l. 6 s. 8 d. The present Master of the Hospital is Mr. Benjamin Day, Vicar of Mattersey, who succeeded Dr. Samuel Crowbrow Arch-Deacon of Nottingham; whose Predecessor was John Lake, D.D. Vicar of Leedes, and afterwards Bishop of Chichester. This Reverend Prelat's Predecessor was one Walter Barnard, who enjoy'd it during the Usurpation of O. Cromwell, and preach'd a Lecture on the first Thursday in the Month, in stead of the Morning Prayers on Wednesdays and Fridays, which had before, and have since been duely used. His Predecessor was John Slack, mentioned in the Letter of Mr. Hearne, to whom pray present my service, I not being able to write to him my self, who am his and

Your humble servant

Ralph Thoresby.

Leedes Feb. 2

1724.

Num. XIX. See the Glossary to this Work,  
voc. *bone*.

Ex MS. Dugd.) in Muséo Ashmoliano) E 2.  
sub finem.

*A Transcript of a certain Narrative, written by the  
late Bp. of Ely (Dr. Matthew Wren) with his own-  
Hand,*



## TO HIS PREFACE.

CCIX

*Hand, of that remarkable Conference, which, after his Return from Spain with Prince Charles (Anno 1623.) he had with Dr. Neale, then Bp. of Durham, Dr. Andrews Bp. of Winchester, and Dr. Laud Bp. of St. David's, touching the said Prince: wheremat something Prophetical was then said by that Reverend Bp. of Winchester.*

After our Return from Spain, My Lord of Winchester (among other great expressions of his Respects to me) made me promise to him, that, upon all occasions of my coming to London, (for I abode still at Cambridge) I would lodge with him. To which end, he caused three Rooms near the Garden to be fitted and reserved for me: And twice or thrice I had lodged there.

And at another time coming suddenly to London and late, I lodged at my Sister's in Friday-Street, and the next Day (being Friday) I went to Winchester-House to Dinner, and craved his Lordship's pardon, that I lodged not there; because that my businesse was to treat with some Countrey Gentlemen, who lay in Holburne, whom I should not meet with but in the Evening and Morning, when it would not be safe for me to pass the Bridge or the Thames: And so after Dinner I took my Leave of him, hoping to return for Cambridge on Munday.

But

But on Saturday going to do my Duty to My Lords of Durham and St. Davids, and telling them of my sudden Return, they would needs over-rule me, and made me promise them, tho' I had taken leave of My Lord of Winchester, yet to meet them next Day at White-Hall at My Lord's Chamber at Dinner: I did so, and there we sat after Dinner above an Hour. And then I shewing them, that on the morrow my Business would be dispatched, and I would be gone on Tuesday, I took leave again of them all. But on Munday morne by break of the Day (before they used to be Stirring in Friday-Street) there was a great knocking at the Door where I lay; And at last an Apprentice (who lay in the Shop) came up to my Bed-Side, and told me, there was a Messenger from Winchester-House to speak with me: The Businesse was to let me know, that My Lord, when he came from Court last Night, had given his Steward charge to order it so, that I might be spoken with, and be required as from him without faile, to dine with him on Munday; but to be at Winchester-House by Ten of the Clock; which I wondered the more at; his Lp. not using to come from his Study till near Twelve. My business would hardly permit this; yet because of his Lordship's importunity, I got up presently, and into Holburne

burne I went, and there made such Dispatch, that soon after Ten of the Clock I took a Boat, and went to Winchester House, where I found the Steward at the Water-gate waiting to let me in the nearest way, who telling me, that my Lord had called twice to know if I were come; I asked where his Lordship was? He answered, In his great Gallery, (a place where I knew his Lp. scarce came once in a Year.) And thither, I going, the Door was lockt: but upon my lifting the Latch, My Lord of St. David's opened the Door, and letting me in, lock'd it again.

There I found none, but those three Lords, who causing me to sit down by them; My Lord of Durham began to me. "Doctor, Your Lord here will have it so, I that am the unfittest Person, must be the Speaker: But thus it is: After you left us Yesterday at White-Hall, we entring into farther Discourse of those things, which we foresee and conceive will ere long come to pass, resolved again to speak to you before you went hence.

"We must know of you, what your Thoughts are concerning your Master the Prince. You have now been his Servant above two Years, and you were with him in Spain; We know he respects you well; and we know you are no Fool, but can observe how things are like to go. What things my Lord?" (quoth I.)

“ In brief,” said he, “ how the Prince’s Heart  
 “ stands to the Church of England, that when  
 “ God brings him to the Crowne, we may know  
 “ what to hope for.

My Reply was to this effect; That however  
 I was the most unfit of any to give my Opinion  
 herein, attending but Two Months in the Year,  
 and then at a great Distance, only in the Clo-  
 set, and at Meals; yet seeing they so pressed  
 me, I would speak my Mind freely: So I said,  
 “ I know My Master’s Learning is not equal to  
 “ his Father’s; Yet I know his Judgment to  
 “ be very right: And as for his Affections in  
 “ these particulars, which Your Lordships have  
 “ pointed at, for upholding the Doctrine and  
 “ Discipline, and the right Estate of the Church,  
 “ I have more confidence of him, than of his  
 “ Father, in whom they say (better than I can)  
 “ is so much inconstancy in some particular  
 “ cases.

Hereupon My Lords of Durham and St. Da-  
 vid’s began to argue it with me, and required  
 me to let them know, upon what ground I came  
 to think thus of the Prince: I gave them my  
 reasons at large, and after many replyings  
 (above an Hour together) then My Lord of  
 Winchester (who had said nothing all the while)  
 bespake me in these Words;

“ Well

“ Well Doctor, God send you may be a  
 “ true Prophet concerning your Master’s Inclinations in these particulars, which we are  
 “ glad to hear from you: I am sure I shall be  
 “ a true Prophet; I shall be in my Grave and  
 “ so shall you, My Lord of Durham, but My  
 “ Lord of St. David’s, and you, Doctor, will  
 “ live to see that Day that your Master will be  
 “ put to it, upon his Head and his Crown, without he will forsake the Support of the Church.

Of this Prediction made by that Holy Father, I have now no Witness, but mine own Conscience, and the Eternal God, who knows I lie not; no body else being present when this was spoken, but those three Lords.

Num. XX. See the Glossary to this Work, voc. *Kampedene*.

*Extract of a Letter to the Publisher from Mr. Graves of Mickleton in Gloucestershire, concerning Campden in that County. With a remarkable Passage upon that occasion, out of an old anonymous MS. Author (stiled John Bever by Dr. Powell) in Trinity College Library Oxon.*

\* \* \* \* \*  
 \* \* \* \* \*  
 \* \* \* \* \*

As to the Etymology and Scituation of Campden, as you relate it from Dr. Skinner's *Etymologicon*; I very readily agree with him, but never saw the Book; and consulting with Ant. à Wood, and finding a good Character of the Author, I think to get it.

I have formerly observ'd, that John Bever, or Castorius, call's it *Campodunum*; which Termination made me believe it to be a Roman Town; for we meet in Antoninus's Itinerary with those of *Cambodunum*, *Margidunum*, *Camulodunum*, *Muridunum*, *Sorviodunum*, and *Mari-dunum*; in all which Dr. Gale make's the Termination, *dunum*, to answer to, *collis*, in the Latine; and so likewise the Scituation of those Towns he observe's to be on Hills; and indeed our Campden is ever reckon'd among the Towns on the Cotswold Hills, but at the same time is scituated in a deep Valley, or Den, on those Hills.

For, as you come to it on the North side, on the Road from Warwick, and Stratford, through Mickleton; you goe up hill almost all the way for the 2. last Miles, that is, from Mickleton; and yet you see little or nothing of the Town, but the Church, and some Remains of the Great House, till you come within a Land's length of the Town; and then you fall down, as it were, unexpectedly into it: But,

## TO HIS PREFACE.

CCXV

as you approach it on the South side, on the Road from London and Oxford, you come down a Hill for above a Mile to it, and have a full view of the whole Town, which lye's in length East and West, all along the Bottom; but in breadth North and South, on a declining Bank; and the Church, and these Remains of the Great House, stand on a rising ground above the rest.

<sup>co</sup> Lying in this Valley it is encompassed on 3 sides, that is, North, West, and South, by the Cotswold Hills; but lye's open on the East side to the Morning Sun, which make's the Scituation both pleasant and healthfull; and overlook's a pleasant Vale, lying considerably below it; which run's through some Parts of Worcestershire, Warwickshire, and Oxfordshire, to the Borders of Northamptonshire.

Dr. Powel, in his Notes on the History of Wales, pag. 11, 12. ha's translated the whole Passage out of Bever, and it seem's by his Account, that the Place was then (above a Thousand years agoe) of considerable Note, and large Extent; for, upon a threatenng Message from the Britains, the great King Ina of the West Saxons summoned all the other Saxon Kings to repair thither; where old King Sibert of the East Saxons making a Speech to them, and, among other things, recommending to

them the choosing a Head to lead them, they made Choice of King Ina; who received Homage of them there, and advancing his Standard, marched forward against the Britains.

Probably it might be then the chief Residence of the West Saxon Kings, at least of this Ina; however it must be necessarily furnished with stately Houses, fitt to give Reception to the Persons of all the Saxon Kings of the Heptarchy, with their Courtiers and Attendants, which must be very numerous; besides, there seemed to have been a great Army along with them, which waited the Result of their Consultations.

I know not, what should induce the Dr. to call the Place *Mount Campeden*; unless there was some word in the original Latine, besides that of *Campodunum*, that answer'd to that of, *Mount*; for, if it was barely that and no more, I think it should have been rendered, according to Dr. Gale, *the Camp on the Mount, or Hill*. But I want very much to see the original Latine, and accordingly, when I was at London last year, went to the Cotton Library to peruse that Copy of Bever, which is said to be there, Vitell. E. XVII. 4. I saw the MS. indeed, but there is not the least mention of that Passage in the Book; which Mr. Casley and I, both of us, thoroughly examined; that I concluded, it was  
not



not Bever's Chronicle, but some other Anonymous Writer.

The printed Catalogue of MSS. mention's one Copy of this Authour in Trinity Colledge Library Oxon, and another in Sr. Simonds D' Ewes Library, which are all I meet with.

I don't find any Authour ha's follow'd Bever, in calling it *Campodunum*, but Langhorn in his *Chron. Reg. Angl.* who both in the Epistle Dedicatory, pag. 5. and also the Book it self, pag. 250. write's it *Campodunum*: But all Authours and Records, that I have seen, generally spell it with a (p.) which agree's with Dr. Skinner's Etymology.

I have not mett with any mention of the Place, after that Account of Bever's, 'till the Time of William the Conquerour, when in Domesday-book it is written *Campedene*, fol. 166..b. In the next King's Reign, *A.D.* 1093. in the Charter of Will. Rufus, confirming the Grant of Hugh Earl of Chester, (to whom the Conquerour had given Campden,) of the Titles of that Manor, (among others,) to the Church of St. Werburge's in Chester, it is called *Campedenæ*; *Môn. Angl.* vol. I. pag. 20k a. lin. 45. And so; through all the King's Reigns, quite down to this present time, it ha's constantly been written with a (p.) but differently spell'd, as *Campedenæ*, *Caumpedenæ*, *Compedenæ*, and some-  

p 4

times,

times, *Campendena*; as particularly in a Charter of Hugh de Gundeville, who lived in the Reign of K. Henr. 2. to the Abbey of Evesham; which is in a Register of Charters of that Abbey in the Cotton Library, Vespas. B. 24. fol. 44, a. which, because it make's much for the Antiquity of the Markett here, I have added at length, viz.

“ Notum sit presentibus, et futuris, quòd  
 “ ego Hugo de Gundevilla concessi omnibus  
 “ hominibus Abbatis de Evesham liberam  
 “ potestatem et quietam eundi, et emendi,  
 “ et vendendi, in foro meo de Campendena;  
 “ et prohibeo, ne aliquis Balivorum meo-  
 “ rum petat ab aliquo suorum Telonium,  
 “ vel aliam consuetudinem; vel aliquam ve-  
 “ xationem eis faciat in foro meo, vel in  
 “ via; nec aliam consuetudinem ab eis exi-  
 “ gat, quam mei faciunt in foro Abbatis.  
 “ Testibus, (inter alios,) Osmundo de Cam-  
 “ pendena, Everardo de Campendena.”

And in another Charter in the same Register, fol. 42. a.

“ Sciant, &c. quòd ego, Rogerus Dei gratia  
 “ Abbas de Evesham, et ejusdem loci Con-  
 “ ventus, concessimus, &c. Johanni Grene,  
 “ et Alitie uxori ejus, filie Everardi de Cam-  
 “ pendena, &c. Testibus, (inter alios,) Willo  
 “ filio.

TO HIS PREFACE.

CCXIX

“ filio Everardi de Campdena, Everardo,  
“ et Augustino fratribus ejus, &c.

Dr. Gale in his Commentaries on Antoninus's Itinerary, on the word *Cambodunum*, saies, *Antonini codices aliquot MSS. legunt Campodunum, quemadmodum & Bcda; alii Campodonum et Campadunum*: So that there seem's to have been a Place of the same Name with that of Bever's, in the time of the Romans, in the North of England; and I think our Campden likely enough to have born the same Name, (*Campodunum*,) as long agoe, in the South of England.

Verstegan, (Antw. 1605. 4<sup>to</sup>.) pag. 287. agree's with Dr. Skinner in his deriving it, from the A. S. *Camp*, and *Den*; but fancie's it to have been some Place, appointed for Champions, Combat-fighters, or men of Arms, to encounter each other, &c.

I don't know, whether you have Sr. Rob. Atkins; but he saies, pag. 309. a. That it is so called from a *Camp*, near that Place, where a Battle had been formerly fought; and pag. 322. a. That a great Battle was fought between the Mercians, and West-Saxons, in the Hamlett of Barrington, about a Mile from the Town of Campden: The *Camp* of the Mercians was at Willersey, the camp of the West-Saxons on Meen-

Meen-Hill, in the Parish of Quintone, and Mickleton. (&c.) A Bridge in Barrington retain's the name of Battle-Bridge. Barrington, antiently Burington, is likewise so called from being the Burying place of the Slain.

I could never meet with an Account of this Battle in any Authour. What Authority Sr. Robert had for it, I know not: but, no doubt, such a Battle was fought there, both from the constant Tradition of the Inhabitants, and the Place still retaining the Name of Battle-Bridge; though at present there is scarce left one Stone upon another, and it is onely a shallow Ford through a little Brook.

There are two such Camps, as he mention's, on Willersey-Hill, (about a Mile from Campden,) and Meen-Hill, but I should rather think, that of the West-Saxons to have been on Willersey-Hill, and the Mercians on Meen-Hill; for the former lye's in the South West, and the latter in the North East, in respect of each other; they are both of a square form, and large extent, with deep double Trënches.

I never saw it written, or called, *Barrington*, but always *Berrington*; and in Antient Records it is, *Berintone*, *Beritone*, *Buritone*, &c. It is contiguous to the rest of the Town, and the very Church it self stands in that, which is called *Berrington*, which confirm's its being the

Bu-

Burying-place of the Slain; Battle-Bridge is indeed in the District of Berrington, but above half a Mile from the Town.

There is another Tradition, very current among the Country People, that it was formerly, A Camp of the Danes; and so took it's Name from *Camp*, and *Dane*; but I take the Name to be antienter, then the Time of the Danes being here: However, I find, some in print have mention'd it; particularly Ogilby in his Survey of the Roads of England, Edition in 8<sup>vo</sup>. pag. 159, who saie's, The Town is of great Antiquity, the Danes being supposed to have their Camp near it, and thence it's Name seem's to be deriv'd; but I don't know, whether there be any more Grounds for this; then that, of it's being formerly called, Little London, which is also very common in the Mouths of the People.

I am sure, I have now sufficiently tired you; but the great Love I have for the Place, where I had a good Part of my Education, make's me dwell the longer upon the Subject; and have nothing more to add, but my most kind Love and Respects, from,

Dear Sir,

Mickleton, Easter  
Munday, 29<sup>th</sup>. of March,  
A. D. 1725.

Your most obliged humble Servant,

Richard Graves.

Vpon

*Vpon occasion of this Letter from Mr. Graves, I desired a worthy Friend to consult the Harleyan MS. of Bever, which accordingly he very readily did, (by the Favour of the R<sup>t</sup>, Hon<sup>ble</sup>. the Earl of Oxford,) and from his Answer I understand, that the Passage, referr'd to by Dr. Powell, is also wanting there; but then I find, that 'tis in the MS. of Trinity-College Library in this Vniversity (the same that I have cited in my Glossary<sup>1</sup>). from which I shall here publish it at large, as 'tis inserted in my MSS. Collections<sup>2</sup>, at the same time advertising, that this Trinity-College MS. is a Collection by an anonymous Writer (whom, however, Dr. Powell, to whom it belong'd, ventures to stile, Bever) and that 'tis not the true genuine Bever, such as may be met with (as far as I can, at present, understand) in the Cottonian and Harleyan MSS.*

Quoniam ex scriptura commendabili felicis Bedæ presbiteri modernorum traditur memoria, per quot regna, quibus, quotq; regibus olim Britannia subjacebat, id in hoc opusculo redigere non decuit, quod tantus pater suo carmine singulis patefecit. Verum quia felix Beda prælibatus anno nati Salvatoris ex virgine DCCXXXII. ex hac vita transisse fertur, ex tunc regum gesta regnîq; fortuita futurorum tradere memoriis studentem ratio suadebat. Inspectis

<sup>1</sup> Pag. 599. <sup>2</sup> Vol. 107. p. 82.

igitur cronicarum collectis, ac de gestis Anglorum libellis, actus veritati concordēs Auctor hujus operis tenore præsentis paginæ copulavit, Ut itaq; ex certo principio præsens narratio finem debitum per ordinem sorciatur, prodesse creditur ab ejus incipere progenie, qui Britonum rex ultimus reliquit Britanniam alienis. Anno siquidem graciæ dccxxv. ante decessum Bedæ septimo, Iuorius & Henyhinus, filii filiaë regis quondam Cadwalladri, de Hibernia venientes, duobus Walliæ regibus opem præstantibus, totam Cestriæ provinciam vastaverunt. Venientes quoq; in rure Danorum, quod ex eo Anglice nomen accepit Campedene, Latine campus Danorum, regibus Anglorum mandarunt legatos; ut Britanniam sibi restituerent, a qua suos patres & parentes injustis incursibus expulerunt. Addentes mandando, quod nisi infra quindenam regionem redderent, ulterius vitæ spacium non haberent. Inclitus ergo Westsexiæ Ine rex, filius Kenredi regis, omnibus Anglorum regibus hoc mandatum innotuit, qui mox armata manu in monte de Campedene venerunt, quibus rex eciam Estsexiæ Sibertus ait, “ Animadvertamus, karissimī, quales sumus, & “ quales qui contra nos veniunt. Vere Britones “ sunt, quorum patres & parentes, patres nostri à suis hereditariis expulerunt. Nunc siquidem veniunt de jure, pugnando calumpniare “ quod

“ quod à suis nostri juribus abstulere. Faciamus  
 “ ergo sicut ceteræ faciunt regiones. Eligamus  
 “ nobis capud, qui nos ducat, dirigat & guber-  
 “ net; cui nos omnes, tanquam membra, sicut  
 “ domino, tam pacis quam guerræ temporibus,  
 “ inclinemus, quoniam sine capite non speratur  
 “ victoria reputari. Nonne anno secundo post  
 “ Britonum dispersionem, Saxonum super po-  
 “ pulum, multo nunc nobis forciolem, infra  
 “ septennium quindecies applicuerunt, regna  
 “ regum spoliarunt, populum trucidarunt, & re-  
 “ vertentes nostros vix vivos laceratos vulneri-  
 “ bus reliquerunt?” Reges siquidem Anglorum  
 omnes, hoc contenti consilio, strenuissimum  
 militem Ine, Westsexiæ regem, in caput & do-  
 minum regum Anglorum unanimiter eligerunt,  
 anno Domini DCLXXXIX. Qui regum acceptis  
 homagiis, vexillum regni erexit, ac exercitum  
 Iuorii & Henyhini ita debactavit, quod in Wal-  
 liam, relictis tentoriis, fugierunt. Optenta itaq;  
 victoria, rex Ine, cum Anglorum regibus, (præ-  
 ter Sibertum regem Estsexiæ, qui, causa sene-  
 ctutis & impotenciæ, ad suam<sup>1</sup> rediens regio-  
 nem) apud Southampton se divertit, ubi suus  
 cognatus Adelardus occurrens nunciavit, quod  
 Iuorius & Henyhinus exercitum novum con-  
 gregarunt, ut Anglorum populum iterum<sup>2</sup> de-

---

<sup>1</sup> F. rediit. <sup>2</sup> F. debellarent.



bellarunt. Rex namq; Ine, miles validissimus, illuc progredi non tardavit, Snaudonem obsedit, Hibernes & Britones ad naves fugere compulit, & totam sibi Walliam subjugavit. Festum vero Sancti David rex Ine tenere volens, cum suis regibus & Walliæ magnatibus apud Bangor accessit, ubi die septimo post festum proclamare fecit, quod omnes reges ad suas redire[nt] regiones, moraturi donec mandatum haberent, ut iterum convenirent. Regibus itaque repatriatis, Rex Ine cum Adelardo suo cognato, & tota Regia familia, suam civitatem Mamecestriam petivit, Ethelburgam suam reginam, suumq; filium Adellum ibidem invenit, cum quibus vix tribus mensibus repausavit. Adellus quoq;, filius regis unicus, præsentem vitam terminavit eo tempore, dolorem patri non modicum propinando. Adelardus interea, Walliam cupiens circuire, tres exploratores obviam habuit, quibus captis & scrutatis, concepit, quod Iuorius & Henyhinus venturi sunt Angliam cum tanta populi multitudine, quod omnes Anglorum reges eorum viribus resistere non valebant. Adelardus igitur ad regem Anglorum Ine rediens, eidem retulit quod audivit. Rex autem Ine, suis statim regibus expressa causa, mandavit, quod indilate venirent Cestriæ, in equis & armis parati contra suos hostes, suas defendere regiones. Reges namq; mandatum hujusmodi  
pari-

pariter acceptantes, Cestriæ convenerunt, vexillum regium sectantes, percussoq; bello cum Britonibus, in fugam converterunt adversarios, qui infra sequens biennium Angliam sepcies invadabant, civitates & villas spoliabant, & cum spoliis repedabant. Interea rex Ine optenta victoria remeavit, & annis trigintâ sex super regno Westsexiæ peractis, Adelardo cognato suo regnum suum legavit.





# PETER LANGTOFT'S CHRONICLE.



IN Saynt Bede bokes writen er stories olde.  
Sex hundreth & four score & nien zere mo er  
tolde  
Sen þat Jhesu Criste of Mary was born,  
& þe kýng Cadwaladre þis lond had alle lorn.

For Englis & Sessons he went to lesse Bretaýn,  
To speke with his cosýne, his name was kýng Alaýn,  
& fro þien he went vnto þe courte of Rome,  
For to tak his penance & of his synnes dome.  
Whan he was asoyled of þe pape Sergie,  
He died & was biried in Rome solemplie.  
In þe zere after nouþer lesse ne more  
Kom his & his kosýn Ini & Iuore,  
In schip out of Ireland, in Wales gan þei vprýue,  
þorgh out Chestreschire werre gan þei dryue.  
Had þei no stýntýng, bot þorgh alle þei ran,  
Unto Wynchestre, alle þe loud þei wan.

De Rege de Westsexe. **I**N Westsex was þan a kýng, <sup>1</sup> his was Sir Ine.

Whan he wist of þe Bretons, of werre ne wild he fine.

Messengers he sent þorghout Ingland

Unto þe Inglis kýnges, þat had it in þer hond,

& teld hōw þe Bretons, men of mýkelle mýght,

þe lond wild wýnne ageyn þorh force & fyght.

Hastisly ilkone þe kýnges com fulle suythe,

Bolde men & stoute, þer hardnesse to kipe.

In a grete Daneis felde þer þei samned alle,

þat euer siþen hiderward Kampedene men kalle.

Of all þo Inglis kýnges, þat þan comen wore,

Sigbert, kýng of Estsex, in elde was he more.

He bigan to speke tille alle þe chiualrie :

“ We þe comen alle of kýnde of Germanie,

“ þat chaced has þe Bretons here of þer kýthe.

“ Now erc þei comen to clayme it, & mýkelle force þam with.

“ Oiper bihoues vs defend it, or gelde vp our <sup>2</sup> righ.

“ I rede we chese a hede, þat vs to werre kan dight,

“ & to þat ilk hede I rede we vs býnde.

“ For werre withouten hede is not wele, we fynde.

þe barons geðle to conseile, & teld it siþen on hie,

Ine kýng <sup>3</sup> kýng” of Westsex was a knýght worþic,

Forto gýe vs alle, þat now er comen here.

Ine toke þe feaute, displayed his banere,

& went to þe bataile in a fulle faire grene,

þat is vnder Kampedene, a medew I wene.

Iuor & Ini were disconfite þat day,

þe Iris & þe Wals with þam fled away.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Pro*, his name was. <sup>2</sup> *L.* right. <sup>3</sup> *Redundat.*

Alle were þei nere slayn, & þo þat þer left  
Fled vnto Wales vnto þer schippes est.  
Whan þise Bretons tuo were fled out of þis lond,  
Ine toke his scaute of alle þat <sup>1</sup> lond helde.  
At the fiftend day þei samned at Southamptone,  
With joy alle at ons þei went tille Snawdone  
On Iuor & Ini, þat tapised by þat side,  
To purueie þam a skulkýng, on þe Englis est to ride.  
Bot Ine had þe Inglis eucrilkon at wille,  
Bot Segbert of Estsex at home left stille.  
He was of grete elde, & mýght not trauaile,  
Bot Iuor & Ini þe Englis gan þam assaile.  
þe Englis were bolde, & drofe þam to þe sand.  
þe fled out of Wales away tille Ireland.

Iuor & Ini  
fugiunt.

**T**HE Englis <sup>2</sup> kýnges turned, þei mot do nomore,  
Bot soiornd þam a while in rest a Bangore;

---

<sup>1</sup> L. helde lond.    <sup>2</sup> See pag. 12, 13. of a most rare Book, being Mr. Thomas Ellis's imperfect Edition (with great Improvements) of Dr. Powell's History, to which is prefix'd Sir John Prise's Description of Wales. Oxon. 1653. 4to. I call it imperfect, because it was never near compleated by Mr. Ellis, as will appear from the following Remark, which I have written at the beginning of my Copy that I happen'd to purchase in the Year 1722. The following Description of

Wales was published by Mr. Thomas Ellis, A. M. and Fellow of Jesus Coll. Oxon. but 'tis much altered from the Edition which Dr. Powell set out, with the History of Cambria, now call'd Wales, at Lond. in 1584. 4to. The said Mr. Thomas Ellis was a learned Man, and a very great Antiquary. He began also to reprint the said History of Cambria, which was grown (and is now) very scarce. In order to which that great Antiquary, Rob.

*Ine Rex Westsex.*

þat ilk a kyng of reame suld mak him alle redie.  
 At þe Paske after þe kyng Ine <sup>1</sup> gart <sup>2</sup> tric,  
 Home forto wend to childe & to wife,  
 To visitte þer londes, to solace þer life.  
 Ine kyng of Westsex for his <sup>3</sup> wife sent  
 Vnto <sup>4</sup> Malmcestre, þe quene tille him went.

“ *Rob. Vaughan of Hengwart*  
 “ *in Merionethshire, Esq. (who*  
 “ *was diverted by other Business*  
 “ *from publishing this Work, as*  
 “ *he otherwise designed) com-*  
 “ *municated to him his Correc-*  
 “ *tions and Additions. But Mr.*  
 “ *Ellis finding, that a pau-*  
 “ *try, illiterate Author, called*  
 “ *Percie Enderbie, had been be-*  
 “ *fore hand with him, and some*  
 “ *way or other had got Mr.*  
 “ *Vaughan's Notes also, and*  
 “ *was so bold, as, without Mr.*  
 “ *Vaughan's leave, to print them*  
 “ *in his Book (which is but a*  
 “ *poor thing) in Folio call'd,*  
 “ *Cambria Triumphans: or, an-*  
 “ *cient and modern British, and*  
 “ *Welsh Histories, he laid by his*  
 “ *Design, and so no more was*  
 “ *printed than 128. Pages, all*  
 “ *which are here: After he had*  
 “ *desisted (for which all curious*  
 “ *and learned Men were very*  
 “ *sorry, he being so very capa-*  
 “ *ble of doing great Matters)*  
 “ *the Copies, all but a very few,*  
 “ *were sold for wast. Paper.*  
 “ *upon which account the Book is*

“ *now a wonderfull Rarity, and*  
 “ *highly valuable. Dr. Powell's*  
 “ *Additions are marked thus*  
 “ *✠. Mr. Vaughan's thus A.*  
 “ *This Book belong'd to the*  
 “ *Revd. Mr. Josiah Pullen,*  
 “ *M. A. and Vice-Principal of*  
 “ *Magd. Hall Oxon. What I*  
 “ *have here observ'd about Mr.*  
 “ *Ellis & Percie Enderbie is con-*  
 “ *firmd by Mr. Wood, Ath. Oxon.*  
 “ *Vol. II. col. 248, 249. But the*  
 “ *chief reason of my referring here*  
 “ *to Mr. Ellis's imperfect Ed. of*  
 “ *Dr. Powell's Hist. of Cambria*  
 “ *is upon account of a Passage that*  
 “ *is there published, (as 'tis also in*  
 “ *Dr. Powell's own genuine Ed.)*  
 “ *out of John Castoreus or Bever,*  
 “ *which will very much illustrate*  
 “ *this Place of Langtoft.*

<sup>1</sup> F. gan. Quod si gart reti-  
 neas, tum idem erit quod pre-  
 pared. <sup>2</sup> F. crie: <sup>3</sup> Ethel-  
 burga, <sup>4</sup> Id est, Manchester, in  
 agro Lancastrensi, quod Ma-  
 mocestre appellat Hovedenus,  
 Mamerceaster Florentius, Ma-  
 nize-cēayter Chron. Sax. Fu-  
 tilem autem eorum conjecturam

Ine þe kȳng had a sonne, his nāme Adellus.  
 Dede him toke & he died, als it salle do vs.  
 Sorow & site he made, þer was non oþer rede,  
 For his sonne & heyre, þat so sone was delle.

*esse arbitror, nec ulla consuta-  
 tionē egere, qui vocem Mani-  
 ze cearep (in Chronico Saxo-  
 nico) non de unica duntaxat  
 urbe, sed de multis civitatibus  
 esse intelligendam putant. Sed  
 en tibi ipsa verba è Chronico,  
 sub anno DCCCCXIII. ubi de  
 Edmundo Seniore agens, docu-  
 it, ipsum eodem illo anno, mox  
 post wstatem, ad Thælwale  
 [i. e. Thelwel, sive Thelwall,  
 viculum ad ripam fluminis Mer-  
 sey in agro Cestrensi, notante  
 cl. Gibsono, p. 45. Explicat. No-  
 minum Locor. in Chr. Sax.] cum  
 exercitu profectum, primum jus-  
 sisse eam urbem construi, & fir-  
 mari, præsidioque muniri; de-  
 inde jussisse etiam alium exer-  
 citum, dum ibi commoraretur,  
 de Merciorum terra, adire Ma-  
 nigeceaster in Northymbria, ac  
 eam resarcire, præsidioque mu-  
 nire. Heþ on þýŕŕum zeape.  
 for Eadpeard cȳning mid  
 ŕýnde on ufan hæpŕeŕe to  
 Dælpæle. ȳ het zeþýpcan þa  
 buþh. ȳ zeŕeŕcan. ȳ zemannian.  
 And het oðre ŕýnd eac of  
 Mýpna þeode. þa hpilē þe he  
 þæp ȳæt zeŕapan Manige-  
 cearep on Noþð-hýmbpan.*

ȳ he zeberan ȳ zemannian.  
 Pro on ufan hæpŕeŕe, autum-  
 nali tempore habet Florentius  
 Wigorniensis. Sic enim ille sub  
 A.D. 920. (quo anno, non, ut  
 Chr. Sax. 923. rem gestam  
 fuisse retulit.) Autumnali tem-  
 pore rex invictissimus Eadwardus  
 ad Tealweale profectus est, ibid-  
 emque urbem construxit, & ad  
 ejus præsidium quosque fortissi-  
 mos de exercitu suo reliquit. Mi-  
 sit etiam in Northimbriam Mer-  
 ciorum exercitum, ut urbem Ma-  
 merceastram restaurarent, & in  
 ea fortes milites collocarent. Ne-  
 que hac in re quid discrepat ex-  
 emplar præstantissimum editio-  
 nis Florentii Wigorniensis in Ato.  
 Londini 1592. quod, doctissimi  
 Langbainii notis quamplurimis  
 MSS. (maxima ex parte è duobus  
 Muriani Scoti, è quo pleraq; sua  
 surripuit Florentius, sicut in  
 Lelando nostro, Col. Vol. III.  
 p. 277. monui, Codicibus exi-  
 miis, calamo exaratis, petitis)  
 adornatum, è Muséo Arthuri  
 Charletti, nuper defuncti, rede-  
 mi, idem nimirum illud exem-  
 plar, quod ad pag. 212. editionis  
 nostræ vitæ Ælfredi Magni  
 Spelmannianæ commemoravi.

*Adelardus cepit regni gubernacula.*

Ine was kȳng of Westsex sex & þrittȳ zere,  
 Fullē wele he gemel þe lond fro wo & fro wehere.  
 Iuor & Ini ost did he þam chace.  
 In his tȳme to rise had þei neuer grace.  
 Tuentȳ grete batailes Ine ouerkam,  
 þe quene withouten childe non heȳre of hir nam.  
 Ine went to Rome als in pilgremage,  
 Adelard his cosȳn he gaf his heritage.  
 The pape him asoyled in treuth stedfast,  
 Whan he had don his penance, he gald to God þe gaste.

Ine per-  
 rexit Ro-  
 mam, &  
 ibi sepultus  
 est.

**A**DELARD of Westsex was kȳng of þe empire,  
 Of Noreis & Surreis, guȳour of ilk schire.  
 He ne suffred neuere wrath to be aboue  
 Bituex kȳng baron, þat ne he mad aȳ loue.  
 Alle þe Bretons he ouercome, þat wild him assaile,  
 & in his þirtende zere force gan him faile.  
 Tille Uttred his kosȳn, a stiffe knȳght in stoure,  
 He gaf his kȳngdom, & died in langoure.  
 He ligges at Bathe, for þider was he born.  
 þe holy mah Saȳnt Bede died a zere befor.

Ecce de  
 Henrico  
 Huntȳng-  
 tone.

¶ Henry of Huntȳngton sen þat day & þat zere  
 To write Inglis gestic fond he non his pere.  
 A bisshop of Lincolne, Alisandre he hight,  
 Praied him to write þe gestic þat were right.  
 þerfor þis Henry is cald a compiloure.

De Alex-  
 andro epi-  
 scopo Lin-  
 colniæ.

He wrote þe Inglis gestic whilom of honoure.  
 ¶ þus wrote to þe bisshop Henry þe same,  
 He sais, þis lond hight Bretayn, þat now has oþer name.



Ingland now is cald, for Inglis men we fynd  
 þe folk þat is þerin, it is of diuers kynd.  
 He sais þis lond has suffred so many tyme wo,  
 Fiue sorowes he writes withouten oþer mo.  
 þo ilk fiue sorowes he calles fiue woundes,  
 þat ere not zit haled, ne salle be many stoundes.  
 Noþeles þe clerk Merlyn sais certeyn,  
 That Bretons at þe last salle haf þis lond agayn,  
 Whan Cadwaldre salle calle with him þe kyng Konan  
 What tyme it salle falle, zit wote no man.  
 Now of fiue sorowes, þat zit not endid are,  
 Henry in his writyng telles what þei ware.

**T**HE first of þise fiue was þorgh Romeyns,  
 That wan it of Casbalan in to þer demeyns.  
 Grete treuage þei toke of þis lond here.  
 þre þousand pounde of gold to paye ilk a zere.  
 & four hundred zere lastid þat ilk wo,  
 þei mad þe lond fulle pouere, þe folk ded þei slo.  
 þe toþer sorow of þis lond mykelle gan it greue,  
 þe Scottes & þe Peihtes togider gan þei cheue,  
 To waste alle Northumberland, þe godes away þei ledde,  
 þat men with þe bestes in feldes þei þam fedde.  
 The þrid sorow of þis lond com þorgh þe Sessons,  
 þat ten sibes aryued vppon þe Bretons,  
 & siben were chaced ageyn aw with maistrie,  
 & est aryued on þam here þorgh quantisc of spie.  
 At þe last þei chaced out þe Bretons so clene,  
 Away vnto Wales þer kynd is I wene.

Quinque  
 plagarum  
 terre pri-  
 ma plaga  
 fait.

Secunda  
 plaga.

Tercia pla-  
 ga.

þe Englis of þis lond þe lordschip þei toke,  
& haf it zit in þer hond, þe Bretons forsoke.

Quarta  
plaga.

¶ þe ferthe sorow of þis lond com þorgh þe Danes,  
þe folk of the North slouh, destroyed þer wanes.  
Siben wan þei alle þe South, maistrie þei schewed,  
& laid þer Dangilde on lered & lewed,  
& left þe Inglis þe lond on a forward dère,  
To pay ilk a hede a peny to þam bi zere.

Quinta  
plaga.

¶ The fift sorow þer after com, whan William conqueroure,  
þat aryued on þis lond, Harald he slouh in stoure,  
& barons oper inouh, þat died in þe feld,  
þe lond lese þe armes, changed is þe scheld.  
Siben he & his haf had þe lond in heritage,  
þat þe Inglis haf so lad, þat þei lyue in seruage,  
He sette þe Inglis to be þralle, þat or was so fre.  
He þat bigan it alle in þe geste may ze se.

Henriens  
dicit.

**H**ENRY of Huntynghon testifons þis title.  
þe kыngdom of Westsex, he sais, it was not litelle,  
Whan Adelard died þersro, & Uttred þerto went.

Uttred's  
regnavit.

Uttred in his first zere messengers he sent  
For kыnges & barons vntille his parlement,  
In stede þer he it sette, þei wist what it ment.  
Bot Eadbald it withsaid, kыng of Lyndesay,  
He was of þe Bretons kynde, he stode of him non eye.  
Uttred wrathed him þerfore, & ran on him fülle tite,  
& tuys þorgh batale in selde was Eadbald disconfite.  
zit wild he not be war þer bi, so proude he was in herte,  
Tille he was wonded þe þrid tyme, & died also smerte.

Biried.

Biried he is at Repýndon, & in þe kirke he lis.  
He þat wille not bowe in skille, I hold him vnwis.  
Maný týmes on Uttred Bretous bataile souht :  
Uttred was so valiant, he gaf of þam right nouht.  
He regned fiftene gere, & died alle to rathe.  
He ligges biried als a kýng in the toun of Bathe.

**A**FTER Uttred regned Sibriht, his kosýn,  
He luffed wele þe Bretons, þat com tillle ille fýn.  
He bare him so tillle his barons, þat noþer zong ne olde  
Wald vnto him bowe, ne bliþeli of him holde.  
What did þe barons alle with þis fole Sibriht ?  
Chaced him fro his reame, & chese a noþer knýght,  
Kynewolf, of þe kýnred of Adelarde's blode,  
A while lufed þe Inglis, & wele with þam stode.  
Sibriht þat schrow as a lordan gan lusk,  
A suynhird smote he to dede vnder a thorn busk.

Sibriht  
regnavit.

Kynewolf  
cepit re-  
gnare.

**K**YNEWOLF toke þe kýngdom (for better mot not falle)  
& siþen toke þe feaute of þe kýnges alle,  
As his ancestres had it befor hand,  
Bot of Kent & Lyndesay & Northumberland.  
þise þre kýnges geýnsaid it hým,  
& Kýnwolf to þo þre bare him so brým,  
So wis he was in dede, of body so valiant,  
With dýnt of suerd & drede he mad þam recreant.  
Kýng was Kýnwolf sex & tuentý gere,  
He was neuer wedded, to woman's daungere.

Rex Kyn-  
wolf.

No childe had he neuer, his heritage myght to wende,  
 Bot welth inou to welde, vntille his lyue's ende.  
 At Wýnchestre he lis, þider men him bare:  
 Fulle frely he lýued here, his soule with God it fare.

Rex Brit-  
 trik.

**WHAN** þe kýng Kýnwolf had don his endýng,  
<sup>1</sup> Brittrk his kosýn þei list him to kýng.  
 Offa, kýng of Lýndsay, a faire douhter had,  
 Brittrik hir wedded, & quene home hir lad.  
 Whan he had regned foure gere, one ryued vpon his right,  
 A duke of Danmark, Kebriht he hight:  
 Britrik had a stiward, his name was Herman:  
 Kebriht he kept at Humber, & on him he ran.  
 Hard was þe bataile, als þei togider stýnt.  
 Herman was þer slayn, þe duke gaf þe dýnt.  
 Ageýn to Danmark Kebriht gan schake,  
 þat þe kýng <sup>2</sup> Kebriht ne myght him ouertake.  
 He mot not venge Herman of Kebriht þat him slouh.  
 He did his ost turne agayn, & had sorow inouh.  
 In his elleuent gere com folk, þat misleued,  
 Aryued on Brittrik, & sore þei him greued.  
 þore Brittrik bare him so in þat ilk bataile,  
 þe dede gede Danes to, þe Noreis gan him vaile.,  
 Edburgh hight þe quene, þat I ore.of ment,  
 Scho purueied a poýson to þe kýng sonne of Kent.  
 Hatred before was, S. Bede herd I say,  
 Biten þe kýng of Kent, & þe kýng of Lýndsay.

<sup>1</sup> L. Brittrik.

<sup>2</sup> F. Brittrik.

¶ Eilred of Lyndesay alle Kent he wasted.

þe kȳng aſter, I ſay, to hate often he taſted

þe was of Lyndesay, als I ore told.

Scho <sup>2</sup> purueid þat poȳson þorgh<sup>1</sup> hateded of old.

*Malim, Eilred (vel, at alii Cantii regem vocant, Alric) of Kent alle Lyndesay he wasted. <sup>2</sup> The Author hath here an eye upon the History of Eadburg, (or, as he just above writes her, Edburgh) King Brictrick's Queen, who was Daughter of Offa, K. of Mercia; but, as he hath represented it, it is very obscure and imperfect; and whereas he tells us, that Brictrick was buried at Tewksbury, others assure us, that it was at Warhame, Whence the Saxon Annals. An. DCCLXXXIV. Her Cȳneheard of-ſloh Cȳnepulſ cȳning. ¶ he þær peapð of-plegen. ¶ LXXXIV. monna mið him. And þa on-penz Bȳphtric Þeȳt-Seaxna riceȳ, ¶ he micode xvi. gear. and hȳ fædepen-cȳn geð to Cepðice. The story of Eadburg is given at large by several Writers. She was a most beautiful Lady, and had gained the Affections of the King her Husband (a good natured mild Prince) so much, that he was governed and directed more by her, than was consistent with his Royal Dignity. She was of*

*a very haughty, proud temper, and could not brook, that the King should have any favourites, but such as she approved of. So that if she saw, or knew of, any, that, without her special consent and approbation, were countenanced, and particularly respected by him, she contrived methods to make such away. There happened to be a very delicate, fine young Gentleman (Son, it seems, as Langtoft informs us, to the King of Kent) that the King shew'd a more than ordinary kindness to, both upon account of his exquisite beauty, and the excellency of his understanding. The youth was perfectly innocent, and the King (notwithstanding an Usurper, as being not of the right line [See Dr. Brady's History of the Succession, p. 359.]) of too virtuous a nature to cause any just grounds of suspicion, that there was any immorality in the case. The Queen, however, thought otherwise. She look'd upon the youth as the King's minion, and her jealousy wrought her to such a pitch of madness, that she prepar'd a potion for him (an ordinary*

dinary practise with her, when she had a mind to vent her spleen) that prov'd fatal not only to the lovely youth, but even to the King himself, who had the misfortune (tho' quite contrary to her design) to tast first of the cup. This raised the indignation of the King's Subjects to such a degree, that she was forced, for security, to fly beyond Sea, and the West-Saxons thereupon resolv'd, that, for the future, no Queen should sit on the throne with the King, nor be stil'd his Queen, but only the King's wife. But this custom being look'd upon as barbarous and very dishonourable, it was soon after broke by King Ethelwolf (father to Ælfred the Great) notwithstanding in the times of some of his successors there was often a respect had unto it, as I have shew'd in my Notes upon Sir John Spelman's *Life of K. Ælfred*, p. 24. to which place I shall refer the Reader, and, upon this occasion, will only beg leave to insert, what is said about King Brictrick in the prose additions to the MS. of Robert of Gloucester, that belongs to the Herald's Office. After him [Kyncwulfe] Brightrik regned. xvi. yere, more studious a bout pees thanne; bataille. This toke to wyfe Edburge, kyng

Offes doughter of Merchene-riche. Whiche Edburge sturied her lorde a yerst gilllese men, notwithstanding that him self was meoke and benyng. And yf she ne myght nat come to here purpose by counseille to ouercome thoo that here liked by werre, sheo dude hem be slayne by poyson. This was preued in a yonglyng of the kynges whiche he muche loued, which heo with her poysen sloughe. And after that the kyng deýde þorgh a drenche, whiche vnwýtýng the quene he dranke, of hure makýng. and whenne the týthinge here of was sprong oute, thulke wikked quene by the comminalte was driue oute of the countre, and a statute i made a mong the West-Saxones, that no quene afterwarde shulde sitte by the kyng atte mete, ne be clepud quene, for the malice of Edburge forsaiden. And sheo þen wendýng to kyng Charles the gret Charles of Fraunce, bi the grete. happe on a týme, as she was essheked of him, whether sheo hadde lyuer haue him, than his sone that stode ther bý, into housbond, sheo chees his sone. Thenne Charles, of he answeere a-  
meved,

Brittrik hir lord, þat scho nouht wiste,  
 Unwarned drank þerof a drauht als him liste.  
 He lÿued bōt a moneth, þer of gan he die.  
 At Teukesbiri in tounge his bodÿ did lie.

meved, saide thus. Yf thou haddest chose me, thou shuldest haue hadde mÿ sone; but for thou castest me a way, and chese mÿ sone, nother him ne me shalt þow haue. And then he putte her in a abbey, where she was worshipfulliche I founde. but after sheo was founde gÿltÿ in lecherie, wherefore she was putte oute ther of. Kÿng Bryghtrÿc had take these to wÿue as for the mightÿest kynges daughter of Englisshemen; that thourgh the affinite of hure he mÿghte haue his regne attē his wille, and putte of his Eamÿs the lightloker, and a gaste the rebelle to him. By the helpe of this kyng Offe he droff in to Fraunce Egbright, of the kynges kynrede alone a lÿf, and whiche he most dradde to be a ÿenst hÿm and contrarie to his profÿtes. For this Brightric, and other kynges

fram Ine to him, were oute of the right lÿne of kynges, as of Certikes kÿn. Whanne Egbright thus was exiled, to Brightric a newe greuance ÿut sprong. For a folke of hethen Danes, ÿ vsed to lÿue bÿ see robbery, prÿuÿlich in iii. shippes shende the pes of Westsex. Whiche shippes aspied the plenteuousnesse of the lōnde and the vertues of the men ther inne dwellÿng, and they thenne wendÿng home a ÿe, brought more peple, and assaide to stroÿe the contre, so that they toke the kÿngus toun that was neighe and robbed hit. but anon, for drede of the peple rennÿng therto, they flow to her shippus, lesÿng her praye. And whenne Brigheric [*sic*] was dede, as aboue is saide, bÿ poyson happeliche I dronke, atte Warham his bodÿ was take to buriels.

**Egbriht  
Rex.**

**SIBRIHT**, þat I of told, þat þe lond had lorn,  
þat a suýnhird slouh vnder a busk of thorn,  
Had a kosyn, hight Egbriht, whilom exiled was  
þorh þe kýng Brihtrik, I ne wote for what trispas.  
þis ilk Egbriht was norised at Paris.

In Charlemaýn courte, sire of Saýat Dinýs.

<sup>1</sup> Ailrik was his fader, a duke of faire fame,  
Lord of Wicombe, of Redýnges, & of Tame.

His moder was Sibriht sister, þat was a fole kýng.  
þat Brittrik was dede him com tþing.

He toke leue at Charles, & com tille þis lond,  
Among his riche kýnde gode frendes he fond.

What þ. rgh lowe of lond, & olde auncestrie,  
Wan he þe regne of Westseþ alle pleýnerlie.

Whan he pleýnere seýsýn in þat his eam had lorn,  
þat his fiue ancestres had holden beforþ,  
þorghout þe South to þe North he had for grete nýth,  
If aný Breton were fonden holdand lond or lýth,

**De Berne-  
wolf rege.** þat he suld void e þe lond, if he his life wýld saue.

Maný fled to Lýndaý; socour forto haue,

To þe kýng Bernewolf, þat was Breton,  
& he withsaid his feante, þat he suld haf don.

Bituex þise tuo kýnges a werre bigan,  
Slayn was Bernewolf, & with him maný man.

Under Elendoune þe bataile was smýten.

Men syng in þat cuntre (fele git it witen)

---

<sup>1</sup> Male. Nam pater Egberti fuit Alcmundus sive Ealmundus.  
Vide Sax. Chron. p. 76.



“ Elendoune, Elendoune, þi lond is fulle rede  
“ Of þe blode of Bernewolf, þer he toke his dede.  
After þat bataile Egbricht, þus herd I say,  
Seised Kent & Estsex, Southsex & Surray,  
& alle þe grete lond, fro Douer to Grýmsbý.  
Wilaf, Bernewolf sonne, þerwith had envý:  
He wild haf venged his fadere, if he had haued mýght.  
Bot he fond no force agayn þe kýng Egbricht.  
If he wild ouht haue, after ‘ after’ his fader deceسه,  
Nedly him bihoued com tille Egbricht pes.  
At þe last he com, & mad þe kýng homage,  
Egbricht for his curteisie gaf him his heritage.

¶ Egbricht of alle þe lond had þe regante,  
Fro Douere vnto Tuede, alle was his fee.  
Wilaf with him he led, Wales forto se.

De homa-  
gio Wallie.

Bangore with force, þei toke þat cite.  
The Walsch men it sauh, it mot no better be,  
þei com befor Egbricht, & mad him scaute,

¶ Sone after þe wýntere, whan þe somer bigan,  
þe kýng & his meýne went to burgh Konan.  
It was on Witsonday, in tyme of slepyng,  
Kom messengers of þe North, & teld Egbricht þe kýng,  
þorgh Frithbald a lord of þe Northende,  
& said, “ Sir Egbricht, our chefe kýng to tille lende,  
“ Suffre not Sir Frethebald long to lede þis pyne.  
“ His folk beside Tuede es slayn & kast þer ine,  
“ He is now in poýnt his regne forto tylene.  
“ þorgh þam of Danmark þis lond wille þei wýne,

Konýnges-  
burgh.

De Frethe-  
baldo.

Dele.

“ &

*Egabriht Rex.*

“ & if þei Sir Frethebald haf now ouer comen,  
 “ þe to þere remenant of þe North son sallē þei nomen.  
 “ Sir, for þis hiē feste, & for þe Trinite,  
 “ Suffre vs nouht to lese, for defeaute of þe.

Bellum a-  
 pud Kar-  
 ham, & rex  
 fugam  
 cepit.

**W**HAT did' kýng Egabriht? Withoutē any somons,  
 & withouten askýng of Erles or barons,  
 He hied him þider suýth, &, whan he com to Tuede,  
 He sauh suýlk oste of paiens, þat alle he was in drede.  
 Neuerþeles at Karham was the bataile gýuen,  
 þe kýng was narrow holden, his folk alle to dryuen.  
 Tuo dukes & tuo bisslopes for euer toke þer leue,  
 þe kýng was alle affraied, þer dede gan him greue.  
 þe kýnge's folk was litelle, it had no dure.  
 On the nyght he fled away, þat non suld him se.  
 Mýght he neuer noure fynd a restýng place.  
 Right vntō Donkastre þe Danes gan him chace.  
 Whan he wend haf passed þo þat gan him dryue,  
 þan were aryued in Humber þrittý schippes & fyue.  
 Ilkone with folk inouh, redý to bataile.  
 “ God wate,” said þe kýng, “ now comes me trauaile.

De Dar-  
 dano filio  
 regis Da-  
 cia.

¶ Dardan hight þe cheftaýn of þat company,  
 Sadok sonne of Danmark kýng Danesry.  
 þer pauillons had þei sette beside þe water of Done,  
 Egabriht gadred partie, & zared him fulle sone.  
 Listen now, how Jhesu Crīste, for his mýkelle mērcý,  
 Agayn þe fals paiens þe Cristen stode he bý.

SIBRIHT duke of Brailes, Egbricht sister sonne,  
 He com his eam to socour fro fer þer he gan wonne.  
 Sýward þe gode westreis, Edald þe vavasoure,  
 Wilaf kýng of Merce, he com to þat stoure.  
 Harald of Donsmore his lord þider led  
 Berald of þe Marche, of strength non he dred.  
 Haldayn of Donkastre was chosen þat ilk day,  
 To bere þe kýnge's banere ageyn þe paien lay.  
 Bot Hakon; Hernebald sonne, of best he bare þe voice,  
 In stede of kýnge's banere he did him bere þe croice,  
 In wirschip of Jhesu, & of his passion,  
 þe paiens were so ferd, þei myght haf no foýson.  
 ¶ þe ferþ day of Septembre, in þe <sup>1</sup> heuest tide,  
 At Donkastre mot men se manyon to batale ride.  
 þat to þe kýng Egbricht alle were þei gyuen,  
 For þer heritage þer to die or lyuen.  
 þei hewe on þe paiens, as men of wille gode.  
 þe paiens ageyn þam fulle stifely þei stode.  
 þei fauht alle þat day, ne left þei not þe nýght,  
 Wilaf þe kýng of <sup>2</sup> Merte was slayn in that fight,  
 & Berald of þe Marche, & þe duke Uttre  
 Lord of Cirencestre, þat nýght slayn was he.  
 Alle þat nýght þe kýnge's folk fulle ille were þei led,  
 Many on was slayn, & woned hard bisted.  
 Right in þe mornýng in aldermost nede  
 Com þe kýnge's sonnes tuo, als Criste wild it rede,  
 Out of Germinie with folk inouh of myght,  
 Adelwolf & Ethelbert, knýghtes boþe fulle wýght.

De militin  
 Anglorum,  
 & nomini-  
 bus eorum.

III<sup>o</sup>. die  
 Septembris  
 fuit bellum  
 apud Don-  
 kastre inter  
 regem Eg-  
 briht &  
 Danos.

<sup>1</sup> Sic.    <sup>2</sup> Sic.    <sup>3</sup> L. Merce.

Was neuer in alle his lyue þer fadere ore so glad,  
 Als whan he sauh his sons tuo, þe paiens force to sprad.  
 Adelwolf his fader saued at þat ilk iorne,  
 & Ethelbert in the felde his fader lete he se,  
 How Dardañ for his lance doun to þe erth went,  
 & smote his hede of, his fader to præsent.\*

¶ Harald of Donesmore vppon Done him mette  
 Vibrand, Dardane's broþer, with suerd so him grette,  
 þat þorghout his armes Wibrand alle to hewe.  
 Sone with þe Danes gamned þam no glewe.  
 þat perceyued Haldayn, þat bare þe croice on lie,  
 Sex & þrittý paiens enbussed priuelie.  
 He tok his suerd in hand, þe croyce lete he falle,  
 & medeled him in þe pres, among þe barons alle.  
 Before þe kyng & his sons he rinthed þam þe way,  
 Many wer þe paiens þat Haldayn did slouh þat day.  
 Bituex vnderon & noen was þe feld alle wonnen.  
 For alle þat wild abide were ouer riden & ronnen.  
 þe kyng with þe maistrie went in to þe toun,  
 þe pris he had wonnen, in vertew of Criste's passioun.

¶ Whan he had done þere alle þat he suld do,  
 He went vnto Wynchestre, his conseile gaf him so.  
 Unto þe somerestide þer gan he lende,  
 Fyue & þrittý batailes had he brouht tille ende.  
 He felt him heuy & ferly seke, his body wex alte seere,  
 His childre he wild auance, tille he o lyue were.  
 Tille Adelwolf gaf he Westsex, hede of alle þe thede,  
 Lordschip ouer alle þe londes bituex Douer & Tuede.

*Ecce de  
 probitate  
 Haldayn,  
 qui porta-  
 vit crucem  
 pro vexillo.*

Ethelbert held Estsex, Southsex & Kent,  
 For homage & feaute till Adelwolf it went.  
 Whan Egabriht had fessed his sons in londes seere,  
 Now in his last ende of fyue & þrittý zere,  
 At Wýnchestre he died, & þer his bódý is laid:  
 Was neuer þe lond so zemed, þe folk so þan said.  
 Fyue childir he had, knyghtes douhtý of handes,  
 & alle were þei kýnges in diuers laudes.

**ADELWOLF** of Westsex, after his fadere dede,  
 At Chestre sette his parlement, his tenantz þerto bede.  
 He sent for alle þe kýnges, fro Berwik vnto Kent,  
 & þei with fulle gode wille alle vnto him went,  
 & mad till him feaute, withouten any chest,  
 & cleýmed him for þer chefe of West & of Est,  
 Of North & of South in length & in brede,  
 Fro Kent vntille Berwik, als lastes alle þat thede.

Adelwolf  
 rex.

¶ He was first of Ingland, þat gaf God his típe,  
 Of Isshue of bestes, of londes or of lípe.

Primus rex,  
 qui dedit  
 decimas ec-  
 clesie in  
 Anglia.

<sup>1</sup> *He was also so great a Friend to the University of Oxford, that he had thoughts of rebuilding it, after it had been destroyed by barbarous Enemies. Whence 'tis that some Historians say, that he was the Founder of that University, which, however, is more truly asserted of his Son K. Alfred, who certainly did raise it up again after the Destruction brought upon it by the Danes.*

*Among others that ascribe this Act to K. Æthelwolf is John Rastell, or Rastall, in his Chronicle, a wonderfull scarce printed Book, lent me by my very worthy Friend, the ingenious Mr. John Murray of London. ¶ Ethelwolphus (says Rastell) son to Egbert began his reyn ouer the westsaxons the yere of cryst. viii. c. xxxii. | some say that this Ethelwold [l. Ethelwolf] foundyd furst*

Sifen he went to Rome, as man of holy wille,  
 His sonne & he alle þat gere with þe pape duelled stille.  
 þe toþer gere next, after his duellýng,  
 He went home bi France, & spak with þe kýng.  
 þe kýng him his douhter, hir name was Juwet,  
 Fulle wele on Sir Adewolf was þat maiden sett.  
 He brouht hir Ingland, & sifen lyued tuo gere.  
 He lies at Wýnchestre beside an autere.  
 þre þousand marke he gaf with testament fulle right  
 To Petir & Paule of Rome, to susteyn þer light.

Edbaldus  
 rex factus.

**A**FTER Adewolf, his sonne hight Edbalde,  
 To gere & a half þe regne gan he halde.  
 Of him in holy kirke men said euclle sawe,  
 His stepmoder Juwet he weddid agayn þe lawe.  
 Of his body was no force, non for him wild murne.  
 Bot þus I foud in my boke, he lies at Schirburne.

Anno Do-  
 mini. D  
 cccc. lxi.

þe date of Criste to neuen þus fele were gon,  
 Auht hundreth euen, & sexti & on.

Ethelbertus  
 rex.

**A**FTER Edbalde com Ethelbert his eam,  
 Adewolf's broþer, of Egbrihte's team.  
 He did him coroune kýng, he was a noble man,  
 & in his first gere paiens on him ran

the vnyuersyte of Oxonford.  
 Where the word furst is to be  
 understood of the first found-  
 ing it after it had been destroy-  
 ed, not that there had been

nyq University here before.  
 See my Preface to Thomas  
 Sprot's Chronicle, §. 15.  
 ' Repone, DCCC.LXI°.

Right at Wýnchestre, ageyn þam gan he stand,  
 þe kýng þam bataile, & did þam fle þe land.  
 In werryng & in wo he regned fyue zere.  
 Men biried him at Schireburn, Edbald fulle nere.  
 þe date of Jhesu Criste was written in þis lyue,  
 Aubt hundreth wýnter sexti & fyue.

Anno  
 Domini.  
 DCCC<sup>mo</sup>.  
 LX.º.

**A**FTER Ethelbert com Elfrith his broþer,  
 þat was Egbrihte's sonne, & git þer was a noþer.  
 Elfride þorgh heritage toke him þe coroune,  
 & gaf Alfride his broþer Surraý to warisoune.  
 Tille Elfride oure kýng com tþinges starke,  
 þat fyue kýnges & fyue erles wer comen of Danmarke,  
 þat wild on him renne, & reue him þe coroune,  
 With alle þer grete folk, þei laý in Aluertoune.  
 þe kýng & his broþer, þat hight Alfrede,  
 Gadred folk togider, als men þat had nede,  
 & com to þe bataile with fulle egre herte.  
 þe Danes stode þam ageyn with bataile fulle smerte.  
 In þe passion tyme was þe first bataile,  
 Nene was þat ilk zere, grete was þer trauaile.  
 þe toþer zere, þe þrid day after Halwethurs tide,  
 þe Danes, þorgh Gode's grace, were on þe wers side.  
 For slayn were þei alle, erle & baron.  
 þe kýng did mak at zork a faire procession,  
 & þanked Jhesu Criste with herte fullè mylde,  
 þat ageyn þe paiens his lond myght schilde.

Elfridus  
 rex.

De Sancto  
Edmundo  
martire, &  
de morte  
ejus per to-  
tum.

**ELFRIDE** had a kosyn, þat kȳng was of schelde,  
Northfolk & Southfolk of Elfride he helde,  
þat was Saynt Edmunde, þe croune þat tȳme bare,

A duke of Danmark, his name was Inguare,  
Ubbe an erle of Huneis with þat Inguar kam,  
Uppon Saynt Edmunde Northfolk he nam,  
Edmunde sent his messengers, of pes þam bisouht,  
Inguar sent boðe ageyn, þat pes wild he nouht,  
Bot if he gald him þe lond, þān he suld haf pes,  
þat wild not Saynt Edmunde, þe bataile he ches,  
He atired him to bataile with folk þat he had.

Bot þis cursed Danes so grete oste ay lād,  
þat Edmunde was taken, and slayn at þe last,  
Fulle fer fro þe bodȳ lay was þe hede kast.  
þe bodȳ son þei fonde, þe hāde was in doute,

Up & doune in þe felde þei souht it aboute,  
To haf knowyng þerof, alle þei were in were,

Ecce mira-  
culum de  
capite San-  
cti Edmun-  
di.

Tille þe hede him self said, *herȳ, here, here,*  
þer þei fond þe hede is now a faire chapelle,  
Oxen hate þe toun, þer þe bodȳ felle.

þer where he was schotte a noþer chapelle standes,  
& somewhat of þat tre, þei bond vntille his handes.

þe tone is fro þe toþer moten a grete mȳle,  
So fer bare a woulfe þe hede, & kept it a grēte whilē,  
Unto þe hede said, *here,* als I befor said.

Fro þe woulf þei it toke, vnto þe bodȳ it laid.  
Men sais, þer he ligges þe flesch samen gedē,  
Bot þe token of þe wonde als a rede threde.



*Elfridus Rex.*

23

Now lies he in schryne in golde þat is rede.  
Seuen zere was he kyng þat tyme þat he was dede.

**I**N þe zere after, right in þe tyme of May,  
Oseth, þe Danes kyng, com Ingland to affray.  
He aryued at Berwik, in þe water of Tuede.  
Priue help of þe Scottes he had at his nede,  
& com fast toward þe South, grete powere he led.  
Elfride & his broþere out of zork fled.  
þei praied God specially, þat he wild þam saue,  
& ageyn þe Danes help inouh to haue.  
At þe poynt of þe bataile, displayed his banere,  
þe kyng zede to þe kirke, his messe forto here.  
Bot Alfride his broþer zede to þe bataile.  
He was ouer hardy, þe Danes he gan assaile.  
Discomfite was Alfride within a litelle throwe.  
þe kyng herd þat telle, þat his side zede lowe.  
He dight him to þe bataile, his folk to socoure.  
God did faire miracle for Elfride þat houre.  
For non of þe Danes askaped with þe life.  
Bot þe Scottes kyng, þat mayntend þat strife,  
Opon Elfride ran, als traytoure inferd.  
Elfride he woned with dynȝ of a suerd.  
Sex zere was he kyng, with werre weldid þe scheld.  
Fulle gode was his endyng, he ligges at Driffeld.  
¶ þof alle þat he wreced in wo & in strife,  
þe foure & tuenty houres he spended in holy life.  
þe ferst. viii. houres in praier alderbest,  
þe toþer. viii. houres in slepe & in rest.

Oseth, rex  
Daciae, ar-  
ripuit por-  
tum in Ber-  
wik super  
regem El-  
fridum.

*Alfridus Rex.*

þe þrid. viii. houres he studied, how he myght  
 Mayntene þe lond with lawe, his folk hald to right.  
 Haluendele his godes he gaf to Gode's werkes,  
 Sustened abbeis, norised pouer clerkes,  
 Did reise vp kirkes, þat were fallen doun,  
 & alle þat him serued he brouht to warisoun.  
 þe zere of Criste's birth was ault hundreth euen,  
 & þus maný mo, sextý & elleuen.

Anno. D.  
 ccco.  
 LXXIo.

**ALFRIDE** his broþer, a gode clerk was he one,  
 Of bodý so douhtý in Ingland was none.

He reseýued þe coroune, after his broþer dede,  
 Strong were þe batailes þe Danes on him bede.  
 Tuó & tuentý batailes he wanne þe first zere,  
 þe Danes so maný týmes aryued on him here.

De Rollo  
 pagano ba-  
 ptizato, cui  
 nomen erat  
 Robertus,  
 & hic con-  
 quisivit to-  
 tam Nor-  
 manniam.

þat he so maný slouh a duke had enyie,  
 & est aryued on þis lond with fulle grete nauie.

Rollo was his name, a knyght fulle douhtý,  
 þat Alfride wend wele, haf lorn þe seignory.

Whan þei com to bataile, ilk oþer gan askie,  
 Alfride vnto Rollo sone gan him alie.

So maný douhtý dýntes was bituex þam tueye,  
 Wele þei did togidere, better may no man seye.

God, þorgh his grace, þat day so wele sped,  
 þat Rollo asked Cristendom at þe kyng Alfred.

þorgh þat Cristendom, þo, þat were so wroþe,  
 At halý kirke's fayth alle on were boþe.

Rollo was kald Roberd, whan he was baptized,  
 þorgh þe kyng Alfride, als he had deuised.

Now

Now is Roberd Cristen, he dightes his nauie,  
 & ferde ouer þe see, & conquerd Normundie.  
 Duke þan was he cald, þorgh conquest of hond,  
 Alfrid he left stille here in Ingland.

¶ zit a noþer Danes kýng in þe Norþ gan aryue.

Alfrid it herd, þidere gan he dryue.

Hanelok fader he was, Gunter was his name.

He brent citees & tounes, ouer alle did he schame

Saynt Cutberte's clerkes þo Danes þei dred.

þe toke þe holy bones, about þei þam led.

Seuen zere þorgh þe land wer þei born aboute,

It comforted þe kýng mykelle, whan he was in doute.

¶ Whan Alfrid & Gunter had werred long in ille,

þorgh þe grace of God, Gunter turned his wille.

Cristend wild he be, þe kýng of fonte him list,

& þrittý of his knyghtes turnes, þorgh Gode's gift.

þo þat first were foos, & com of paien lay,

Of Cristen men haf los, & so þei wend away.

¶ Bot I haf grete ferly, þat I fynd no man,

þat has writen in storý, how Hanelok þis lond wan.

Noiþer Gildas, no Bede, no Henry of Huntýnton,

No William of Malmesbiri, ne Pers of Bridlynton,

Writes not in þer bokes of no kýng Athelwold,

Ne Goldeburgh his douhtere, ne Hanelok not of told,

Whilk týme þe were kýnges, long or now late

þei mak no menyng whan, no in what date.

Bot þat þise lowed men vpon English tellis,

Right storý can me not ken, þe certeynte what spellis.

De Gun-  
 tero patre  
 Hanelok,  
 sicut dicit  
 Petrus.

De Hane-  
 lok.

Men sais in Lyncoln castelle ligges, zit a stone,  
 þat Hanelok kast wele forbi. euer ilkone.  
 & zit þe chapelle standes, þer he weddid his wife,  
 Goldeburgh þe kýnge's douhter, þat saw is zit rife.  
 & of Grýme a fissue, men redes zit in rýme,  
 þat he bigged Grýmesbý Grýme þat ilk týme.  
 Of alle stories of honoure, þat I haf þorgh souht,  
 I fynd, þat no compiloure of him tellis ouht.  
 Sen I fynd non redý, þat tellis of Hanelok kýnde,  
 Turne we to þat storý, þat we writen fynde.

*De comiti-  
bus Dacia.*

**S**ON after com an erle, Alfden light þat hunde,  
 Aryued vp with Inguar, þat slouh S. Edmunde.  
 Upon þe kýng Alfrid werre son began,  
 Bot þorgh þe gode Northeren slayn wer ilkaman.  
 Sex & fifty batailes Alfrid ouercam,  
 After nyen & tuenty zere þe dede him hiþen nam,  
 & sex monthes mo, þus þe storý said.  
 At Wynchestre in tounge in þe abbay is he laid.  
 þe date þat certeyn es in boke writen here,  
 Nouþer more no lesse, þan nien hundreth zere.

*Edwardus  
rex.*

**A**FTER þis Alfride kom Edward þe olde,  
 Faire man he was & wis, stalworth & bolde.  
 At London, at Saynt Poule's, toke he þe croune,  
 & purueied his parlement of erle & baroune.  
 He seid vnto þam alle, þat purueied suld it be,  
 þat in alle þe lond suld be no kýng bot he.

þe smale kýnges of þe lond all were þei comen,  
Of Scotland, of Wales, of Kombirlond, þei nomen  
Inglis & Daues, & þe gode Norreis,  
Duke, erle & baron, & oþer knýghtes curteis,  
þei said in þat parlement, þorgh conseile of alle,  
þat Edward felle best be chese, oþer suld non falle.

**N**OW is Edward chosen kýng at þer parlement,  
& þe lordschip of þe lond alle tille him went.  
Fourtene childre he gate opon tuo wifes,  
Sex sonnes & auht douhtres, þo were faire lyues.  
Athelstan, Edwýn, Edgar, Edmond, Edred, Edwý:  
Hilde was his douhter, was kald Hilden lady,  
Elfed & saynt Eadburgh þat lyued holy life,  
þe ferth Octouian Mary þat Emperoure's wife.  
þei passed of þis world, whan þei were right zonge,  
What þer names were I kan telle no tonge.  
In Edward's tend zere aryued vp in Kent  
þre kýnges & sex dukes, þat out of Danmark went.  
In to Lyndsay brouht þei him týng,  
& purueied oste & dight him als a douhtý kýng.  
At Teteford in Northfolk his baner was displaid,  
þe þre kýnges were slayn, þe toþer were affraied,  
þat þei went to þer schippes, so hard he sette his chace,  
Edward had þe maistri, & þanked God his grace.  
He com neuer to bataile, þat he ne had þe maistrie.  
Foure & tuentý zere was he kýng, & þorgh no folie  
Neuer in his lyue a fote of lond he les.  
Scotland & Cumberland & Wales he had in pes,

Cornwalle, Lyndsay & Kent, Dorsette & Surreie.  
 He ligges at Wynchestre, þe soth it is to seie.  
 þe date of God nien hundreth, & four & tuenti mo,  
 Whan dede his lyfe sundred, þe folk for him was wo.

*Athelstanus rex.*

**A**FTER Edward, þe olde regned Athelstan,  
 þat was his eldest sonne, & a noble man.  
 þe baronage & þe clergie were somond to Kyngeston,  
 þer wes his fest holden, & gyuen him þe croune.  
 þe next zere þere after his coronment,  
 þe Walsh men, þat luf no pes, on him ran & brent.  
 Bot Athelstan þe maistrie wan, & did þam mercie crie,  
 & alle Northwales he set to treuage hie.  
 Tuenti pounde of gold be zere, þre hundreth of siluer clere,  
 & þer to fyue hundreth kie ilk zere to his lardere.  
 Siluer for Southwales not a ferþing noke

*De Tributo Walliæ.*

Oþer treuage he sette, a þousand kie'ne toke.  
 ¶ þe ferth zere of þe regne Owald a werreoure,  
 Constantyn of Scotland kyng was & traitoure,  
 Ouwer kyng of Wentland, þese þre with þer powere  
 Werred on Athelstan with oste fulle austere.  
 Bot Athelstan, þorgh Gode's grace, so with þam fore,  
 þei were sayn to ask pes, & feaute þei him suore.  
 þe tend zere of his regne sen he was crowned kyng,  
 Of Edwyn his broþer bifelle suilk a þyng.  
 At London in his courte with wiknes men him fond,  
 Athelstan did him bynd both fote & hond,  
 & kast him in tille Temse, whan it was most brým,  
 To chastise alle oþer he tok vengeance on him.

*Isti sunt qui  
 moxerunt  
 gueram  
 super A-  
 thelstanum  
 regem.*

*Athelstanus Rex.*

At myn vnderstandyng he wild, tak no mede  
 þat was ateynt of wikkednes, his broþer to dede gede.  
 Constantyn of Scotlond, þat I are of spak,  
 Brak his feaute sone, of treson it is lak,  
 & alle folk of Danmark with Constantyn held,  
 & slouh our Inglish men, wasted toun & feld.  
 Athelstan herd say, he went to Beuerlay,  
 & praied to þe bisshop Jon in fertre þer he lay,  
 þat he wild bede his bone, vntille þe Trinite,  
 & he suld gyue his kirke franchise & fe,  
 To haf & to holde als he was kyng leale.  
 Of him haf þei chartre seled with his seale.  
 Siben he went to Durham, & gaf Saynt Cutbert  
 Londes & lifes, with chartir aperte.  
 þe bisshop of his gift holdes his fe,  
 Siben he went to bataile, Constantyn to fle.  
 Constantyn he reymed, & did vnto stresse,  
 & wan þe lond ilk dele, & wasted alle Cathenesse,  
 & his son golden vnto his ostage.  
 Siben he turned to London, & his baronage.  
 Athelstan in Scotland a selcouth ded he one,  
 He smote depe at Donbarre, an elne in þe stone.

De falsitate  
regis Sco-  
torum.

Misio rex  
Karolus ro-  
gi Athel-  
stano pro  
sorore sua  
Hilda, lege  
per totum.

**A**T þe feste of our lady þe Assumpcion,  
 Went þe kyng fro London toward Abindon.  
 þider out of France fro Charles kyng of fame  
 Com þe of Boloyn, Adulphus was his name,

---

.<sup>1</sup> *Princeps hujus legationis fuit Adulphus, filius Balde-  
wini Comitis Flandriæ; ex filia regis Edwardi Ethel-  
switha* Guil. Malsb. de gestis regum Anglorum, p. 28.

& þe duke of Burgoyn, Edmunde sonne, Reýnere.  
 þe brouht kýng Athelston present withouten pere,  
 Fro Charles kýng sanz faile thei brouht a gonfaynoun  
 þat Saynt Mõrice in bataile befor þe legioun,  
 & scharp lance þat thrilled Ihesu side ;  
 & a suerd of gold, in þe hilté did men hide  
 Tuo of þo nayles, þat war þorh Ihesu fete  
 Tached on þe croýce, þe blode þei out lete,  
 & som of þe thornes þat don were on his heued,  
 & a fair pece þat of þe croýce leued,  
 þat Saynt Heleýn sonne at þe bataile wan

Of þe Soudan of Askalone, his name was Madan.

¶ þan blewe þe trumpes fulle loud & fulle schille,  
 þe kýng com in to þe halle, þat hardý was of wille.  
 þan spak Reýner, Edmunde sonne, (for he was messengere)  
 “ Athelstan, my lord þe gretes, Charles þat has no pere.  
 “ He sendes þe þis present, & sais, he wille him býnde  
 “ To þe þorh Ilde þi sistere, & tillé alle þi kýnde.  
 Befor þe messengers was þe maiden brouht,  
 Of body so gentille was non in erth wrouht.  
 No non so faire of face, of spech so luffly,  
 Scho granted befor þam alle to Charles hir body,  
 & so did þe kýng, & alle þe baronage.  
 Mykelle was þe richesse, þei purucied hir passage,  
 & led hir vnto France, spoused forto be,  
 Athelstan leues stille, & passed not þe se.  
 In þe zere after þat Ilde wedded was,  
 Constantýn of Scotlond did git more trispas.

*Iterum de  
 perjura-  
 tione regis  
 Scottorum,  
 & de bello  
 Dacorum.*



He brouht þe kýng Anlaf aryued vp in Humber, e,  
Seuen hundreth schippes & fiftene, so fele were þe numbere.  
Athelstan herd say of þer mykelle oste,  
He & Edmunde his broþer dight þam to þat coste.  
At Bruneshurgh on Humber þei gan þam assaile,  
Fro morn vnto euen lastell þat bataile.  
At þe last to þer schippes þe kýng gan þam chace,  
Alle away þei fled, þat was of Gode's grace.  
Bot þe most partie algate was slayn,  
þat with life fled I trowe þei were fulle fayn.  
Whan þe kýng Anlaf sauh his folk lorn,  
He fled vnto Danmark þer pere he was born.  
At þe Pask after he ryued in þe South,  
At a haven of Sandwich, in þe portis mouth.  
Whan he was aryued, þe folk was affray,  
& com vnto Wynchestre þer þe kýng lay.  
He brouht with him a deuelle, a hogge Geant,  
Wele haf ge herd telle, he hight Colibrant.  
Anlaf sent messengers vnto Athelstan,  
& bad him zekel þe lond, or fynd a noþer man  
To fight with Colibrant, þat was his champion ;  
Who felle to haf þe lond, on þam it suld be don.  
Athelstan tok a day, a parlement did make,  
If any ageyn Colibrant þe bataile durst take.  
He fond no man þat durst, for non had myght,  
With Colibrant alone in bataile to fight.  
þan praied Athelstan to Criste & sorè wepe,  
& God sent him tokenyng on nyght als he slepe,

þat he suld fynd a palmere orly at morn,  
 At þe South gate, alone as he was born,  
 & if he wild praie him, for Jhesu Criste's loue,

Ecce de  
 bello inter  
 Guýdonem  
 de Werwyk  
 & Coli-  
 brant.

He wild do þe bataile, & þei suld be aboue.

þat was Guý of Werwik, as þe boke sais.

þer he slouh Colibrant with hache Daneis.

Anlaf turned agayn, I trowe him was wo,

He & alle his to schippe gan þei go.

God delyuerde Athelstan of many hard affaies,

Sextene gere was he kýng & seuentene daies,

Síþen at Gloucestre dede euelle him toke.

Bot quik he out went, so sais my boke.

Pers can not say where he lies,

Bot as I herd telle I say myn auýs.

De fine  
 Athelstani  
 regis.

Men say he was fonden in þe North cuntre

At Hexham now late, I wene soth it be:

Anno  
 Domini  
 mcccemo.  
 xl.

þe date whan he died of God men tellis by

Nien hundreth wynter & fulle fourty.

Edmundus  
 Rex.

**A**FTER Athelstan þe kýng was Edmunde his broþer,

þe northren did him desceit, & ches þam a noþer.

One Anlaf þei ches, & crowned him for kýng.

Alle þe North ende was in his kepýng,

& alle þe South ende till Edmunde þei drouh.

Upon þe fals Norreis Edmunde wan inouh.

Fýue cites he wan, þat þei held for þers,

þat whilom was ancestres, fro heires vnto heires,

Lýcoln & Derby, & \* Southampton,  
 Leycestre & Stamford, þise fyue wan Edmon,  
 & yit þe kýng Anlaf so hard gan he chace,  
 þat he asked Cristendom opon Gode's grace.  
 Boþe he & Reynald was Guthefride's sonne,  
 He exilde þam out of þe North, þer þei wild wonne.  
 & gaf to Malcolme, kýng of Scotlande,  
 þat he suld be him leale, bi se & bi lande.

**T**HE fiftre zere of his regne he went to Canterbiri,  
 þe feste of S. Austine, to hold it fulle myri.  
 A thefe of his courte was outlawed late,  
 þe kýng knew him fulle wele, he mette him in þe gate.  
 Whilom he serued in his panterie,  
 & was outlawed for a felonie.  
 þe kýng tok þis pantelere, & strangled him right þore,  
 & he wonded þe kýng dedely fulle sore.  
 Seuen zere was he kýng, & seuen monethis mo.  
 At Gloucestre is he laid, þe pantelere did him slo.  
 þe date was nien hundreth fourþty & seuen.  
 þis was þe selcouthest cas, þat haf herd neuen.

Demirabili  
 morte regis.

Anno  
 Domini.  
 DCCCCLXVII.

**E**DRED after Edmunde had þe coroune,  
 Vpon þe Pask day, at London toun.  
 Siþen of all his barons he tok feaute,  
 Bot þe Northeren men held him no leaute.

Edredus  
 rex, frater  
 Edmuudi.

\* Snotingham (vel Notingeham) aliis. Neque aliter quidem tam apud Florentium quam & Chron. Saxon. Stafford pro Stamford habet Speedus, secus atque auctores vet.

Eýlrike of Danmark for kýng þei him ches,  
 & forsokke Edrede, þer were þei les.  
 Edrede with powere vntille þe North went,  
 Alle þe toun of Ripon he wasted & brent,  
 Northumberland was in affray for Edred comýng,  
 þei did doun Eýlrik þe Danes kýng,  
 & went out of þe lond with his rascaile,  
 Was he not so hardý at stand to bataile.  
 Alle þo Norreis, þat had bien so fikelle,  
 Pes forto haue þei glosed him fulle mykelle.  
 þer londcs & þer rentes were at his wille,  
 He gaf S. Cutbert þerof, git þei hold it stille.  
 Alle þe regne hólý was þat týme in his hand,  
 & erles & barons þat wer in þe land,  
 So wele were þei chastised, alle com tille his grith,  
 þat þe pes of þe lond þe sikered him alle with.  
 Auht gere was he kýng, his daics alle filled.  
 At Wýnchestre he lies, so himself willed.  
 þe date nien hundreth fifty & fyue,  
 Whan þat kýng Edred passed of þis lýue.

Anno  
 Domini.  
 dccccmo.  
 lv°.

Edgarus  
 rex homo  
 sanctus, pater  
 Sancti  
 Edwardi  
 martyris.

**A**FTER Sir Edred was his broþer Edwý,  
 He resceýued þe croune of þe seignory.  
 So foole a man of his lifc non was seene,  
 þe hie men of þe lond conseild þam bituene,  
 To do doun Edwý at a parlement,  
 & tille his broþer Edgare gýf þe tenement.

S. Donstan þe bisshop was at his<sup>1</sup> coronment,  
 & of alle his ancestres was neuer better kȳng.  
 He was boþe gode & wȳs in alle his dedis,  
 & right vnderstandȳng, to help at alle nedis.  
 Mikille he wirschiped God, & serued our Lady,  
 þe abbey of Rumeȳe he fessed richely,  
 With rentes fulle gode & kirkes of pris,  
 He did þer in of Nunnes a hundreth ladies.

¶ Edgare forto fle lichery of lyfe,  
 His barons gaf him conseile for to take a wȳfe.  
 Elfred þe faire, þe duke's douhter Ormere.  
 He gate of hir S. Edward, þat is þe martere.  
 Dame Elfred died sone, ȳit wild he luf mare,  
 He tok bittere Estrild, duke's douhter Orgare.  
 Of hir lord Edgar had scho sonnes tueȳe,  
 Edmunde, þat in his tende ȳere at Peterburgh gan dete.  
 Eylred was the zongcst, & Estrild fulle dere.  
 Wo was in his tȳme, as ȳe may after here.  
 Edgar þer fader had alle Ingland,  
 He went to Kerlion, þe Walsch men he band  
 With homage & feaute, in right & in lawe,  
 Kȳmak kȳng of Scotland, he com for fȳne awe,  
 & Malcolme of Combirland was at his wille,  
 Maccum kȳng of þe Iles, Dufnald fitz Omere,  
 Sifreth & Huwalle, Jacob & Juthille,  
 He did þain mak feaute, als right was & skille.  
 Siþen he went aboute, kirkes vp to raise,  
 Abbayes forto help, were fallen in miseȳse.

Omnes isti  
 fecerunt  
 homaginum  
 regi Ed-  
 gario.

<sup>1</sup> F. coronȳng.

He gaf to Crouland, in þe Abbot tyme Gountere,  
 þre myle of seignorie, about his aptere.  
 Auhten zere Edgar reigned kyng & sire,  
 He lies in tombe in þe abbey of Glastenbire.

**O**F Edgar þe kyng þus fond I writen,  
 Pers telles þe same þing, at his boke may ze witen.  
 Sen four & tuenti zere, þat he in crth was laid,  
 An abbot of Glastebiri, Edward his name is said,  
 He did mak a toumbe, Edgar ia to lay,  
 Bot it was ouer litelle, in alle maner way.  
 þei brak in tuo his schankes, to mak þe toumbe mete,  
 þe blode was boþe warme & fresh, þat of þe schankes lete.  
 þe abbot wex alle blynd, þat did his bones breke.  
 þe bisshop Owald herd of þat miracle speke,  
 Renstat at þe toumbe, he tok vp þe bones,  
 In a fertre þam laid a riche for þe nones.  
 þe date was nien hundreth sexti & þrittene,  
 He was a holy man þorgh miracle was sene.

Eccē demiraculo Sancti Edgari.

Anno  
 DCCCCMO.  
 LXXXIII°.

**A**FTER Edgare was Edward his sonne,  
 Regnand in alle þe lond, als his fader was wonne.  
 S. Dunstan corouned him bifor þe baronage  
 & oþer bisshopes inouh, fulle zonge he was of age.  
 A gode man he was, & stalworth knyght als stele.  
 In Ingland neuer before was kyng lufed so wele,  
 Ne of þe folk strange non honourd so mykelle,  
 þe right lawes did he loke for fals men & fikelle.

De Sancto  
 Edwardo  
 martire.

Boþe riche & pouere he zemed in euenhede,  
Non suld do oþer wrong for couetise nõ drede.  
Estrild his stepmoder scho þouht oñ felonie.  
Tille wikked men scho spak, Edward to asprie.  
þei did als scho þam bad, & wroulit þam seluen wouh,  
At Koruesgate þorgh desceit Edward kýng þei slouh.  
þre zere was he kýng, þe storý þus me said,  
His body at Westmýnstere in fertre is it laid.  
þe date was nien hundreth sexti & sextene,  
þat was alle forwondred, for his dede com tene.

Ecce de  
morte ejus  
anno.  
DCCC<sup>mo</sup>;  
LXXXV<sup>o</sup>.

**U**NTO Kýngeston þe first wouke of May  
Com S. Dunstan, oþon a Sonenday,  
& of alle þe lond erle & baroun,  
To Eilred, Edgar sonne, bitauht him þe coroun.  
S. Dunstane hette him wele, in sorow his life to lede,  
In alle his life ilk dele, of suerd he mot him drede.  
S. Dunstan tille him spak wrothfulle wordes of eye,  
How þei of his mouth brak, listen, I salle zow seye.  
“ Eilred,” said Dunstan, “ þi broþer Edward was slayn  
“ þorgh þi moder Estrild, þer of scho was fulle fayn.  
“ For slauhter of þi broþer has þou þe coroune,  
“ Wele weld it salle þou neuer, þou has it þorh tresoune.  
“ þof alle Edgar þe gate, Estrild þi moder ware,  
“ To þe reame has þou nõ right, bot þorgh slauhter care.  
“ For þe luf of þe þi broþer did scho slo,  
“ þerfor þou & þine salle weld it with wo.  
“ & sone after þi daies þe reame salle men se  
“ Gouerned þorgh aliens kýnde, & euermore fro þe.

Ecce ea  
quæ Sanc-  
tus Dun-  
stanus pro-  
misit Re-  
gi Eilredo.

Eilredus  
coronatus  
est.

¶ Whan Dunstan had thus said, bifor alle þat were þore,  
 & taken had his leue of barons lesse & more,  
 Eilred þe zonge kȳng toward London gede,  
 A rede cloude in þe skie about Ingland gan sprede,  
 So mykelle blode it rayned, þe erth wex alle rede,  
 þe folk was affaied, & alle heuy als lede.

Ecce pri-  
 mum tor-  
 mentum.

¶ þe toþer zere next of his coronment,  
 þe Danes vp aryued, Souhamptone þei brent,  
 & robbed Cornwaile, þe folk were alle anoyed,  
 þat with Norwais Kerliou was destroyed,  
 þei com to London, & brent þe cite.  
 Eilred & þe barons, þat were of his meyne,  
 With þe erle of Herford held contek & fight,  
 þat þer heritage defend þei ne myght.

Eccesecon-  
 dum tor-  
 mentum.

Als alle þis sorow & wo was in þe gynnȳng,  
 Died S. Dunstan, men herd þe angels syng,

**J**USTYȆ & Godemunde, of Danmark dukes riche,  
 Aryued in Southfolk & brent Ipsewiche,  
 Men & women slouh, & robbed þorgh þe lond,  
 Tille þei com to Mideweie, cuntre non þei fond.  
 With þe erle of Kent þei countred at Medeweie,  
 þe maistrie of him þei wan, þei did his folk alle deie.  
 þe lerid & þe lewid, þat woned in þe South,  
 Sauh werre on ilk a side, þei wer in þe woulfe's mouth.  
 Ten ponde of gold bi zere for þe pes þei gaf  
 To Justy & Gudmund, þei tok alle riffe & raf.  
 To schip þei turned & went, & charged þam fulle wele,  
 Aryued in Danmark with robbery ilk a dele.



**I**N to Wales þat coste went Eilred pitously,  
 For to gadre him oste, if he mot haf maistrie.  
 In þat ilk tyme, as he to Wales went,  
 Tuo outlandes kыnges on þis lond hauens hent.  
 Anlaf of Norway, of Danmark kыng Suane,  
 Aryued in þis lond, to many wer þei baue.  
 þer ostes boþe at ons vnto London nam,  
 þei toun was warned wele, & wist þat þei cam.  
 Folk inouh redy was gadred, to þe cite  
 þei went egrelly, & did þo kыnges fle.  
 Fro London þei were dryuen, & com to Southampton.  
 Man & beste þei slouh, destroyed þe cuntre doun.  
 Eilred myght nouht to stand þam ageyn,  
 For pes he þam bisoult, to gyf þam a certeyn.

Tercium  
 tormentum.

**S**umma. ¶ Fyue þousand pound of siluer þe Danes kыng toke. Quartum  
tormentum.  
 þe went to þer schippes, & to Danmark schoke.  
 & many of þo Danes priuely were left,  
 & busked Westward, forto robbe eft.  
 Wilton had þei taken, Southampton also,  
 Cornwaile & Wales bouwed þam vnto.  
 þe cuntre of Dorseth, lond & tenement,  
 Alle had þei wasted, fro Seuerne vnto Kent.  
 Eilred on a stound þe told of þat wo,  
**S**umma. Four & tuenti þousand poude he gaf away to go,  
 To haf pes in his lyue, þe lond no more schende.  
 þe Danes tok þe siluer, to Danmark gan wende.

**F**OUR & tuenti wýnter lasted þis sorow,  
 If he had pes at euen, he had non at morow.  
 For so hette S. Dunstan, he suld alle his lyue  
 With werre his lond welde, & with his suerd strýue.  
 Now has Eilred nede of help & socoure,  
 For boldenes he wild him býnd to som þerde in boure.  
 Fulle so frendes he had, & sele foos inowe,  
 Unto þe duke of Normundie he went for to wouwe.  
 He wedded þe duke's douhter, faire Emme þe blaunche,  
 þre bouwes of þam spronge, þe ton es holy braunche.  
 Edmunde Irenside was eldest of þo þre,  
 þe to high Edward, þe þrid Alfrid hight he.  
 I þorgh of Sir Richard, duke of Normundie,  
 Eilred gede þorgh his lond, priuely to spie  
 Euerilkon þe Danes, & smertly bouhde  
 Or smýte of þer hedes, ay as men þam founde.  
 þus had Eilred þe lond at his wille,  
 Bot þe duke died sone, & þat felle him fulle.  
 þan was Eilred socoure sone away went.  
 Tíþing com to Danmark, þat he þe Danes schent.  
 Suane þe Danes kýng þerwith had enuy.  
 To aryue on Hingland he dight his nauy.  
 Whan he was aryued, he sent fulle baldely  
 Messengers to Eilred, als tille his enny.  
 þis was his message, his Danes wild he venge  
 Ageyn him in bataile, to renne & to renge.  
 Eilred our kýng his help had he lorn  
 Of þe duke of Normundie, þat dede was befor.

De filiis  
 Eilredi re-  
 gis.

Id est, through aid of.

Suane

Suane, þe Danes kȳng, was of so grete strength,  
 þat he destroyed þis lond in brede & in length.  
 Fyue wynter holȳ lasted þat werre,  
 þat neuer Eilred our kȳng durst negh him nerre.  
 Noiþer bi Norþ no bi South com him neuer help.  
 Wo was alle his comforth, of sorow mot he gelp.  
 þrittȳ þousand pounde vnto Suane hē sent,  
 Pes to hāf his lȳue, & þei to Danmark went.

**N**OW is kȳng Suane went tille his cuntre,  
 Eilred sent for Edrik to be his owen priue.  
 So fals a traytour in erth was non as he,  
 Of Lincolne he gaf him þat cuntre schire.  
 þe duke said vnto þe kȳng, “ Sir, I salle zow say,  
 “ For to saue zour lond wēle, a fulle siker way.  
 “ Do mak þre hundreth schippes opon þe sees koste,  
 “ To kepe þam of Norweie & þe Danes oste.  
 “ & if þe folk þerin be trewe vnto þe,  
 “ Doute þe of non enmys, þat comes vp-ōn þe.  
 ¶ þe sent to seke manȳ a schip wright  
 To þe toun of Sandwiche, þe nauie forto dight.  
 Whan Edrik it wist; þat þe schippes wer redȳ.  
 He sent to Norweie his lettres priuely,  
 Unto þe kȳng Anlaf, tille Ingland to com.  
 Anlaf & Sir Thurkille aryued vp in þei nom.  
 Anlaf & Thurkille aryued vp in Kent,  
 Alle about þei robbed, & tok þat þei mot hent.  
 þe folk of þe cuntre to þis conseilc þei ches,  
 To gȳf þam four hundreth pounde, forto lȳue in pes.

þe Danes tok þat siluer, & turned eft ageyn,  
& voided þe cuntre, þe folk was fullē feyn.

¶ Bot in þe zere after, obowen Grimsby  
Eft þei gan arýue þorgh sonde priuely,  
þorgh fals Edrike, þat þam þider hasted.  
Lincolne & Lyndeseie þei stroied & wasted.  
Fals Edrike went, pes with þam to make.  
Fourti þousand pounde he did þam take,  
þat non in alle þe cuntre more suld be piled,  
Bot euer was Eilred fouly begiled.

¶ Whan þe kýng wende, haf pes in his lyue,  
Suane of Danmark at Sandwýche gan arýue,  
& brouht hider with him his sonne, þat hight Knoute,  
þe folk vntille Humber to Suane gan þei loufe.  
Alle was þorgh Edrik, þat mykelle was to blame.  
He was þe kýnge's conseiloure, & did him mykelle schame,

**A**NE erle in þe North, Uctred men kalde,  
He com vnto Gaynesburgh, of Suane forto halde,  
Forto lyue in pes, & werre forto fle,  
He com vnto Suane, & mad him feaute.  
Of the North Suane had a partie, þe South he desired,  
Ostes tille him his sonne fast þei atired.  
Knoute went to þe North, Suane in to þe South,  
þan was Eilred in þe wolfe's mouth.  
Suane toward Oxenford went fullē smertly,  
& in þat ilk toun did he krie a krie,  
þat alle þat him serued, & of his meýne ware,  
Man, woman & childe, suld þei alle forfare,

Kastels suld þei bête doun, kirkes suld þei breune,  
 Boþe citez & tounes, þat þei mot se or ken.  
 Of þe toun of Wýnehestre feaute had he at wille,  
 Siþen he went to London, þat hated he fulle ille.  
 þe bode com to þe kýng, þat soiorned þer in,  
 þat þe kýng Suane þe toun wild he wýn.  
 A Danes erle, \* with þe Kurkille he hight,  
 He hialp our kýng defend þe toun at his myght.  
 Kýng Suane gaf assaut; þe walles to assaile,  
 Mýkelle folk he les, & týnt his trauaile.  
 Four & tuenti þousand in Tenise alle at ones  
 Wer dronkled of Danes, þe Deuelle haf þer bones.

**SUANE** turned fro London, alle þorgh felonie,  
 & went to Wallýngford, to mak his maistrie.  
 Siþen he zede to Bathe, & sette þe toun on fire.  
 Achelmare tille him felle, an Erle of Deuenschíre.  
 Achelmare with feaute to Suane he him bonde,  
 Fro Wellis vnto London alle felle to his honde.  
 Suane toward Denmark sped him fulle fast,  
 & ostage of Londou he had at þe last.  
 Ilk cried on oþer, now is Suane kýng  
 Ouer alle Ingland, & Eilred has no þing.  
 † Eilred is so reýmed of his tresorie,  
 His wife & his childre he sent to Normundie.  
 þe bisshop of Londone he hight Sir Alphanie  
 Led Edward & Alfride, & Emme þat was ladie.

Eilredus  
 trausfreta-  
 vit versus  
 Norman-  
 niam.

\* Vulgo vocant *Turkillum*.

IN þe wýnter after Eilred went ouer þe se  
 Unto \* Nomundie, with his wife to be.  
 Whan þe duke herd say, þat Eilred þider cam,  
 With mykelle nobley ageyn Eilred he nam.  
 Resceyued him curtasly, & said, “ lefe & dere,  
 “ My lond is at þi wille, tille þe socoure is here.”  
 þe date a þousand was, & mo bi fourty zere,  
 þat Eilred & his childre soiorned with duke Richere.

Anno  
 Domini. mo.  
 XL<sup>o</sup>.

[ Now comes Suane est ageyn with Criste's malison,  
 þe lond leid to taliage so mykelle on ilk a toun,  
 þat noiþer erle no þaron of alle þer heritage  
 Myght not lyue þer on, to gif þer taliage.  
 Treuage als he asked of S. Edmunde þing,  
 þe corsáynt & þe kirke he thrette for to brennyng,  
 & bot he had his askyng, þe lond he suld destroye.  
 To Gaynesburgh he kald þe barons forto noye.  
 He said befor þam alle, of S. Edmunde's lond  
 He wild haf treuage, or brenne alle þat he fond.  
 Alle was wele, tille euen after þe soupere  
 He zede about, & plaied with þo þat were him nere.  
 He sauh out of þe firmament an armed knyght com doun,  
 þat was S. Edmunde, cruelle als a leon,  
 Suerd girded & lance in hand, þan gan Suane to crie,  
 Non sauð bot he one, he said, “ now salle I die,  
 “ Help knyghtes, if ge may, I may no ferrer go.  
 “ I se Edmunde with me wroþe, I wote he wille me slo.  
 With þat word he felle doun dede as any stone,  
 Life & saule to Helle, & flesh, blode & bone.

De morte  
 Suane.

\* Sic

Now

**N**OW is Suane dede, & wonnes with Sathanas,  
 þe Danes ches Knoute to kȳng of Danmark þat he was,  
 & Ingland he seised for his fader conquest,  
 Grete taliage laid he þeron bi Esten & bi West.  
 þe folk wild not suffre to be treuwageres,  
 Bot sent after Eilred bi certeyn messengers,  
 & praied him to com home, þe crowne zeme & take,  
 þe lordschip of Knoute kȳng wild þei alle forsake.  
 ¶ Eilred sent tille Ingland Sir Edward his sonne  
 With his letter sealed, & þanke wild he þam conne,  
 & bliþely tille Ingland wild he com agayn,  
 If he myght on þam troste, þat þei were certayn.  
 Alle þe comons of þe lond with letter þam bond,  
 & ilkȳn sette his seale þerto with his own hond,  
 þat if he wild com ageyn, þe lond forto were,  
 Neuer more to Danes kȳng faiþe suld þei bere.  
 Whan he wist þet wille, he hied hider suythe,  
 þei resceyued him fulle faire, & were of him blythe.  
 With him alle, þei said, þei wild lyue & deie  
 Alle holy þe lond, bot þei of Lyndseie  
 Eilred þer lege lord him þei alle forsoke,  
 & þer hede kȳng Knout þei þan toke.

Eilredus  
 fugavit  
 Knoutum  
 regem, &  
 iterum re-  
 gnum cepit

**N**OW rises Eilred, & gadres oste stark,  
 & chaces kȳng Knoute in tille Danmark.  
 Whan þe Danes were out, þat timbred him his tene,  
 Lyndeseie he destroyed quite alle bidene.  
 It was þam self to wite, þei lete of him so lite,  
 þe wrong was alle þairs, þe kȳng did bot right.

¶ Whan

¶ Whan þe kȳng wende, þat pes suld forþe go,  
 þe fals Erle Edrik bigan eft a wo.  
 Tuo old gentille men Edrik did forfare,  
 þe ton hight Sigiferd, þe toþer Sir Morgare,  
 For couetise of þer londes, & seignorie þat þei helde,  
 & for þei were a partie smȳten in to elde.  
 þe fals Edrik did lede Sigiferde's wife  
 Unto Malmcestre, hir name wás Aldife.  
 Edmunde Irenside, Eilrede's sonne,  
 þat euer in þis lond stille wild he wonne,  
 Of þis ilk treson he herd oft speke,  
 & of fals Edrik fayn wild he him wreke.  
 He toke Sigiferde's wife, withouten his fader leue,  
 & wedded hir at þe kirke, Edrik forto greue.  
 Whan he had hir wedded, he went also quik,  
 & oute of alle þo londes he kast þe erle Edrik,  
 Of alle þat tenement, þat boþe þe brethres ware,  
 þat longed to Sigiferd, & to Sir Morkare.

De Edmun-  
do Irenside.

**N**OW is Eilred our kȳng fallen in sekenes,  
 He lies at Eueshám, his abbay it es.  
 His eldest sonne Edmunde knȳghtes gode he sekas,  
 Fro Douere vnto Wales þe folk tille him mekas.  
 & þe erle Edrik he gadred mȳkelle pride,  
 Knȳghtes & serganz ou Lyndesay side.  
 For to slo Edmunde þorgh tricherie,  
 Bot Edmunde es wele warned of his felonie.  
 Edmunde bi messengers þe erle he diffies,  
 Edrik in tille Danmark to Knoute sent spies,

For to



For to com till London sone suld he assay,  
 Aryued þat he ware of gole þe tuelft day.  
 Knoute bi his soude Edrik ageyn grette,  
 To aryue he suld fonde þe day þat he him sette.

**C**OMEN is Knoute to cuntre, to ride he him hastis,  
 Man & woman to slo, he robbes & wastis.  
 A gode erle of Warwik was don to þe suerd,  
 þorgh þat fals Edrik, als he did Sigiferd.  
 Eilred was led to London, & seke gan þer lie.  
 Edmunde praied him of help priuely bi spie.  
 Londreies inow com till Edmunde,  
 & wastid alle & brent Leicestre alle down.  
 Bot þe fals Edrik did his quaintise,  
 þat Edmund with Knoute mette in non wyse.  
 Knoute & Edrik þei seised þorgh tresone  
 Bokyngham & Bedford, þe toun of Huntynghone,  
 Lincolne & Notyngham, þe toure of Northampton.  
 Siþen went to Donkastre & vntille Aluerton,  
 & alle Northumberland it was at þer wille.  
 Edmunde & þe erle Uctred þat tyme held þam stille.  
 To London vnto Eilred hasted þei þer wele,  
 For bodword men brouh, þe kyng suld sone deie.  
 Whan Edrik wist Edmond to London was gone,  
 His londes & his rentes he seised eft ilkone.  
 Eilred at London endid his life,  
 Auht & þrittý wynter he regned with strife.  
 þat tyme he died in peyn & in wo,  
 þe date was a þousand & sextene mo.

De tradi-  
 tione  
 Edrik.

Mortuus est  
 Eilredus  
 rex anno  
 Domini  
 millesimo  
 c. xvi.

Now

Knoutus  
rex Daciae  
factus est  
rex An-  
gliae.

**N**OW is Eilred biried, þat mykette wo bade.  
þe clergie & þe baronage samned at a reade,  
& com to Southampton, & corouned Siþ Knoute.  
þe burgeis of London were wroþe & stoute,  
& said þei suld fond to felle Knoute's pride.

Edmundus  
Irenside co-  
ronatus a-  
pud Lon-  
done.

þei corouned for enuy Edmunde Irenside.  
þerof were þei paied alle þe North cuntre,  
þe com alle to London to mak him feaute.  
Knoute gadred him an oste, on Edmunde he ran,  
& Edmunde on him ageyn, as a douhty man,  
& trauailed sore Knoute, neuer he blanne,  
Whan wend haf left, Edmunde biganne.  
Tuo zere þei werred with many trauailes,  
In þo tuo zeres were sex grete batailes.  
In the sex batailes was many a man slayn.  
At þe last þei acorded, þe lond was fulle fayn.  
Edmunde of þe lond had þe haluendele,  
He regned bot tuo zere, no more his tyme felle

Mortuus est  
Edmundus  
Irenside  
Anno. m<sup>o</sup>.  
xviii<sup>o</sup>.

He lies at Glastenbire toubmed, as I wene,  
þe date of Criste a þousand & mo bi aultene.

**W**HAN God had don his wille of Edmunde Irenside,  
Knoute vnto London com with grete pride.  
He asked þe barons in þat parlement,  
If he schewed a þing, oþerwaies he ment:  
If Edmunde þe kyng, whan to acorde went,  
If he saued to his heyers oþer lond or tenement.  
Ikon said, þat Edmunde þe kyng  
Spak no word þer of, at þer sauhillyng.

Wharfor þe barons granted him ilkone,  
Knoute to be coroune, & haf it alone.

**WHAN** Knoute had reseýued boþe þe seignories,  
He parted þe lond in foure parties.

Alle þe West cuntre him seluen he held,  
Fals Edrik gaf he Lýndeseie of Lýncolne þe scheld.

Vnto þe erle Thurkille he gaf Estangle,  
Northfolk & Southfolk, sicacie men Iangle.

To þe erle Uctred Northumberland he toke,  
þe pes to mayntene þe suore alle on þe boke.

¶ þan tok kýng Knoute alle his homages,  
þat cleýmed to hold of him þer heritages.

Edmunde had a sonne, & childre no mo.

þorgh Edrike's conseile Knoute did him slo,

& tok quene Emme & wedded hir to wife,

þorgh Edrike's conseile, scho scorted his life.

¶ Knoute on a day bi his wife satte,

Of Edrike's treson scho warned him of þat.

“ Listen me, lord Knoute, if it be þi wille,

“ How he betraied mý lord, & mý sonne fulle ille.

“ Whilom Eilred mý lord he him bitraist to zow,

“ & mý sonne Edmunde þorgh treson he slouh,

“ & if he regne long he salle haf þe same,

“ He was neuer with no man, þat he ne did him schame.

¶ þe kýng one on þe morn went to London,

His zole forto hold was his encheson.

Knoute þouht on þat tale, þat his wife him told,

& siben ateyned Edrik þorgh treson of old.

þe fer þe day of þe fest, no lenger it was,  
 Edrik was hanged on þe toure, for his trispas.  
 þan said þe quene, “ þat Edrik þe Giloure  
 “ Had not fully dome, þat felle to traytoure.  
 “ Traytours with runtyes suld men first drawe,  
 “ ʒa dame,” said þe kýng, “ bot he salle haf þe law,  
 “ þat his body salle harg in colde & in hote,  
 “ Schame tille alle his kýnd, þat it sees & wote.

*Knoutus  
 divisit re-  
 gnum filiis  
 suis.*

**K**NOUTE of his body gate sonnes þre,  
 Tuó bi tuo wifes, þe þrid in jolifte.  
 Bi þe first had he Suane, he was eldest broþer.  
 Bi Emme, þe second wife, Hardeknoute anoþer.  
 Harald he had geten on his playeng,  
 Knoute lused him best, he was his derlyng.  
 Olaf in Norweie regned fulle stoute,  
 & bare him oþer strange to þe kýng Knoute.  
 Knoute com with his kýthe, þat kant was & kene,  
 & chaced him out of Norweie quyte & clene.  
 þan was he kýng of Danmark, Inglond & Norweie,  
 Danmark was his heritage, he conquered þe toþer tucie.  
 Malcolme, þe Scottis kýng, þat tyme died he,  
 Mathithade his broþer resceyued þe regante.  
 Knoute as for his chese he tok his homage,  
 Of þe kýngdom of Inglond he had þe heritage.  
 Knoute vnderstode welc, he mot not long lyue,  
 His sonnes in his lyue his londes wild he gyue.  
 Suane gaf he Norweie, (Olaf he chaced oute)  
 Danmark his heritage he gaf tille Hardeknoute.

He.

He assigned Harald to Ingland, to hað it in fee.  
 þus he gaf his londis tille his sonnes þre:  
 Seuentene gere was he kýng þorgh conquest & descetit,  
 At Westmýnstere he ligges in a tounge þurtreit.  
 A thousand was þe date & sex & þrittý,  
 Whan Knoute kýng died, so sais þe storý.

Anno. m<sup>o</sup>.  
 xxxvi<sup>o</sup>.

**H**ARALD was curteys & strong, of body auenant,  
 To be þer kýng & hede þe lond was wele ogrant.  
 Hardknoute of Danmark payd not withalle,  
 þat he suld bere þe coroune, for he was born thralle,  
 He gadred of Danes folk right inouh,  
 & did him toward þe se, & tille þis lond drouh.  
 Whan he was aryued, he sent to Harald, þ  
 & said, þat a bastard no kýngdom suld hald,  
 Bot if þat he it wan with suerd or with lance  
 Of tirant or of Sarazin, þorgh douhtýnes of chance:  
 & if he wille þe lond zeld, & to þe pes chese,  
 For he is mý broþer, he salle not alle lese;  
 & if he wille þorgh bataile, þer to wille I stand,  
 & bataile bituene vs wille not be semand.  
 Harald was fulle, a lone day he toke,  
 To here what þe barons þam boþe wild loke.  
 Vnder Southamptone was þer assemble,  
 Of Harald & Hardknoute, what suld bituex þam be.  
 For þei were breþer, þe luf was more sene,  
 þe barons portiond þe lond euen þam bituene,  
 Harald tille his parte suld haf alle þe Northende,  
 & alle þe Southside tille Harknout suld wende.

Haraldos  
 rex.

Parliamen-  
 tum suum  
 est.

To þat ilk lokyng boþe þei consent,  
In luf þei departed, Hardknout home went.

**I**N þat tyme, þat Harald & Hardknout held partie,  
Died þe duke Roberd, þat regned in Normundie.  
William was his heire, resecyued þe heritage,  
þat we kalle þe bastard, þat sette vs in seruage.  
Richard was Roberd fader, þe duke þat died beforne,  
Emme þe queene his douhter, of þe whilk was born  
Alfred & Edward, Hardknoute þe þrid,  
þe tuo first of Eilred, of Knoute Hardknoute tid:  
Alfred & Edward, þam of Eilred, kam,  
Wer with duke Roberd, now ere þei with William.  
þe childre tok to rede, to com vnto þis lond,  
To speke with þer moder, 'at Wynchester þei hir fond.  
Alfrede was eldest, non mot his wille withhald,  
To London he wild alle gate, to speke with kyng Harald.  
Godwyn, an erle of Kent, met with Alfred,  
Him & alle his feres vntille prison þam led.  
Of som smote of þer hedes, of som put out þer igene,  
Sex hundreth at Gildford did Godwyn slo & pýne.  
Alfred he was led to þe abbaý of Elyng,  
Bifor Godwyn himseluen þei did his igene out þring.  
He lyued bot þre daies, & gald to God þe gaste,  
þe bode com to his moder, scho did Edward in haste  
Wende to Normundie, for drede of Alfred pýne,  
To William, hir broþer sonne, was Edward's kosýne.  
Edward told William of Alfred alle þe case,  
& praied him of help, for he dred harder pase.

De obsecra-  
cione Al-  
fredi fratris  
Edwardi,  
& morte  
ejus.

& if he myght conuere Ingland, þat was his speyre,  
Edward sikerd him welc, to mak William his heyre,  
& bond him with skrite, his seale hýngand þerbi,  
& William hette him welc, to help him sikerly.

De ingrati-  
tudine &  
malicia  
Haraldi.

**N**OW duelles Harald þe kýng among his baronage,  
Tille Emme, Hardknoute's moder, he did a grete outrage,  
His broþer a foule despite, him self vilcýn skandrc.  
He chaced hir out of þe lond, & scho went vnto Flandres.  
Unto þe erlc Baldwyn, for scho was of his kýnde.  
He resecyued hir fulle faire inouh, he did hir fynde  
To brige in to Danmark, þer Hardknout was kýng.  
Of Ingland & of Flandres brouht men him tíþing,  
How kýng Harald chaced his moder of lond.  
What skille he had & whi Herdknout gernerd to fond.  
Now <sup>1</sup> Hardwnout toward Flandres dighes him day bi day.  
þat tyme at Westmýnstir Harald sore seke lay,  
Died & was þer laid, als my boke me told.  
Fýue gere was he kýng, & sex & fifty old.  
þe date of Criste þán was a þousand & fourti,  
Harald for his trespas git felle a vilany.

Mortuus est  
Haraldus.  
Harde-  
knoutus ob-  
tinuit re-  
gnum anno  
<sup>o</sup> M<sup>o</sup> L.  
vi<sup>o</sup>.

**N**OW is kýng Harald dede, þat whilom was so stoute,  
þe barons sent Flandres vnto Hardeknoute,  
& praied him com to lond, þe coroune if he wild take,  
If he wild vnderstond, non oþer kýng wild þei make.

<sup>1</sup> Sic.

<sup>2</sup> L. M<sup>o</sup>. XL<sup>o</sup>.

*Hardeknoutus Rex.*

Whan he wist þer wille, he hasted him þider suiþe.  
 þei gaf him þe coroune, & were of him fulle bliþe.  
 He studied, how he myght venge his moder despote,  
 He did Harald body do drawe vp also tite,  
 & þorgh þe podels it drouh, þat foule were & deppest,  
 & siþen in to Temse his body did he kest.  
 þat fischid in Temse on þe nyght, whan þei þer nettes vp wond,  
 þe body of Harald in a nette þei fond.  
 þei durst it not forth schewe, for þe kýng wer þei ferd.  
 Som frendes he had, þat biried it in kirke zerd.

**HARDEKNOUT** did charge þe lond in suilk treúwage,  
 þat noiþer erle no barone myght lýue for taliage.  
 So þat alle þe comonalte had him ageyn herte,  
 þat werd to him so fre; forþouht it sore & smette.  
 Hardeknoute wex fulle wroth toward Godwýn of Kent  
 For his broþer Alfred, þat he slouh & schent,  
 & to þe bisshop Alfrik, þat was his conseilere.  
 þei dred þe kýng folle sore, for he was fulle austere.  
 þe erle had frendes, to acorde þei gaf him þe weie.  
 þe erle was fulle quaynte, did mak a riche galeie  
 With fourscore armed knýghtes, in suilk apparaille dight,  
 þat so riche armes was neuer seue with sight.  
 & ilk knýght bare oñ his arme, be redý acounte,  
 Also mykelle brent gold, as sextene vnce amounte.  
 Withouten alle þis a hundreth knýghtes he toke.  
 Befor þe kýng & þe barons he suore oñ þe boke,  
 þat neuer Alfred his broþer þorgh him was dede,  
 No blynsfeld no slayn, bot þorgh Harald's rede.



þei said he did inouht, þe erle alle vplift,  
 þe kȳng forgaf his wraþe, reaceyued his gift.  
**I**n Saynt Edward's life it sais, he was forsuorn.  
 Bifor Edward himself he strangled & was lorn.  
 & I salle telle þat tale, or I ferrer go,  
 How falsnes brewes bale with him, and many mo.  
 In S. Edward tȳme þe erle suld with him ete,  
 A seruitour þer was, þat serued at þe mete,  
 He stombled at a chance, & felle on his kne,  
 þorgh þe toþer schank he ros, & serued in his degre.  
 "A ha!" said þe erle, "had þat schank ne bien,  
 "þou had ligger þer stille, þe risen suld non haf sene.  
 "God wote, said þe kȳng, so is it with nie nouh,  
 "& I had mȳ broþer Alfred, þat þou slouh,  
 "þof I had stombled þorgh mȳn vnmaȳn,  
 "He suld haf bien mȳ schank, & reised me agayn.  
 "þan hopes þou," said þe erle, "þat for me was he dede.  
 "I praye God if it wer so I strangle of þis brēde.  
 & putte a morselle in his mouth with þat ilk worde,  
 Bifor þe kȳng & þam alle he strangled at þe borde.  
 þe kȳng biheld him a stound, & sauh no repentance,  
 He bad drawe away þat hound, God has taken vengeance.

Narratio  
 le vita  
 sancti Ed-  
 wardi, de  
 omite God-  
 vino quali-  
 er strangu-  
 itus fuit  
 propter fal-  
 sum jura-  
 mentum.

**W**IIAN Harknout & þe erle wer at an assent,  
 þorgh alle his lond þe kȳng his sonde sent,  
 Forto reise þe treuage, þat on þe lond was sette,  
 Pader & Thurston to þat office were sette.  
 þe folk of Wircestrē ageȳn þe treuage spak,  
 Bituex þam & þe messengers broþesulle wōrdes brak.

*Hardeknoutus Rex.*

Pader & Thurston þer hedes þer þei left.  
 þe kȳng <sup>1</sup> Burd send oþer to ask treuage eft.  
 þe kȳng: sone herd say, his messengers were slayn,  
 Toward Wircestre he com with myght & mayn,  
 & comanded all þo, þat euer lufed him wele,  
 Alle Wirecestreschire spare it neuer a dele,  
 Noiþer man no beste, no manere no no toun.  
 þe cite of Wircestre þei brent euen doun.  
 Alle þei wasted quitely, & slouh þe folk fulle gerne,  
 Bot þo þat fled with þer godes to þe <sup>2</sup> ilde of Seuerde,  
 & þat wer in þe ilde duelled þer for drede,  
 Untille þe kȳng turned, & his wrath ouer zede.  
 ¶ Right als Hardeknout had left alle þat folie,  
 Com Edward, Eilred sonne, out of Normundie,  
 & Hardeknoute's broþer on his moder side,  
 Right heyre of þe lond, þorgh grace þat may betide  
 Edward was welcom tille Hardeknoute þe kȳng,  
 He bad his wille suld be, als his in alle þing.  
 Here now of Hardeknoute, how he endid his life.  
 Tille a duke of Danes he gaf his douhter to wif.  
 þe bridale was holden at þe maner of Lambithe.  
 After mete in þe haule þe kȳng mad alle bliþe.  
 In alle his joy makȳng, among þam ilkone,  
 Hē felle dede doun colde as any stone.  
 þei bare him to Wȳnchester, & biried him þore.  
 Tuo zere & a half he regned, & no more.

Hic venit  
 Edwardus  
 ad curiam  
 Hard-  
 knouti,

<sup>1</sup> *Alii Thurum vocant. Vide Flor. Wig. pag. 403. ed. 4to.*  
<sup>2</sup> *Civium vero multitudo in quandam modicam insulam, in*

*medio Sabrinæ fluminis sitam, quæ Beuerege nuncupatur, confugerant: &c. Flor. Wig.*

A þousand was þe date, & tuo & fourty.  
I trowe it was for vengeance, he died so sodenly.

**A**LL E þe baronage at Pask afterward,  
Com to Wynchester to coroune kyng Edward,  
Als he þat had gode right vnto þe regalte,  
In Ingland was non so right heyre as he.  
Whan he had regned fyue, & wele was aboue,  
Suane þe kyng of Danmark sent to him for loue,  
& praied him for his nauy to help him with summ,  
Bataile was gyuen in þe se, ageyn þe kyng Magnum,  
þat was kyng of Norweie, with wrong gan him trauaile.  
Edward sent him fifty schippes, to help at his bataile.  
For alle þe help þat he had, Magnus on him so ran,  
& chaced away Suane, & Danmark on him wan.  
Bot þis ilk Magnus lyued þer no longe.  
Est Suane, þe Danes kyng, þis lond did vnderfongè,  
& est vntille Edward Suane sent ageyn,  
& praied him bituex þam þe pes wer certeyn.  
Edward him granted, opon suilk a wise,  
þat neuer þe Dangelde for ne non of hise,  
Suld be chaleued for man of Danes lond,  
& Suane, kyng of Danmark, to þat conant him bond.  
þus was þe pes granted with skrite on boþe sides,  
& þe Dances gilde forgyuen, þat neuer est bitides.

Coronacio  
Sancti Ed-  
wardi.

**I**N þis Edwardes tyme a riche erle þan was,  
þat hight Godwyn of Kent, I red him ore in pas.

De comite  
Godwino  
& Haraldo  
filio ejus.

He

*Sanctus Edwardus Rex.*

He had a sonne Harald, heyre of his tenement.  
 Engle his wife he drofe away, & held in peyrmēt.  
 Egýne, þat was an abbes, out of hir hous had  
 Maugre hire wille in hordom his life with hir lad.  
 Ageyn the kýng Edward, & of his to wynne,  
 Godwýn þe Erle to werre wild bigynne.  
 Harald & Lofwýn, þise were his sonnes tueye,  
 Douhtý knýghtes þei were, after salle we seye,  
 Godwýn sent for frendes, knýghtes he had inowe,  
 þe kýng was at Gloucestre, & þiderward þei drowe.  
 Whan Edward perceyued, his herte was in studie,  
 How þat werre bigan oñ him so sodanly.  
 þe kýng zared hið folk, on haste alle þat he myght.  
 þe erle in his askýng had no mañer right.  
 Wherfor þe erle of Ba did Gowýn understand,  
 To leue alle his werre, & take þe lawe of land.  
 “ At London at þe benke schewé þer þin askýng,  
 “ Alle þat lawe wille, þou wynnes it of þe kýng.

**T**HE kýng com to London, with lawe to mote in benke,  
 Men sauh oñ þe kýnge’s side þer was no gile, no wrenke;  
 & for he had þe treuth, oñ his side were þe mo,  
 & Godwýn perceyued wele, oñ his side were bot fo.  
 þerfor Godwýn & his fro London went away,  
 He stode vntille no more, defaute he mad þat day.  
 þerfor was þe dome gyuen þorgh þe Justise,  
 To exile þe erle Godwýn, his sonnes & alle hise.

Godwýn

Godwȳn went to Flandres, vnto þe erle Baldwȳn.

At Bristow in tille Ireland schipped Harald & Lofwȳn.

¶ Whan þe erle was exiled, his sonnes tille Irland ouer,  
William þe Normant arȳued vp at Douer,  
In luf & in pes to speke with Sir Edward.  
He had bien in his courte, whan his hadde was more hard.  
He reseȳued him with joy, & with herte fullē glad.  
To se þe lond about þe duke with him þe lad.  
Whan he had soiornd long, & was in wille to go,  
Gode gistes he him gaf, or þat he went him fro.  
So þat alle of his were paid of þer parte.

Willelmus,  
dux Nor-  
mannie, ve-  
nit in An-  
gliam ad  
Sauctum  
Edwardum  
Regem.

With joy alle ageȳn þei went to Normundie:

¶ Thus Harald & Lofwȳn, þat out of lond were dryuen,  
With grete oste of Ireland at Chestre vp arȳuen.  
Dorseth & Somerseth þei robbed & did wo,  
Of knyghtes & serganz þei slouh þrittȳ & tuo.  
Whan þei had so robbed, þat þam þouht inouh,  
þei went ageȳn to schip, & saile vp drouh:  
Toward þe South side turned þei þar flete,  
þar fader & þei o chance togider gan mete.  
Godwȳn & his sonnes at Sandwȳch hauen hent,  
Lettres tille his freudes for help about sent,  
Of socour & conseile bisouht þam pitously,  
Of many had he grante, to ask for him mercȳ.  
¶ Whan þe kyng wist, þat þei had taken land,  
For þo barons he sent þat were his wele willand.  
& for þe longe duellȳng of barons in þe way,  
Godwȳn. bat non wist. arȳued in Surraȳ.

þe kȳng also suiþe ta bataile mad him gare.  
 Godwȳn he diffied, & alle þat with him ware.  
 Grete wer þo parties; þat ferd in to þe felde.  
 Eldolf, bisshop of Bath, þe pes mayntend & helde.  
 Eldolf, þe gode bisshop, com with his clergie,  
 & said to kȳng Edward, “ Sire, we þe mercy crie  
 “ For þe erle Godwȳn, þat wille zeld him to þe.  
 “ His sonnes er at þi wille; & alle þat with þam be.  
 þe barons said, “ for þare sake, for þam þan praye we,  
 “ þare trespas we vndertake opon alle our fee.  
 & þe erle com him self, mercy forto craue,  
 þe kȳng, for his curteysie, granted þam pes to hauc,  
 & gaf him ageȳn boþe rent & lond,  
 Harald & Lofwȳn to þe pes þam bond.  
 Bot Suane, þare broþer, þat died in Lumbardie,  
 For he slouh his cosȳn, he fled þorgh felonie.  
 He went to þe holȳ lond, to do þerfor penance,  
 & died þer for colde in Lumbardie o chance.

De Regina Edith. **T**HE kȳng wedded a wife, þat Godwȳn douhter was.  
 Schȳ sojorned at Romeneie, for hir fader trespas.  
 þe erle bisouh þe kȳng, to take hir home ageȳn.  
 þe kȳng granted þat þing, to mak pes alle pleȳn.  
 þe erle vnto þe kȳng bare him siþen so wele,  
 & his sonnes boþe tille him war trost als stele,  
 Sithen in alle his courte were non so wele him with,  
 þei halp him at þare mȳght to maynten pes & grith.

**O**N þe Wissonday at Burgh in Lÿndeseie  
 Com bode to þe kÿng, & þus gan þei seie,  
 þat þe duke Siward <sup>1</sup> had taken in his balie  
 Machog, þe Scottes kÿng, þat wild, þorgh traitourie,  
 Haf traised Edward þe kÿng, þat in þe North was rife.  
 þerfor Machog.les þe reame & his life.  
 He gaf it to Malcolme, þat was of Cumberland.  
 þorgh gift of Edward he seised it in his hand.  
 Malcolme mad homage tille Edward our kÿng,  
 þat he & alle his age of England suld hold þat þing.

**G**RIFFÿN, kÿng of Wales, þat ilk self. zere  
 Was proued traitoure fals, & þat bouht he fulle dere.  
 Opon þe tuelft euen Griffÿn his hede les,  
 To Gloucester was it brouht befor þe kÿng at des.  
 Edward had a kosÿn in preson at Hungarie,  
 Edmund, his broþer sonne, was þer þorgh trÿcherie.  
 þe kÿng sent to frendes for him alle aboute,  
 For praier at þe last þe childe was laten oute.  
 Home vnto Ingland þe childe tille Edward cam,  
 & for þat childe's luf forgotten was William.  
 þouht he not of þe trouth, þat he to William plight,  
 For to mak him his heyre, if he þe lond haf myght.  
 Neuerþeles to William he zeld him wele his bone,  
 Of þis no more to speke, þe childe died right sone.  
 Algar, an erle of <sup>2</sup> Kent, þat tÿme exiled was;  
 My boke sais with wrong, he did no trespas.

Griffynus  
 de Wallia  
 bellum mo-  
 vit contra  
 Edwardum  
 Regem.

<sup>1</sup> *Vide Johan. Forduni Sco-* | *he was earl of Chester: See p.*  
*tichron. p. 396. 2 Others say,* | *121. of Mr. Thomas Ellis's Ed.*

Haraldus  
factus est  
dux turma-  
rum apud  
Walliam.

He went in to Wales to Griffyn, Griffyn sonne,

þese tuo a werre als Walsch men er wonne.

¶ Whan Edward hard say, he samned alle his oste.

Harald, Godwyn sonne, led þam bi þat coste.

At Herford in Wales þe osten þer mette,

& dight on boþe parties in batailes to sette.

Harald & his Inglis biheld þe erle Algare,

þam forþoult fulle sore, þat he suld þore misfare.

þis wald þe Inglis conseile, if þei mot Algare saue,

For him þei suld biseke, þe kynge's pes to haue.

þe Inglis com to þe kȳng, þer he was in place,

& specially Harald, he had þe kȳng's grace.

On þe erle Algare had þe kȳng mercie,

& forgaf Sir Griffyn also for curteisie.

**WHAN** þat kȳng Edward wend to lyue in pes,  
Griffyn, kȳng of Wales, eft he mad a res.

He com vnto Herford, & sloth þe bisshop Ligere,  
Spared noþer preste no clerik, to dede alle zede in fere.

Kirkes & houses brent, nouht þan wild he spare.

þer þe Inglis had bigged, he mad it wast & bare.

De rege  
Scotorum.

¶ Malcolme of Scotland kȳng zit on Inglond ran,

þe kȳng had him auanced, he was an vnkynd man.

Northumberland he brent, & wasted þat he fond.

Kirkes non wild he spare of S. Cutberte's lond.

þe bisshop sent to þe kȳng, for socour him bisouht.

Whan Malcolme herd it say, no more skape he wrouht.

---

*of part of Dr. Powell's History* | earl of Mercia. *See Dugdale's*  
*of Wales. But it should be rather,* *Baronage, Tom. I. p. 10.*

¶ þe



¶ þe kýng did samen his men, to abate Griffýn's pride,  
& Harald þam bitauht ageyn þe Walsch to ride.

“ Do him vnto þe suerd, withouten jugement,

“ If ze may Griffýn take bitýme at auý went.

Harald went to Wales, his was fulle fre,

& whan he com þer, Griffýn was passed þe se

Unto Irland, þan comandid Harald

þo londes to destroie, þat Griffýn þer gan hald.

His tounes sorto brenne, þe houses down to breke,

& destroie þat kynde, þat ouht to him couth speke.

¶ Harald þe Walschmen did þam ilkon suere;

þat to kýng Edward faythe þei suld alle bere.

Sipen to Rotland he went, & exiled Griffýn þore,

Him & alle his heýres for þat týme euer more.

¶ Griffýn com ageyn, whan Harald home was went,

þe folk priuely of Wales mad þer a parlement.

þei said, þat Sir Griffýn with right he was outlawed,

& Edward of Ingland had þam so gate awed,

þei said, “ we wille no more, his vengeance is git hote.

þei toke þer Sir Griffýn, & of his hede þei smote,

& sent it kýng Edward, & presented him with þat

Right at Glastenbiri, at his mete þore he sat.

**G**RIFFYN had tuo breþer, Bleoth & Ruthe Walan.

þo tuo were with þe kýng, whan he on Griffýn kan.

þerfor vnto þam tuo he gaf Griffýn's feez.

For South Wales holy þei mad þe kýng seautez.

*De fratri-  
bus Griffini  
& filio ejus.*

Harald

Harald to Wales went, vnto <sup>r</sup> Portastiche.  
 Wrightes he did make, haules & chambres riche,  
 Whan Harald or þe kȳng wild cōm þider eftsons  
 In þe tȳme of gesē, to tak þam venȳsons.  
 Karaðluk, Griffȳn sonne, he fordid þo wones.  
 He com þider on nȳght, þe wrightes slōuh at ones,  
 & alle þat he mot gete, he robbed & rest,  
 Penȳ no penȳworth, no þing he no left.

De contu-  
 melia Dun-  
 stani, hlii  
 Agilet.

In þat ilk tȳme, þat þis was beten doun,  
 Harald tille his fader went to Southampton.  
 For Dunstan, Agilet sonne, wild greue Sir Godwȳn,  
 For Gospatrik was slāyn, þei blamed him þer in.  
 Mȳþoke tellis naȳ, Godwȳn did him no dere.  
 It sais þe quene Egȳn, þe blame suld scho bere:  
 Scho did slo Gospatrik, withouten anȳ skille,  
 Tostus of Cumbirland getted Godwȳn þer tille.]  
 Tostus of Cumbirland he was chiefe Justise,  
 Ageȳn þe crle Godwȳn he gert sette assise.  
 Gospatrike's dede on Godwȳn wild he venge,  
 Harald soult Tostus, to leue þat ilk chalenge.  
 He praied him for luf, in pes lat him be stille,  
 & kisse & be gode frende in luf & in a wille.  
 Tostus wild not leue, bot held on his manace,  
 & Harald tened withalle, of lond he did him chaeē.

---

<p><i>Vulgo, PortSkeweth. Por-  tascith autem Florentio, sub  A. D. 1065. Neque discre-</i></p>	<p><i>pantia ulla in eximio nostro  Florentii Codice Langbai-  niano.</i></p>
---	---

Tostus

**T**OSTUS ouer þe se went to S. Omere,  
 His wife & his meýne, & duelled þer þat zere  
 With þe erle Baldwýn, þe wýnter alle plencere.  
 His londes he were gýuen to Morkar fitz Richere.  
 Þe gode kyng Edward to Londøn turnes he,  
 Þe feste of zole to hold, with grete solempnite,  
 At Saynt Petir mýnstere, þat he did sette & wirke,  
 On Saynt Steuen day he did halow þat kirke.  
 Þe kýng fro day to day lie heuyed more & more,  
 Nerhand his endýng, sçekenes greued him sore,  
 Þe barons before him kald, & said vnto þam alle,  
 “Tille Harald, Godwýn sonne, þe regne wille best falle.  
 Me meruailes of my boke, I trowe, he wroto not right,  
 þat he forgate Wilijam of forward þat he him hight.  
 Neuerles þe forward held what so was in his þouht,  
 I wote wele Criste it wild, þat Edwardes wille wer wrouht,  
 Who so lokes his life, & redis his vision,  
 What vengeance ordeynd was on Ingland to be don  
 Of princes of þe lond, it sais of þam þis sawe,  
 þat þei dred no þing God, no zemed euenhed of lawe,  
 Bot felawes vnto þefes, to robbours of ilk cuntre,  
 þar wilkednes was fulfilled, venged behoued it be.  
 Prelates ne no prestes, non of þam lyued wele,  
 þe did not Godde’s hestes, bot brak þam ilk a dele.  
 Licheros lif þei led, & þouht it in þar breste,  
 Holýnes did away, of þe kirke gaf þei leste.  
 Edward God bisouht, þat it suld be forgýuen,  
 & amendid with penance, & þerof cleue be scryuen

De Tosto  
de Cumber-  
land.

De visione  
& morte  
Sancti Ed-  
wardi.

*Haraldus Rex.*

Of þat þat þei had don, & þat þat suld betide  
 To warne þam þerfro, & fle it on ilk side.  
 Bot þis was ansuere ageyn, “ a day þer in salle falle,  
 “ þare wiknes is fulfilled, þer in ere waxen <sup>1</sup> hard.  
 “ God has sette þat zere, a day þer in salle falle,  
 “ þe Inglis salle go to suerd, to pyne þar soules alle.  
 “ Dede & fire salle fede þe scheperdes & þare schepe.  
 þis vision is zit to drede, þink & gif Gode kepe.

¶ I trowe it is ouergone þorgh William conqueroure,  
 He com & slouh ilkone þo wikked men in stoure,  
 & sette vs in seruage, of fredom felle þe floure.  
 þe Inglis þorgh taliage lyue zit in sorow fulle soure.  
 Now is Edward dede, þe soner for þo affrayes.  
 þre & tuenti zere, sex moneþes & seuenten dayes  
 He regned in þis lond, þe date of God þan wax  
 A þousand, I fond, sexti zere & sex.

Haraldus  
 factus est  
 Rex.

**A**FTER Saynt Edward, Harald kyng þei ches,  
 þorgh conseile of þam alle, & he þe scheld les.  
 Right & in lawe, þe barons held him trewe.  
 Neuerles his falshed brouht vs sorowe alle newe.  
 Tostus, þat was exiled þorgh Harald ore I told,  
 He com out of Flandres, brouht an oste fulle bold.  
 Fro Sandwich to Lincolne Tostus ran,  
 Tresore, allé & bestes he robbed ilk a man.  
 þat herd Harald, fulle kene he was & kof,  
 With folk out of þe South toward þe North drof.

<sup>1</sup> *Deest forsun alle.*

Tostus

Tostus herd it say, þe best wild he do,  
 To Malcolme, þe Scottis kȳng, Tostus alied to.  
 Tostus tok his leue, aryued in Norweie,  
 & how þe gamen zede lithe I salle zow seie.  
 In Norweie was a kȳng, mȳ boke tellis sua,  
 Saynt Onlaf broþer, Harald Heruegra.  
 He aryued in Tyne, bot sone he went ageyn,  
 & smote iu tille Humber, his flete alle pleyn  
 In an arme of Ouse vnder Ricalle lay,  
 On Saynt Mathew enen, on a Wednesday.

**EDWYN** & Morkare, tuo lordes Kumberland,  
 To Harald & Tostus þei gaf bataile on hand.  
 Harald of Norweie had folk right inouh,  
 A hundreth & fiftȳ þe toþer side alle slouh.  
 Harald & Tostus vndir Ricalle so sped,  
 A hundreth & fiftȳ to zork ostage þei led.  
 Nouht þien fulle ser to þam com a tȳping,  
 þat Harald was comand, neuly was mad kȳng.  
 Of þat ilk tȳping Tostus was affraied,  
 & Harald Heruegra, I trow, was no þing paied.  
 þorgh a mede þei passed vnto Staunford brigge,  
 þar loges & þare tentis vp þei gan bigge.  
 ¶ Whan Harald þider cam, & sauh alle þar manere,  
 Tille þam smertly he nam, displaied his banere.  
 In þe morning it was, he mette with his enmȳs,  
 & alle þe day þei fauht, at enen he had þe pris.  
 Harald & Tostus boþe to dede zede,  
 þorgh Harald þe zong kȳng, of wham I salle rede.

Haraldus  
 rex devicit  
 bellum, oc-  
 cidit Har-  
 raldum Tos-  
 tum apud  
 Staynford  
 brigge.

Listen & I salle rede, why þe misaquentoure  
On Harald side gan sprede, þorgh William conqueroure.

**T**HE duke of Normundie, William is his name,  
Wolnoth, Harald's broþer, he had in prison at Kame,  
& his neuow Hakon in prison was him with,  
I ne wote for what roson so fer out of þer kith.  
Harald whan he was zonge, he went vnto France,  
þe cuntre forto se, & for to here of chance.  
Alle his mishappýng felle, he com in to Pountif,  
To Richere þat was erle, men told it fulle rif.  
þis lord of Pountif Richer le fitz Izoun  
He tok þis ilk Harald, & did him in presoun.  
þe bode of him sone kam to þe duke of Normundie,  
þi duke went to Pountif, & toke him with maistrie,  
& brouht Harald home, & said, þorgh curteisie,  
" Harald haf now þin eyse, in alle my seignorie.  
Now has Harald his eyse at reson in alle þing,  
þe meýne in alle þing plesed him next þe kýng:

Nota de  
Conque-  
store, & de  
causa con-  
questus.

¶ William & Harald went þam forto <sup>1</sup> palý,  
Tales togider þei tald; ilk on a gode palfray.  
Whan þei had wele riden, þat þam þought right lang,  
þei lighted & abiden biside a water stank.  
" Harald, " said William, " listen to my resoun,  
" What right þat I haue of Ingland þe coroun  
" After Édwarde's dede, if it so betide,  
" That God haf ordeýnd so I after him abide:  
" Whan þat we were Edward þe king & I,  
" He was in my fader courte exiled, I ne wote whi,

<sup>1</sup> *Pro*, play.

" Out

“ Out of Ingland, þan suore he to me,  
“ If he þe coroun mot wýnne, his heýre suld I be. †  
“ þerof he mad me skrite, his hote to mak leale,  
“ & for to sikere his dede, set þer to his seale.  
“ Harald whan þou ses týme, do þi help þerto,  
“ I salle delyuer † þ broþer, & þi neuow also,  
“ & Marie mý douhter to wife I wille þe gýue,  
“ A man I salle þe make, richely forto lyúe,  
“ Or mý chefe Justise, þe lawes to mend & right.  
“ þi sistere I salle gýue a rich prince of mýght.  
[ “ Sire,” said Harald, “ I salle, if þat I may,  
“ Help þe þe coroun to hald, & euer I se þat day.  
“ Mý broþer delyuer þou me, mý neuow þou me grante,  
“ & hold þi certeynte, & salle hold couenante.”  
þe présens forth were fette tille Harald or he foore.  
To hold þat he had hette, oñ þe boke he suore.  
Now gos he home Harald, & has ouercomen his tene,  
þe oþe þat he suld hold, it is forgeten clene.

**E**DWARD is dede, allas! messengers ouerwent  
To William. Harald was, þorgh comon assent,  
‡ Was<sup>2</sup> corouñed nobly, & for kýng þei him helde,  
Bot þe duke of Normundie to William felle þe schelde.  
[ þe duke wrote to þe kýng, in luf withouten loth,  
Bisout him ouer alle þing, þat he wild hold his oth,  
& zeld him þe coroun of Ingland ilkadele,  
Or Marie to warisoun wed hir, & joy it wele;  
& if he wild not so, he suld mak him oknowen,  
He suld wýnne it for do in right as for his owen.

† *Pro*, þi. ‡ *Redundat*.

Harald wrote ageyn, & said he neuer þouht,  
 Marie to wedde certeyn, þe lond light him nouht.  
 & if he wild it wyne with dýnt, als duke hardie,  
 He suld fynd þerinne kýng Harald redie.

*Ecce mira.* ¶ *g*it is *ʰ*Halald, I say, regnand in myght & mayn,  
 þe kýng of Norway in bataile has he slayn,  
 þe duke forgotten is he of þing, þat Harald hette,  
 Now is he in þe see with saile on mast ypsette.  
 Toward þis lond þei drouh, to auenture his chance,  
 With Normandes inoub, of Flandres & of France.  
 He had redý sailýng, þat to þe lond him ledde,  
 & at his riuýng þe lond non him forbedde.  
 His folk went vpto lond, him seluen was þe last,  
 To bank ouer þe sond, plankes þei ouer kast.  
 Als William þer on suld go, he stombled at a nayle,  
 Into þe waise þam fro he tumbled top ouer taile.  
 His knyghtis vp him lyft, & did him eft atire,  
 William was oglyft, his helm was fulle of myre,  
 William was not paied, þat falle mad him ofright,  
 He stode alle dismaied, þan said tille him a knyght,  
 “ Discomfort no þing þe, so faire happe neuer þou fond,  
 “ Stoupe & þou may se, þi helm has wonhe lond.  
 “ þat þe lond is þin, þi helm schewes it þe,  
 “ Forsuorn is Haraldýn, he salle no dure.

Bellum in-  
 ter Haral-  
 dum &  
 Willelmum  
 Conquesto-  
 rem.

**W**HAN William alle was dight & to þe boun  
 Redý with him to fight, he forid Harald fulle sone.

¶ Sic.

He



He fond fulle welē & sone, þat Harald nouht ne slepe,  
 To proue with dede to done fulle wakand on him lepe.  
 To bataile haf þei mynt Harald & William,  
 Bot non stode Harald dynt, þat bifor him kam.  
 þe rouht of þare rascaile he did it rere & ryme,  
 Normanz & Flemmyng taile he kuttet many tyme.  
 To while þat he was fresch þei fond him fulle austere,  
 þei felt of his pruesse, als knyght did his deuere.  
 For he was ouer prest, & egre to assaile,  
 He wild haf no rest, tille he myght trauaile.  
 Allas! for ' for' Sir Harald, for him was mikelle reuth,  
 Fullē wele his awen suld hald, if he had kept his treuth.  
 Bot þat he was forsuorn, mishappýng þerfor he fond,  
 Suld he neuer els haf lorn for William no lond,  
 Ne bien in þat bondage, þat brouht was ouer þe se,  
 Now ere þei in seruage fulle sele þat or was fre.  
 Our fredom þat day for euer toke þe leue,  
 For Harald it went away, his falshed did vs greue.  
 He was so fer in presse, so sele wer him about,  
 Him befor alle þei ches, þat he suld not skape out.  
 Normanz & Burgolons, with lance, suerd & mace,  
 Bare Sir Harald down, allas! he had no grace.  
 So douhtý knyght of dede was non of noþer sides,  
 þore to dede he zede, als man forsuorn betides.  
 Nien monethes befor kept Harald þe regalle  
 Bot þat he was forsuorn, þerfor he lost alle.  
 Out of þe stoure þat stode tuo men askaped ware  
 Of Sir Haralde's blode, Eadwýn & Morkare.

Haraldus  
 occisus est.  
 regnavit  
 novem  
 menses &  
 tres dies.

<sup>1</sup> *Redundat.*

r 4

þei

*Haraldus Rex.*

þei toke þe quene Edith, for doute of treson,  
 Was kýng Edwardes wif, led hîr to Kelion.  
 Wele was scho þer, to hold priue soiorne.  
 Eadwýn & Morkare to London gan þei turne,  
 Vnto þe Londreis þei told, þat þei had fonden an hayre,  
 Was Edmund kosýn þe kýng, þe Londreis wer in speýr,  
 Him for þar kýng vplift, his name was kald Edgar.  
 For William þei were oglift, & said, " þat we ne dar.  
 " For slayn is kýng Harald, & in lond may nou be,  
 " Bot of William hald for homage & feaute.  
 Morkar recleýmed es, as es þe fawkon fre,  
 & Eadwýn com to pes, he mot no better se.  
 þe burgeis of London þar conseile wild it nouht,  
 To gif Edgar þe coroun, þat for heyr þei brouht.  
 William þe Conquerour to London has he þouht,  
 þer þe bataile was stoure an abbay wild he haf wrouht.  
 þer he & Harald mette, þer standes þe kirke,  
 For blode þat þer was gette, to praic þei suld not irke.  
 To London com William, his gole fæste to hold,  
 His barons with him nam, knýghtes þat wer bold.  
 Wardeýns of tour & toun, & oþer þat ne wold  
 þer lantes les alle down, for týnt wer þei told.  
 To Frankis & Normanz, for þar grete laboure,  
 To Flemmynges & Pikardes, þat wer with him in stoure,  
 He gaf londes bitýme, of whilk þer successoure  
 Hold git þe seýsýne, with fulle grete honoure.  
 Fair grace William fond, his chance fulle wele him satte,  
 þe reame of Ingland so graciously he gatte.

þe archbisshop Stigand, of Ingland primate,  
þat tyme was suspended, þe pape rest him þe state.  
& abbot & prioure, men of Religion,  
& oþer men of honour, archdecane & person,  
Wer priued of þar office, of woulfes had renoun.  
For lichorie þat vice wer many als don doun.  
þe archbisshope of zork com with deuocioun,  
þorgh William praicere, com to London toun,  
Bifor þe barons brouht, he gaf William þe coronoun.  
To chalange was he nouht, Sir Stigand was don doun.  
Whan William was coroued kýng so solemply.  
& had taken homage of barons bi & bi,  
He turned ouer þe se vnto Normundi.  
Dam <sup>1</sup> Helienore quene was sche, scho bare him companý.  
Whan he had duelled þore at Pask he com ageýn,  
& dam Helianore with many knýght & sucýn.  
To London alle þei went þe courte holý alle pleýn,  
For þe archbisshop þei sent, messengers gede tueýn.  
Elred þe archbisshop of zork had þe se,  
þe kýng him bisouht, als clerk of dignite,  
To coroune Helianore, þat biseke I þe.  
þe bisshop coroued hir þore, bifor þat faire semble.  
Whan þe folk had bien at þe coronment ilk dele,  
Boþe þe kýng & þe quene þe barons paied wele.  
þe kýng & þe clergie ordeýnd þat ilk secle,  
þe pes to gеме & gýue with lawes trewe als stele.  
Edmunde & <sup>2</sup> Edwýn, Harald sonnes of Kent,  
Alle Somersetschire þei wasted & brent,

Helianom  
regina <sup>1</sup> co-  
rouate est.

<sup>1</sup> Matildin *appellant alii.*    <sup>2</sup> *L. coronata.*    <sup>3</sup> Godwýn *alii.*

Sir Adinotþ þei slouh, & alle þat þei mot hent.  
 Whan þei had frauh inouh, ageyn tille Ircland went.  
 þe erle Robert Comyn, þe West had to welde,  
 þat non vnto William for no þing suld þam zelde.

Multi ad-  
 versitates.

**WHAN** þat kȳng William þo tipinges herd saȳ,  
 To þe toun of Durham fulle fast he toke þe way.  
 þe bisshop to him said, <sup>1</sup> & told to him fulle tite,  
 þat þe Norreis purued, to do him a despite.  
 For þat ilk tale, þat þe bisshop told,  
 þe Komyn had his bale, his lif was lightly sold,  
 þe lond of S. Cutbert he did serch þat nȳght,  
 William alle apert his oste redȳ he dȳght.  
 At þat þei mot fȳnd, to snerd alle þei zede,  
 & or Roberd wist, or þouht on suilk a dede,  
 Ore was his hous on fire, þer Sir Robert laȳ,  
 & brent Roberd to dede, bi þat it was daȳ.

Eccē Ga-  
 nachi.

Now is þe Komyn dede, his haire has alle lorn,  
 William þam it forbede, þat held his londes befor.

**NOW** William has soiorned, & slayn alle his ennȳs,  
 & to þe South is turned, als kȳng þat wan þe pris.  
 Tipinges com him fulle stoute, þat a grete oste & stark,  
 With Harald & with Knoute, þe kȳng sonnes of Danmark,  
 Were arȳued in Humbere, & an erle Turkillē,  
 With folk withouten nombere, þe Norreis felle þam tille.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Vide Dugdaliū Baronag. Historicos nostros, qui secus*  
*Tom. I. p. 54. Lelandi Coll. atque noster rem narrarunt.*  
*vol. II. p. 380. aliosque etiam*

Comen is þe erle Edgar with alle þo of his kýnde,  
 Sir Wolnoth he is þar, þo with þat he mot fynde.  
 Marlesuaýn Turkille sonne, & Suane a doultý knýght,  
 Of Scotland Gospatrik, with þam at alle his myght,  
 þe Normans in þe South wer in so grete affray,  
 Of kastels & of touns þei com out alle day,  
 To zork ran ilk a man, to rescet in þat toun,  
 þat no Danes man þe walles to brcke doun.  
 Sir William Malet was wardeýn of þe cuntres,  
 Sibright þe Gaunt was set with him to kepe þe fees.  
 þise tuo brouht tiýng, þe wer comen bi þat coste,  
 þerfor William þe kýng did turne ageýn his oste,  
 & suore a grete othe, þat he suld neuer spare  
 Noiþer lese no lothe northeren, what so þei ware.  
 William turned ageýn, & held þat he had suorn,  
 Alle mad he wasteyn, pastur, medow & korn,  
 & slouh boþe fader & sonne, women lete þei gon,  
 Hors & hondes þei etc, vnneþis skaped non.  
 Whan þe Danes herd, þat William held his oth,  
 þat he with þe Norreis so ferd, spared lese no loth,  
 Fulle quaintly þei sent to William messengers,  
 Of pes þei mad present, to turne ilkon þer pers  
 Ageýn to Danmark go with his wille & his leuc,  
 þat he suld no mo slo, ne þei suld him not greue.

Ecce Da-  
nachi.

**N**OW duellis William eft, fulle bare mas many wone,  
 Of gode men er non left, bot slayn er ilkone.  
 Clerkes vnneþis þei lete, to kirke o lyue to go,  
 Horses & hondes þei etc for hunger & for wo.

Grete

*Willelmus Conquæstor Rex.*

Grete synne did William, þat sulik wo did wirke,  
 So grete vengeance he nam of men of holy kirke,  
 þat not did no wem, tille him ne no trespas,  
 Fro zork vnto Durhem no wonyng stede was.

¹ Nien zere, sais my buke, lasted so grete sorowe,  
 þe bisshop clerkes take, þar lyues forto borowe.

Seynt Cutberte's bones of fertre toke þei out,

With þam þei fled at ons in sere stedcs about,

þat vengeance burd be don, als tellis S. Edward,

He sauh in a vision, þat vengeance suld falle hard

Of prestes & of clerkes, of princes of þe lond,

Of God ne of his werkes þei dred not þat þei fond.

De Reli.  
 quii Sancti  
 Cuthberti.

*¹ Id quod etiam notat Jo-  
 annes Rastellus, sive Rastal-  
 lus, in Chronico suo, supra à  
 me commemorato, libro santè  
 rarissimo, mihi verò (pro  
 more suo) perquam humani-  
 ter mutuo dato ab amicissimo  
 nostro Murraio, cujus cum  
 alibi, tum jam supra etiam  
 mentionem feci. Sic autem*

*Rastellus:* ¶ Also about the  
 iii. yere of his [Wyllyam  
 Conquerour's] rayne | Har-  
 rolde & Cauntus [Sic] sonnes  
 to Suanus kyng of Denmarke  
 enteryd into the North coun-  
 trey | and with the helpe of  
 some of the people of the

contrey and of some of the  
 cytezyns of yorke enteryd the  
 citeye | and slewe mo than  
 iii. M. Normans. But sone  
 after kyng Wyllyam chasyd  
 them out | and drove them  
 to theyr schyppes and toke  
 suche displeasure with the  
 inhabytaus of that prouynce |  
 that he distroyed the lande  
 from yorke to Durham | that  
 ix. yere after it lay vulaboryd  
 and vntylled | and the peo-  
 ple there were kept so harde  
 by the warre of the kyng |  
 & in suche famyne that they  
 ete rattes | cattes | dogges |  
 and other vermyne.

Sege at  
 Yorke.

**S**AÝNT Cutberte's clérkes in hidnes euer zede,  
At Geruans <sup>1</sup> set þer merkes, a hous þe gan vpspede.  
zit Northermore þei zed vntille Bethlýngton,  
At Toghalle was þe þrid, & þer restid þam down:  
þe ferth was holy Eland, þer þe se it withdrouh,  
þei zede oñ þe sand, to þat Ilde wele inouh.  
Whan þei wer þerinne, of non had þei doute,  
þe flode bigan to gýnne, & klosed it aboute.  
Siben dred þei no þing, of þese ne of feloun  
þat were with þe kýng, Norman no Burgoloun.  
þe kirke of Geruans þat ilk tyme was brent,  
Durham þe same sans, alle to fire went.  
þe croice & þe rode, right as Criste vs bouht,  
Tille askes alle it zode, þe fire spared nouht.  
þe Normans did it alle in þe guýse of theft,  
þe godes þerof stal, no þing þei ne left.  
¶ Whan William vnderstode, how his men ferd with alle,  
Of holy kirke þe gode his serganz robbed & stal,  
He comandid alle his, to mende þat trespas,  
In alle maner wise, as it ore fessed was,  
& oñ þe same asise serued & alowed  
Of alle þe franchise, þat it are was dowed.  
Bot of þat wikkednes, þat men-suld haf wroken,  
Was noiþer more no lesse of þer penance spoken.  
þe bisshop brouh the bones ageýn vnto þe se,  
Tille Durhame's wones, þer þei were wont to be.

Reliquiæ  
Sancti  
Cuthberti  
ad Durham  
ubi prius in-  
feretro re-  
conduntur.

<sup>1</sup> Vide Sim. Dunelm. p. 199. & Leland, Coll. Vol. II. p. 380.

**WILLIAM** the Conquerour chāngis his wikked wille,  
 Out of his first errour, repentis of his ille,  
 & of his crueltes he gynnes forto assuage,  
 & gaf ageyn þo fees, of whilk he tokē<sup>1</sup> ostages.  
 Gospatrik com tille hand, & left of his manage,  
 & William Comberland gaf him in heritage.  
 Gospatrik ged alle þorgh, his dedis forto praise,  
 þe kastle of Bamborgh þe walles he did vpreisc.  
 Malcolme, þe Scottes kȳng, þerwith had envie,  
 þat Gospatrik of suilk þing bare his state so lie,  
 Dight him to Combirland, destroyed about aywhare,  
 Ilkon he slouh at hand, þer godes away bare,  
 Manȳ with him he led, & did þam in seruage,  
 In Scotland was alle spred mykelle of þat lynage.  
 On þis Gospatrik William gan affie,  
 He dight also quik, & went Normundie.  
 Malcolme in Kumberland dos þat he may tille ille,  
 Gospatrik his willand lates him haf his wille.  
 þre þousand pounde Malcolme sent tille Gospatrik tresorie,  
 To William comȳng þat went suld suffre his folie.  
 Litelle wend William of his trecherie,  
 A message tille him nam vnto Normundie,  
 Teld William eueridele of Malcolme robberie  
 For siluere þat he toke suffred þe folk to die,  
 Gospatrik did not wele, mayntend his partie.  
 William also suiþe dight him tille his nauie.

---

<sup>1</sup> F. ostage.



**W**ILLIAM has hauen nomen, & is at Southampton.

Willelmus  
applicuit  
apud Ham-  
ptoniam.

þe þat with him er kōmen, erle knýght & baron,

Went tille Comberland fulle suiþe opon haste,

þe cuntre þat þei fand allē was wilde & waste.

Malcolme fled befor in mountayns & in playn,

He wend for neuer more William suld com agayn.

No more did Gospatrik, þat did him þat disceit,

Bot comen is William quik, & sekcs þam fulle streit.

Bi a side of Scotland Malcolme flies fer in,

Bot William Malcolme fand in þe toum of Abrenethýn.

þer is Malcolme taken, & golden to preson.

Siluer was not forsaken was giffen for his raunson.

To take he bed inouh, for at his wille he was.

William to do his prowē, forgaf alle his trespas.

Malcolme with skrite him bond, his heires of his lýnage

To hold of Ingland for feaute & homage.

Whan þe pes was siker, þe kýng turned fulle suiþe,

Gospatrik þat suffred biker, he rest boþe lond & liþe.

Cumberland him rest, his oþer londes als,

þe lif ouer mykelle him lest, for he was traitour fals.

Sipen to Durham went, þer he destroicd þe see.

þe bisshop he bisouht, S. Cutberte's bones to see,

þe bisshop opned þe schryne, the bones þei vp raised.

þe kýng wepte with his ine, that sight mykelle he praised,

& siluer grete plente opoū the altere laid,

þer franchise gaf þam fre, þe whilk þat þei of said.

þe kastle did he wirke of his tresore alle,

& S. Cutberte's kirke closed with a walle.

Sipen

Sipen he had þam turne to zork, & þer abide,  
For þer he wild soiorne alle þe Whitsons tide.

¶ At zork did he crie, his pes suld holden be,  
þat non did felônie bi land no bi se.

Sipen he zede to London, þat cite set to grith,  
& to þe lawe alle bondon ilk man in his kith.

Chefe justise he satte, þe sothe to atric,

For lese no loth to lette þe right lawe to guye.

þe wronges to amend, & maynten þe right,

Ageyn þe fals defend, þorgh dome of Justise sight.

De tribus  
monachis  
de Lynd-  
say.

**T**HAT tyme þat I of say of William þe kyng,

þre monkes of Lyndsay zede to seke wonyng.

þe first dan Aldwyn, þe toþer Elwyn hight he,

þe þrid hight Reynfride, þus told my boke to me.

Hugh le fitz Galdre, of zork he was Schirue,

He resceyued alle þre, & heberd þam bileue.

After þer soiornyng, whan þat þei suld wende,

He praied þam of alle þing, as gentille men & hende,

To haf saf condite, vnto þe New Kastle.

& Hugh did as he hight, led þam saucly welle.

Fro þe New Kastle vnto Geruans þei zede,

þer duelled þei non seel, to Durham gan þam spece.

Edificave-  
runt eccle-  
siam &  
claustrum  
de Durham.

¶ Whan þei to Durham com to þe bisshop Waltere,  
þer þei bigan a home of religiouse manere.

A closter þei bigan, þe bisshop þo þat wrought,

Hired ilk a man, & alle paied & bought.

Or it wer alle ent þe werke þat þei did wirke,

þei ordeynd a couent, to ministre in þat kirke.

“ Help Lady,” said Waltere, “ of þe þān is þis house  
þat are was prouendere, now is religiouse.

To zorke þe com ageyn, & wrouht þer worschiþly  
Cloistre with couent pleyn a kirk of our Lady.

¶ Whan it was wrouht tille ende, þe monkes alle þre  
To Whitby gan wende, þat standis on þe see.  
þer wirke þei wild an abbeye wele to preise  
In wirschip of Saynt Hilde, a kirke þei did vp reise.  
þus wrouht þise monke þre, þorh þe holy goste,  
Abbayes in sere cuntre, þat wikked men did waste,  
& māny a gode man to holy lif did calle,  
þat þorgh þe lawe paien men left & lete down falle.

Edificatur  
abbatia  
hencie Ma-  
rie apud  
Eboracum.

Edificave-  
runt clau-  
strum de  
Whiteby.

**A**T London is William, at Lundreis takes leue,  
To þe parlement he nam at Paris to Lowis cheue.  
þe duze pers of France were þat tyme at Parys,  
To William felle þar chance, he mad conquest of pris,  
þe toun wan of Terwenne, the castelle of Malbis,  
His auncestrie whilom when left it þorgh folis.  
Whan William with þe lawe had seisen pleynlerly,  
Sipen he gan him drawe toward Normundy,  
þe lond to visite, & to comfort his frendes.  
He restid bot a lite, a sonde þe Inglis him sendes.  
þe erle of Surrey sent Hacon Henry sonne,  
He to William went, & praied him zit estsonne  
So com tille Ingland, or els alle he lesis,  
Ageyn him wille men stond, & partie tille him chesis.  
William was in wehere, whan he herd þat tiping,  
In his auhtend gere, als he regned kyng,

Rex venit  
ad parlia-  
mentum a-  
pud Parys.

*Willelmus Normannus Bastard.*

At Wyncehestre he held his parlement ilk zere,  
 & þer men him teld, who was his aduersere,  
 Of Northfolk þe erle.<sup>1</sup> Roger, men said of him treson,  
 For praier or for pere þei did him in prison.  
 Unto þe Marche gan long an erle, Wolnot he hight,  
 þe kýng with mykelle wrong did him slo þat knyght.  
 Abowen Wynchestere was schewed tille alle þat þer ware,  
 To lewed men & lerid, to kirke as þei him bare,  
 Miracle faire & myrie, whan þei laid him in pitte.  
 William of Malmesbirie witesse it in his writte.

**S**ITHEN in his þrid zere he tollis þer of a chance,  
 Of Durham bisshop Waltere was smýten þorgh with a lance.

Quomodo  
 Episcopus  
 Dunelmie  
 interfectus  
 est.

In Gatesheued it was, & þo þat suld be schent,  
 þo did þat trepas, Sir Liolfe's kýnde of Kent,  
 þe erle Liolf was slayn, for þe bisshop dede.  
 My boke sais certayn, þat he gaf neuer þat rede.  
 þerfor kýng William did fleme alle þat kýnde,  
 þar landes fro þam nam, þat men not knowe & fynde.

**S**ITHEN in his fýrþe zere he went tille Aluerton,  
 No man wend in erþe drede of no felon.

<sup>1</sup> His name was Ralph. But his Confederate, the Earl of Hereford's Name was Roger. See Dugdale's Baronage, p. 67, 68. This Affair is thus touch'd upon by John Rastall, in his most rare Chronicle :

¶ About the .x. yere of his raygne | Roger erle of Harforde | and Rafe erle of Northfolke fledde | and were outlaude | & the erle walte was behedyd.

On warned him of a þing, þat Malcolme with poysoun,  
Schuld begile þe kyng, with som þat lufed tresoun.  
William sent his sond his eldest sonne Roberd,  
If he mot vnderstond, or any suilk of herd.  
Roberd about did spie, if Malcolme wild haf wrouht.  
Bot alle it was a lie; þat þing was neuer þouht.  
In his auhtend gere þat William was regnand,  
Extendours he sette forto extend þe land,  
Erdam & baronie how mykelle felle to þe schelde,  
Knyght & sergeancie als how mykelle þei heldē.  
How mykelle lond & rent holy kirke had to a prowē,  
Alle þei did extend to witte þe verrey valowe,  
& William wist of alle, what it suld amounte,  
Of lordyng & of thralle þe extente þorgh acounte.  
¶ Roberd Courthose his sonne he gaf all Normundie,  
To hold, as it was wonne, als heyre of ancestrie.  
William passid þe se, þer of he mad þe skrite,  
Of France to hold þat fe of oþer tenement alle quite.  
¶ His oþer sonne William Ingland assigned he,  
& alle þat of him cam with chartre mad he fre.  
His sonne Henry was sire of Wales with chartre streite,  
Of alle Loncastre schire vntille Bromsthucite.  
¶ Ade his douhter dere, he lufed hir als his life,  
þe erle of Plesance Steuene weddid hir to wife,  
& kyng Steuen on hir gate, þat withouten reson  
Of þis lond had þe state, & conquered þe coroun.  
¶ His douhter Custance was wedded to Bretayn,  
With William's ordenance, vnto þe erle Alayn.

Extendere  
fecit ter-  
ram, & di-  
visit terras  
filiis suis.

*Willelmus Normannus Bastard.*

Tuo zere & a half he duelled in Normundie,  
& in þat lond self at Kame gan he die.

Sepultus est  
in Kame  
Anno  
Domini.  
M<sup>o</sup> LXXX.  
VIII<sup>o</sup>.

At Saynt Steuen's kirke þei laid him with honoure,  
Himself did it wirke, he was þar <sup>2</sup> foudoure.  
Tuentý zere had he þe land & nien moneth streite,  
þe date was a þousand & fourscore & auhte.

<sup>2</sup> *This king, in remembrance of the great Victory he had obtain'd over Harold (by which he got Possession of England) founded the great Abbey of Battel in Sussex. But then that, for which I am chiefly obliged to make this Note, is, his founding the Cluniack Abbey of Bermondsey in Surrey, if we may give any credit to John Rastall's Chronicle, which is a most rare Book (as I have before noted) and was written by a learned Man (tho' a Printer, for Printers then were Men of Learning) who had married Elizabeth, the Sister of Sir Thomas More, which was of no small Advantage to him in the History of our English Affairs. The Words in Rastall are these. ¶ This wyllyam made the newe forest in Hampshyre and therefore cast downe dyuers churches by the space of. xxx. myles. In his tyme he kept the englysshemen so lowe | that fewe of them bare any offyce of honour or rule |*

but somewhat he fauored the citye of London. Also he buylded two abbayes in Englande | that is to say the abbaye of Battell | where he wanne the fylde agaynst Harolde and the abbay of Bar-meseye in Southwarke besyde London | and also he buylded. ii. other abbayes in Normandye. Which Words will give some Confirmation to what is asserted by those, that tell us, that William the Conqueror built many abbyes of the order of Cluny, in relation to which there is this Note in a MS. in the Bodleian Library, as is observ'd by the learned Dr. Tupper. A Note (saith the Dr. Pref. to his Not. Mon. p. 42.) annexed to an old MS. book of Ecclesiastical Constitutions in the Bodleian Library [Inter MSS. *Judian.* 121.] desires us to note the slyght of the Pope, that when he had causyd the Deuke of Normandy to Conquer England; under pretence of penance causyd him to give muche Lands to Abbyes,

Willelmus  
Rufus coronatus est  
apud Westmonasterium.

THE conquerour is laid at Kame dede in graue,  
 þe Courthose befor said Normundie salle haue.  
 To William þe rede kȳng is gȳuen þe coroun,  
 At Westmȳnstere tok he rȳng in þe abbay of Londoun.  
 Whan he had alle plenerly seisȳn of þe lond,  
 þe barons & þe clergȳ ageȳns him he fond.  
 þis was þare comon sawe in burgh & cite,  
 “ þe Courthose with þe lawe suld þare lord be.  
 “ He is broþer eldest, þe coroun salle he bere.  
 “ He is of body best, þe reame forto were.  
 What did þe grete lordȳnges, erles & barounes?  
 Kastels & oþer þinges seised, maners & tounes.  
 þe kȳng had fulle grete þouht, his reame ageȳn him ros,  
 Frenedes fast he souht, to venge him on his fos.  
 þis sorow & þis drede lastid him þre zere.  
 Of pes ne mȳght he spede, bot euer in þer dangere.  
 His frenedes gan him rede, to go to þe kȳng of France,  
 To conseile him in þis nede, to abate þat distance.  
 For þis kȳng William dight him vnto schip,  
 His frendis with him nam vnto kȳng Philip.  
 ¶ Vnto kȳng Philip he schewed ilka dele,  
 How his barons gan kip ageȳn him did not wele;

Abbyes, and that Deuke dyd  
 bylde many of the Order of  
 Cluny, because Pope Gregory  
 VI. was a monk of Cluny. Tho  
 I cannot find (continues the Dr.)  
 that ever he founded any of this  
 Order, yet he built and endowed  
 the great Abbyes of Battel Com.

Suss. and Selby in Com. Ebor.  
 and the Priory of Hitchinbroke  
 in Com. Hunt. and the Alien-  
 Pories of Frampton in Com.  
 Dors. Paunsfeld in Com. Essex,  
 Derehirst in Com. Gloc. Ando-  
 ver in Com. Hants. and Stanyng  
 in Com. Suss.

“ þerfor I am comen, to wite at zow our heued,  
 “ þe londes þat we haf nomen, to whom þe salle be leued;  
 “ & at zour jugement I will stand & do,  
 “ With þi þat it be ent þe strif bituen vs tuo.

Philip said bliþely, & sent his messengers.

Tille Inglond to þe clergý, erles, barons þer pers,  
& askid if þei wild stand to þer lokýng.

þe duke Roberd fulfilled, so did William þe kýng.

þe barons wrote ageýn, at his demýng þei ches,

þei held his dome certeyn, for he was prince of pe.

Philip was fulle wis, with scrite he bõnd þam bõþe.

He said þan his avis, “ kisse & be not wroþe.

At þe first þei kiste, as frendes felle to be.

“ Of zour fader biqueste, dome þan salle ze se.

Down þei sat õn benke, among þe duze pers.

Philip gan him <sup>1</sup> thinke, & said õn þis maners.

Ecce dis-  
 cussio facta  
 est coram  
 Philippo  
 inter Wil-  
 lelmum  
 Rufum &  
 Robertum  
 fratrem e-  
 jus, ducem  
 Norman-  
 niz.

¶ “ William þe Conquerour his ancestres & he  
 “ Held with grete honour Normundie in fe  
 “ Of alle kýnges of France, & so did he of me,  
 “ For alle oþer distance, with homage & feaute,  
 “ Alle Inglond he wan þorgh his vassalage,  
 “ & Harald kýng ouer ran, þat did William outrage.  
 “ þerto had he no right, no non of his linage.  
 “ þat William wan with mýght is told non heritage.  
 “ We se alle day in place þing þat a man wynnes,  
 “ It is told purchase, whedir he it hold or tuynnes.  
 “ & þat comes of grace or of conquest bigynnes,  
 “ He may, tille he has space, gif it withouten synnes.

<sup>1</sup> Sic.

“ Heri-



" Heritage þat lynes & leues to þe eldest sonne,  
 " Purchaced þing men gyues, woman weddyng to mone,  
 " Or tille a man is strange for his seruisse oftsonne.  
 " Heritage salle men not change on purchacé wise to wone.  
 " Roberd, þorgh our assent, þe heritage to þe lics,  
 " & þou, William, salle hent þe purchace at our avis.  
 " þus zour fader zow sette, als man of lawe was wis,  
 " His dede ne wille we lette, be þe martir Saynt Denys.  
 Whan Roberd sauh & wist, how þe conseile zede,  
 To þe holy land him list, & þider gan him spede.  
 Whan he com at Marsille, & ouer þe se suld wend,  
 Phillip sauh his wille, & after him gan send.  
 þe bode was sent to raþe, þe messenger com ouersone.  
 For soth it was gret skathe, his passage was fordone.

**T**HE rede kyng William felle a faire chance,  
 To Saynt Poule's he cam, withouten greuance.  
 For erles & barons bi sond he for sent,  
 & alle at his somons to parlement went.  
 He schewed on & oþer, þat bated was þe strife  
 Bituex him & Roberd, & were in luf of life,  
 With chartre wele wreten & selid certeyn,  
 & wele it was to witen no chalange ageyn,  
 Wherfor he þam hight, if þei to luf wild drawe,  
 þe coronne at his myght to maynten with lawe,  
 & þat he so suld þe barons had affiance,  
 His kastels þei him golde, with allo þe purtenance.  
 In þe zere folowand, at þe somere's tide,  
 Roberd com to þis land, at Douer gan vp ride.

Robertus  
 Courthose  
 applicuit in  
 Angliam  
 cum amore,  
 & venit  
 fratri suo  
 Willclmo.

*Willelmus Rufus Rex.*

Whan herd say with luf, tille him he sped,  
 & with grete noblay tille London him led.  
 With in þo auht daies com William þis tþing,  
 þe North had sele affraies, þorgh þe Scottis kþng,  
 þe cuntre gan assaile, þe folk ferto schende,  
 Roberd gaf him counsaile, þider sauen to wende.  
 With þider þei ferd William & Roberd.  
 Malcolme, whan be it herd, fled for ferd,  
 & William toke him þere, his folk slouh ilk man,  
 & als þei were fleand vnto Louthian,  
 So ferd thei him found, þei obliged þam to gyuc,  
 Fourti þousand pound, at his pes to lyuc.  
 Opon þat he suore, to hold of him his fe,  
 & or William fore, tok homage & feaute.  
 To London William turnes, & had al'e his wille,  
 & Malcolme soiorne in Scotland with ille.  
 Whan he was at London, a haule, he did vp wright.  
 First þoult & founden, for chambre was it right.

*Concerning which I find a very remarkable Passage in Rastall's Chronicle, together with a Note about the first coming of the Cistercian Monks into England, which others refer to the Reign of King Hen. I. The Book being, as I have before noted, extremely scarce, I shall give the Passage at large from Mr. Murray's Copy. ¶ The. iiii. yere of his sayne a great wynde was in*

London | that blew downe. v. c. howses and the rose of Bowe church | & dyd great hurte in wynchester and in dyuers other places. In this tyme also the welchemen rebellyd | but they were subdued & theyr duke or kyng called Ryse was slayne which was accompted the last kyng of wales. After that Malcolyn kyng of Scottes rebellyd and came into

**ROBERD** leue has taken, & went to Normundie,  
To Wales is William schaken, estres to spie.  
It felle in tyme of þe zere, at Saynt Brice feste,  
þat he had regned here nyen zere at þe meste,

Robertus  
applicuit  
in Nor-  
maniam.

Englande with  
The kyng of his reteneue |  
Scottes slayn. whome one Ro-  
bert erle of  
Northumberlande inçonter-  
yd | & there the kyng Mal-  
colyu was slayne | and by  
the ayde of kýng wylyyam  
Edgare his son was made  
kyng of Scotlande. ¶ A-  
bout this tyme the order of  
Cysteaux was fyrst brought  
into Englande | by one wa-  
ter Espeke that founded the  
fyrst Abbey of that Religyon  
at Ryuall. ¶ This kyng  
wylyyam was a very couetous  
man | a proude & wylfull |  
and pyllid bothe the spery-  
tualte & temperalte | with  
sellynge of Bysshopykes |  
Abbeys | & benefyces | and  
leuyenge vnresonable taxes &  
trybutes on the temperalte |  
specially by the onely coun-  
sell of one Ranulphe hys pro-  
curatour. whiche ryches the  
kyng dyd spende vpon the  
Towre of London | & some  
say vpon the makynge of  
westmyster halle : but yf that  
sayenge be trewe of westmy-  
ster halle | it must be some  
olde halle there | & nat the

newe halle that is nowe. For  
the armes that appere in the  
halle that nowe is aswell in  
the stone worke as in the  
tymber worke | be the armes  
whiche kyng Rycharde the  
second gaue | which be. iii.  
Lyons with the flour delyce  
quarterly | & the whyte hart  
for his badge. For there was  
neuer kyng of Englande that  
bare the armes of Fraunce |  
whiche be the flour delyce |  
before kyng Edwarde the  
thyrde | for in his tyme the  
armes of Fraunce was fyrst  
ioyned to the armes of Eng-  
lande. wherfore it shuld seme  
euydently that westmyster  
halle that is nowe | was nat  
bylde in the tyme of kyng  
wylyyam Rufus | except it  
were onely the foundacyon  
therof | or els it was the  
halle in westmyster aboue  
the steyres | which is nowe  
called the whyte halle. *Stowe  
tells us (in his Survey of Lon-  
don, p. 521. Ed. fol. 1633.)  
that this Hall was repaired by  
K. Rich. II. which will recon-  
cile what is obser'd by Rastall  
about the Arms.*

Ros in Northumberland suilk a sorow hard,  
 1 Malcolcolme gede robband, & his sonne Edward.  
 þat herd an erle Roberd, he gured him to bataile  
 With Malcolme & Edward, he gan þam assaile.  
 þat bataile was hard, so men has no frith,  
 Slayn was þat coward, & his sonne him with.

¶ þe folk that ascaped on Malcolme side,  
 To Scotland þam raped, & puplised it fulle wide.  
 þei mad parlement, & toke þam to rede.  
 Malcolme to God was went, & Edward his sonne dede,  
 & corouned Dufnald, Sir Malcolme broþer.  
 His sonnes þei ne wald, þe ton no þe toþer.

De contra-  
 melia Scot-  
 torum, &  
 de dominio  
 & potestate  
 Angliæ.

¶ Of Malcome þat man lest tuo sonnes ware,  
 þe ton hight Dunkan, þe toþer Edgare.  
 Dunkan sauh his eam had his heritage,  
 þer he wist bote of beam, he went þat viage  
 To William þe rede kýng, þer he was in Wales.  
 What tid of þat þing, he told him alle þe tales.  
 “Mýn heritage I craue of þe, þat is mý heued.  
 “ Help me it to haue, þat Dufnald has me reued.  
 With scrite vnto William Sir Dunkan him bond,  
 & to þe heirs þat of him cam, for þe coroune of Scotlond.  
 Inglis & Normans þe kýng did somoune,  
 To wend with Sir Dunkan, & do Dufnald doune,  
 & seise Dunkan þer in, als heyr of heritage,  
 To hold & alle his kýn of Inglond for homage.  
 Whan corouned was Dunkan, & þe fest ent,  
 Inglis & Norman to kýng William went.

1 Sic.

Dufnald, þat is put oute, alle about wendes  
In fele stedes aboute, & gadres his frendes,  
& conseiled with þam þis cas, þat alle suld þei go,  
& spie where þe kyng was, Dunkan if he mot slo.  
Slayn haf þei Dunkan, & eft coronued Dufnald,  
Of kyng William wild þei no more hald.

¶ þe kyng was in affray, he might not tent þerto  
With Roberd þe Moubray, his coroune he wild for do.  
Roberd wild haf rest William alle his right,  
þe coroune his kosyn left, & gif it him þorgh myght.  
William is war of þis, þorgh for Roberd he þretis,  
& takes him maugre his, his kastle doun betis.  
Better were Roberd, in pes haf holden him stille,  
þan layn in prison sperd; & at his fomen wille.  
In Wyndesouere is he leued, sorow þan is his pyne,  
þat he wis ouer his heued, þe chip falles in his ine.

Contumelia  
orta est in-  
ter Regem  
& Rob-  
tum Mou-  
bray.

¶ þe next zere þer bi William to Wales went,  
þe Walsch men did foli, his lond robbed & brent.  
þerfor William ne wold vnnepis leue on o lyue,  
þat boþe zong & old alle zede to þe kryue.  
Neuer bifor in Wales was don so grete greue,  
Bi dounes & bi dales, þar folk at suilk mischeue.  
Sen þis greuance hard, þe slauhter & þe drede,  
Fulle sone afterward þe kyng to zork zede.  
þider com Edgar, was Malcolme sonne,  
& Sir Dunkan broþer, þat slayn was þorgh tresonne,  
& schewed to William, þat heyre he was of kynde,  
Of Malcolme he kam, righter salle non fynde.

¶ Wher-

*Willelmus Rufus Rex.*

“ Wherfor I gow biseke, help me þe lond to haue,  
 “ & I with wille fullle meke gour seruise salle I saue.  
 William vnderstode, þat he said reson,  
 & was next of blode, & Dufnald did treson.  
 He dight an oste fullle stoute with Edgar forto leue,  
 Dufnald to dryue oute, or his bede him reue.  
 Eustace of Ferers þat oste suld guye,  
 Of Scotland þei him brouht, Dufdald forto spie,  
 & seised Edgar in alle, as right was þerto.  
 To William for þe regalle he did þat he suld do.  
 Edgar & his peres þe chaced day bi day,  
 Of Scotland þei him brouht for ener, & drof away.  
 Edgar was Malde's broþer, men kald þe gode quene,  
 ʒit sais on & oþer, so gode has here non bene.

De Ingrati-  
tudine Wil-  
telmi.

**W**HAN William had his wille of Scotland & of Wales,  
 To riche men was he grille, of pouer held no tales.  
 Clerkes of holy kirke he chargis grenosly,  
 þei were bisie & irke on þer rentes to lyue by.  
 Of alle his wikked werkes þese me þouht þe meste,  
 þat sçquenten kirkes he mad tillle his ' foreste,

*' This was the new Forest near Winchester, which was really made by his Father King William the Conqueror, who destroyed many Churches for it, and his Son. William Rufus was only an Improver of it, by enlarging it, in which he com-*

*mitted also much Sacrilege. But then others (and even Peter of Langtoft and Robert of Brunne themselves seem to have been of the same opinion) tell us, that this was not the New Forest near Winchester, but the New Forest of Windsor, a-*

*mong*

þat neuer ere non was sen þe Cristendam.  
He did grete trespas of holý kirke so nam.  
Wele tuelue gere kept he þis lond,  
& how he died here selcouthly I fond.  
& if ge wille lithe, I salle telle it zow,  
His dede com him suýthie meruellosly, se how.

ON a Thursday at nyght at euen he zede to reste,  
To hunte þer he had tìght in his new foreste.  
On slepe sone he felle, þe sueuen bifor him ran,  
Him þouht in his chapelle he was withouten man,  
Ne non he sauh no herd, & he biheld aboute,  
þe dures were so sperd, he myght in no stede oute.  
So grete hunger him cam, & mete had he none,  
Ne he ne wist to wham, þat he mot mak his mone.

De morte  
Willelmi  
Rufi, & de  
visione ante  
mortem.

*mong which is John Rastall, who writes thus: This kynge wyflyam as is sayd & wrytten of hym | had great pleasure in huntyng | in so moche that he pulled downe & destroyed dyuers houses of religyon to inlarge the newe forest of wyndesore for wylde dere: but a knyght of his named water Tyrell by the glaunsyng of his arowe vpon a braunche whan he shot at an harte in the sayd forest | smote the kyng & wounded hym to dethe wherof shortely he dyed. The fyrst day of August the yere of Chryst.*

M.C. without any yssue of his body. And he rayned. xii. yere. xi. monethes and. xii. dayes | and is buried at westmyster. *In which Passage this is also remarkable, that he makes William Rufus to be buried at Westminster, as does also the Chronicle I now publish, whereas it is well known, from our other Historians, that he was buried at Winchester. And indeed it is Winchester in the French Original of Peter Langtoft. Le cors a Wyncestre fet lenesque porter, et mettre le en toumbe, al monstar seint Peer.*

His

*Willelmus Rufus Rex.*

His hunger was so grete, he wend haf waxen wode,  
 Opon þe rode he schete, & ete it als it stode.  
 Whan he had eten þat, git him hungred est,  
 þe Mariolé þer scho sat, of hir no þing he lest.  
 Whan he was turned, & went out of þat affray,  
 For a bisshop he sent at morn whan it was day,  
 Sir Ode of Wynchestere, so þat bisshop hight,  
 He told him of alle þe estere, þat him mette þat nyght.  
 þe bisshop gan it rede, " God is þe turned grym,  
 " Oufþer in word or dede has þou greued him.  
 " þerfor alle þat þou may to penance take þou space,  
 " þau neuer on Friday to wod þou go to chace.  
 " þe riuer salle þou forsake on Friday ilka dele.  
 " þat penance I þe take, Sir kýng, þou kepe it wele.  
 Sir Ode þe bisshop es with leue went him fro,  
 þe kýng herd his messe, to gamen þan wild he go.  
 His penance was forgotten, he asked for his archere,  
 Walter Tirelle was haten, maister of þat mister.  
 To triste was he sette, forto waite þe chance,  
 With a herde þei mette, a herte þerof gan lance.  
 Walter was redi, he wend haf schoten þe herte,  
 þe kýng stode ouer nehi, þe stroke he lauht so smerte.  
 þus died William þe kýng, on þis ilk manere.  
 Sir Ode herd þat tþing, fulle mournand was his chere.  
 At Westminstre is he laid, at Saynt Petir kirke,  
 In a tounge purtraid, þe bisshop did it wirke.  
 þe date a þousand was, & a hundreth mo,  
 Forgif him his trespas, Jhesu, þat lete þe slo.



ÞAT tyme in Scotland was a mayden zeng,  
As I red biforhand, Malcolme douhter þe kȳng.  
Malde hight þat mayden, many of hir spak.  
Fair scho was, þei saiden, & gode withouten lak.  
A doughter had Saynt Margrete, þat in Scotland lis.  
Of þat douhter sute com Malde, þat was of pris,  
& Dulkan & Edgar, þat I red biforn,  
Malde's broþer þei war, of Margrete douhter born.

De Matilda  
bona  
Regina.

**A**FTER William men cald þe rede kȳng,  
Henry þe coroun nam, his broþer þat was zing.  
þe bisshop Maurice Henry corouned he,  
þat tyme he did þe office, of London kept þe se.  
Roberd þe Courthose to þe holy lond was went.  
A Breton (dayet his ' his<sup>u</sup> nose) for Roberd þider sent.  
A Breton sent þat sond, he dil for treson,  
& Roberd com to lond, withouten oþer reson.  
þat did Roberd trauaile for nouht, he was a file.  
Nobeles þe erle of Cornwaile kept his wife þat while,  
Charles douhter scho lord of Cezile,  
Dame Edith bright as glas; Roberd þouht no gile,  
Bot com on gode manere tille his broþer Henry.  
He wife þat sojorned here, he led to Normundie.  
¶ Henry wedded dame Molde, þat kȳng was & sire.  
Saynt Anselme men tolde corouned him & hire.  
þe coronȳng of Henry, & of Malde þat may,  
At London was solemply on S. Martȳn's day.

De Henrico  
primo.

<sup>u</sup> F. delend.

Defalsitate  
episcopi  
Dunelmensis.

**T**HE bisshop of Durham, <sup>1</sup> Kandolf he hight,  
Of falshede to mak a gleam, þe wrong vnto þe right.  
For he & oþer fele sent vnto Roberd,  
þat stound suld he not spele, sen he þat tiyng herd.  
Roberd purueid him stille, & com whan he wild.  
“ þe folk is alle in wille, þe lond þe to zeld.  
þorgh messengers fals Roberd gadred oste.  
Henry was warned als, & did kepe þe coste.  
To þe fiue portes he sent, & het þam in couenant,  
þat aliens suld non hent hauen of Normant.  
þer sikernes was fast of þe fiue portes, & þe kyng  
Henry dight him on haste to þe toun of Hastyng.  
A kastle did vp sette, his oste longe þer lay.  
þei wend Roberde’s flette suld haf comen bi þat way.

De tradi-  
tione Epi-  
scopi.

**I** þe bisshop þouht treson, for warned was Henry.  
He went to Southampton, with him alle his clergý.  
þe majstres of þe portes for gyftes tille him toke,  
þe kyng & his force for Roberd þei forsok.  
A hundreth schippes & fiftene went to Normundie,  
To help & to mayntene þe duke Roberde’s partie.  
Roberd mad him alle preste, þe wynde gan him dryue.  
þe first day of herueste at Portesmouth gan he ryue.  
Toward Wynchestre þam dight, his folk forto eyse,  
In token þat he had myght, a kastle he did reyse.  
To erles & barons lettres he sent aboute.  
For riche rewardons to Roberd gan loute.  
Fulle fele suilk he fond, þat with Roberd held,  
Of Inglis of þis lond agayn Henry bare scheld.

<sup>1</sup> L. Randolf.

**R**OBERD bi his letter his broþer gan diffie,  
Him þouht his partie better, of him to haf maistrie.  
Bot gode Anselme, þat kept of Canterbirie þe see,  
Before þe barons lept, kried, pes per charite.  
þorgh conseile of Anselme, þat wild þe comon prowē,  
Ilk auailed his helme, & to conseile drowe.  
þe parties were fullē stark, neuerlesse þorgh praiere,  
Henry þre þousand mark gaf to Roberd bi zere.  
þus gate was þat werre pesed, withouten lore,  
þat noiþer partie com nerre, I blisse Anselme þerfore.  
In couenant of pes, men may wele witen,  
Bituex þam noþeles a skrite enselid & writen.  
I Als Anselme þe strif gan pes, of þe duke & þe kyng,  
Com Roberd de Beleyse, þorgh his ouerwenyng,  
& passed hider ouer þe se, & in to Wales went,  
He gadred grete mayne of alle þat he mot hent.  
þe Frankis tille him felle, & alle þe Walsch fullē fikelle,  
þe kastle Arondelle he seised, & als of Tikelle.  
Cites, burghes & tounes ageyn kyng Henry  
At Burgh in Schrobschire to werre mad him redy.  
Alle Schrobschire held with Roberd de Beleyse,  
Henry list vp scheld, his kastels did he sayse.  
þe walles did doun felle, þe tours bette he doun.  
In þrittý daies to telle, Roberd was taken in toun.  
Within dayes þrittý taken he was þorgh spie,  
& led to kyng Henry, don had he felonie,  
& his broþer Arnald, (for with Roberd he fore,)  
As for traytours bald þe lond hoþe forsuore.

De Roberto  
Courthose  
duce Nor-  
mannie.

De pace  
facta per  
Ansel-  
mum, archi-  
episcopum  
Cantuariæ.

**N**OW is Henry venged of his traytours,  
 & lord of mykelle þing, & riche man of tresours.  
 Mald þe gode quene gaf him in conseile,  
 To luf his folk bituene, & leue alle his tirpeile;  
 Bere him tille his barons, þat held of him þer fees,  
 & to lordes of tounes, tille burgeis of Citees.  
 þorgh counseile of dame Malde, a kýnde woman & trewe,  
 þer ore was hatred alde, nōw gynnes luf allē newe.  
 Now luf þei fulle wele þe barons & þe kýng,  
 þe kýng dos ilk a dele in skille alle þer biddýng.

Ecce de  
 Henrico.

¶ Bot Henry þink it stark, þat he is charged so,  
 To gyue þre þousand mark, & bonden be þerto.  
 þorgh conseile of his barons, he sent to duke Roberd.  
 What was his respons writen, I ne sauh nó herd.  
 Tuo gentille men of blode, þe best of Normundie,  
 Henry gaf gýstes gode, to hold on his partie.  
 Whan Henry wist þer wille, bi messengers priue,  
 An' oste he purueid stille, & passed ouer þe se.  
 He þouht to compas ille þe same tille him did he.  
 Now salle Roberd fulfille, þat he tok in his cuntre.  
 ¶ Whan Henry was ryued þer, þer he wild ame,  
 þorgh power did he dryue Roberd out of Kame,  
 Bayone rent & fe sone had he lorn,  
 þe best of þat cuntre tille þe kýng wer suorn.  
 Roberd fele siþes at þat comýng les  
 Boþe londes & liþes, or he mot haf þe pes.  
 If he ne were þorgh help of William de Martayn,  
 & Roberd de Beleyse halp him with myght & maýn.

þise

þise tuo went to France, & fonden at Parýs,  
 Als it was þar gode chance, Sir Philip sonne Lowýs.  
 For Roberd þei bisouht of socour & mercie,  
 Sir Lowýs failed nouht, his help was him redie.  
 Lowýs wrote his letter vnto þe kýng Henry,  
 þat þei acorded better, for his luf specially.  
 þe bisshop of Parýs þe pes þan formed he,  
 " If þei at his auýs boþe wild paied be,  
 " Roberd salle cleyme all quite to Henry bifor vs here,  
 " þre þousand mark be skrite þe Henry gaf bi gere,  
 " þat Roberd, ne non of hise, salle ask Henry þe kýng,  
 " þis dette on non wise, peny no ferþing.

**W**HAN þis barette was ent, þe bisshop tok his leue,  
 & Henry home went, to no mo wild he greue.  
 þe londes wild he nouht zeld, þat he of Roberd wan,  
 Bot haf þam he wilde, & hold for any man.  
 Sen þat Henry was gone, Roberd went to France  
 To Sir Lowýs on one, & told him þat greuance:  
 & Sir Lowýs þerfore had him tille Ingland go,  
 To praye Henry restore þo tounes he tok him fro.  
 Roberd tille Ingland kam, & bisouht þe kýng  
 þo fees he fro him nam, restore ageýn þat þing.  
 Henry ansuerd nay, þerto were him lothe.  
 & Roberd went<sup>1</sup> awith, with William was he wrothe.  
 Whan he saub, þat Roberd for wroth turned so sone,  
 & no þing ansuerd, bot to wend was alle bone,  
 Henry mad him zare, & after him fulle swiþe.  
 To Normundie to fare, & se what he wild kiþe,

Recessit de  
 Norman-  
 nia.

<sup>1</sup> F. away.

& duelled þer a gere biside Roberd his broþer,  
þat noiþer werre wo did þe ton to þe toþer.

Iterum re-  
versus est  
in Nor-  
manniam.

¶ In alle þis ilk chek of Roberd & Henry,  
Bituex þam wex kontek, þe kȳng & þe clergȳ.  
þe kȳng in þe courte of þe lay þe clerkes wild justise.  
Saynt Anselm said him nay, he wild on no wise.  
þe kȳng on gān hald, to haf þam at his dome.  
S. Anselm þerfor appeld vnto þe courte of Rome.

Dicta An-  
selmi pro  
clero.

¶ Whan he had sped his nedis, & fro þe courte comen,  
þe kȳng for oþer dedis to Normundie was nomen.  
Anselm duelled nouht, bot sonē ouer þe se  
To þe kyng tīþing brouht, what þerof suld be.  
þe bisschop schewed him skille, þat he mayntend þe ille  
þe kȳng consented þer tille, & gaf Anselm his wille.

þorgh Anselm maytenȳng was þe kontek ent.

He tok leue at þe kȳng, & home to Ingland went.

þe kȳng his retenanz alle tille him he drouh

Of Inglis & Normanz, & gadred folk inouh.

Whan he had samned his oste of folk fer & nere,

He seged bi þat coste þe kastle of Tenkere.

Whilom Wiliam Mortayn þerof lord was,

þe Courthosē is vnfaȳn, him þenk it a trespas.

þerfor þe duke him dight, as man of grete value,

Roberd Beleyse with mȳght, þe sege þei wend remue.

¶ þe Mortayn befor spoken, with his nevoŵ Reȳnere,  
þe sege þe wend haf broken, þei com with þer powere.

¶ þe kȳng sauh þat þei kam, his trompes did he blowe,

To þe bataile lie nam, Roberd side gede lowe.

De cap-  
cione.

Roberti  
Courthose  
satis Hen-  
rici, & de  
sine ejus-  
dem Ro-  
berti vide  
per totum.

Roberd side zede doun, for he bitrayed was.  
His owen men did treson, þe kȳng him tok, allas!  
Now taken is Roberd, & brouht vnto prison,  
At Corue his kastle sperd depe in a dongeon.  
William þe Mortayn he skapes with no gile,  
Fettered he is certayn Roberd of Stotēuile.  
& Sir William Crispȳn with þe duke was led,  
Togider prisoned in zeres & dayes þam fed  
þe kȳng þam þer in mete & cloth inouh,  
þat neuer þei were o twynne, vntille ded þam slouh.

**O**FTEN I haf herd told of þis duke Roberd,  
So gode knyght no so bold was non in alle þe werld,  
Ageyn þe Sarazins in bataile sorto go,  
Now he ligges in pȳnes, sorow wille him slo.  
Why felle him suilk chance, & þis ilk mishap?  
For of Gode's ordinance he forsoke þe schap.  
Gode's grace he forsoke for zernȳng of þis lond.  
Vengeance þerfor he tók at his endȳng he fond.

**A**T Coue is Roberd dede, þe maner of his endȳng  
Mȳ boke it me forbede to telle þerof no þing.

Ecce, heu!  
dicta God-  
fridi de Bo-  
lyonde Ro-  
berto Cour-  
those.

<sup>1</sup> L. Corue. Others say Caer-  
diff in South-Wales. See what is  
said about his death in p. 426,  
443. of Rob. of Glouc. To which  
may be here added, that as nei-  
ther Robert of Gloucester, nor  
the Chronicle of Peter. Lantost  
(that I now publish) say, that

Robert Duke of Normandy's  
Eyes were pulled out, so neither  
does John Rastall say any thing  
of that matter, as well knowing  
(and Sir Tho. More too had told  
him the truth of that part of  
our History) that the Story was  
not vouch'd by such Historians,

as came nearest to Duke Robert's time: But I shall put down the Words of Rastall at large, because they will give some light to the Reader as he is perusing this work of Peter Langtoft. ¶ In the seconde yere of his [*Hen. the First's*] reygne Robert Courteyse his brother duke of Normandye | whiche had ben longe tyme occupied in warre agaynst Chrystes enemyes hauynge worde of the dethe of his brother wyllyam Rufus | and that his brother henry had takyn vpon hym to be kyng of Englaunde | made preparacyon in Normandye and came ouer into Engiande with a great hoost to chalenge the crowne. But by mediacyon of the lordes | it was agreed that Robert shulde haue every yere duryng his life. iii. M. markes | as was promysed hym before by kyng wyllyam his brother. And who so euer lyued longest to be others heyre. And sone after that | this Robert departed agayne into Normandye. This Robert by his manhode dyd many notable actes | and specially at the wynnyng of the clyte of Acon vpon the myscreantes & Turkes | and was chosyn kyng of Jerusalem | whiche

he refused to take vpon him. In this tyme began great warre in Normandye betwene kyng Henry & kyngé Philyp of fraunce | but kyng Philyp sone after dyed. ¶ About the. iiii. yere of this kyng | Robert Courteyse came into England agayne | to his brother henry whiche made hym great chere that before that Robert departed | he released to his brother the forenamed trybutie of. iii. M. markes | & departed agayne into Normandye. After this a great varyaunce fell betwene this Robert and his lordes in Normandye (that they sent vnto kyng henry his brother wyllyng for to come into Normandye | & they wolde delyuer hym the contrey. And also by the intyssement of yll tale tellers | a great varyaunce fell betwene kyng henry & his brother Robert | in Normandye. that the kyngé dyed with a great armye sayled into Normandye | & with the helpe of the lordes there | chased his brother Robert from place to place | and wanne from hym Roan | Cane | Faloyes | and all the good townes & many castels. But at the last this Robert gaue battell to kyng henry.



A hardy knyght was he, ouer all bare þe pris,  
 At Jerusalem Cite, opon Gode's enmys.  
 Godferay Bolion said, that many man it herd;  
 "More my triste is laid on þe duke Roberd,  
 " & I had grete nede ageyn þe Sarazines to go,  
 " & better suld he spede þan a hundreth mo:  
 " Take him þe kepýng þe coroun of Jerusalem,  
 " For seke is the kýng, of him is no bote of beem.

¶ þe brid day of Aduent, bifor Criste's messe,  
 þe kýng a seknes hent, þe dede him tok alle fresse.  
 þe folk of þat Cite to God mad orisoun,  
 At þe temple *dominæ* with gode deuocioun,  
 Who þan were worþi þe coroune forto haue,  
 Ageyn þe paemy þe Cristendam to saue,  
 Godfrey & Roberd, & lered men & lewed,  
 & God þer praieres herd, & to þam alle schewed.  
 A brightnesse com fro heuen, & on Roberd light,  
 þre týmes alle euen, þat alle sauh it with sight.  
 þris þat alle mot se þe light on Roberd toke,  
 Vngracious man was he, þris he it forsoke.  
 þorgh conseile of som of hise, refused he þat present;  
 þei said, on oþer wise he sülle haf auancement.

Ecce quomodo Robertus despexit gratiam & electionem Dei.

duke Robert taken prisoner.  
 and kept in prison in the castell of Cardiffe in walys |  
 by the space of. xxviii. yere

ry | in the whiche  
 battell this Robert was takyn  
 and sent ouer  
 into Englande |

where he after dyed without  
 yssue of his body | and was  
 buried at Gloucester. And  
 when this Robert was takyn |  
 the kyng Henry seasyd alle  
 Normandye into his owne  
 handes.

Godfrey was oglift, to Roberd spak fulle tite,  
 " Withouten any essoÿne, vengeance salle falle þe not lite.  
 " Forsakes þou Gode's gyft, þou dos him grete despite.  
 þus sayd Godfrey of Bolyon, his hert was fulle of site.  
 Forsoth vengeance he fond, of Criste þe grace he les.  
 For couetise of þis lond, his mischene he ches.  
 Of Roberd is no speyre to mak of parlement.  
 His broþer Henry is heyre of alle his tenement,  
 Of alle Normundie, withouten geÿnsayng,  
 Als heyr of ancestrie, Henry seÿsed þat þing.

**S**ONE þan was it told vnto þe kyng of France,  
 þat Roberd lif was sold þorgh treson & mischance.  
 Whan Lowys herd þat sawe, þat Roberd was so dede,  
 Ageyn right & lawe, tille Henry he misbede.  
 For traytours of men Inglis to Lowys þam bond,  
 þei hight him forto wisse, how he mot haf þis lond.  
 He trowed to þer conseile, at Douere he gan vp ryue,  
 It had bien wroþerheile, if he ne had went belyue.  
 þe kynges kosyn Thebaut, & Randolf Gobion,  
 To gyf Lowys assaut, samned at Chilyngton.  
 Of Wales þei had inowe, þat Sir Lowys gan chace,  
 & of his men þam slowe, to rest þei had no space.  
 Vnto þe se side chaced þei Sir Lowys,  
 He durst not abide, no turne Thebald his vis.  
 To schip ilkon þei wert, fulle on lond leued.  
 Mot þei Lowys hent, he suld haf lorn his heued.

**W**HAN Henry herd telle þis of þat gode cheuysance,  
Of <sup>1</sup> of þe toþer Inglis, þat conseild Lowys of France,  
þat suld haf bien his owen, & mad þe chance ouer grim,  
& þei wer fulle wele knowen, þat wild haf tresond him,  
How Gobion was certeyn, Thebaut his neuow stoute,  
Turned Lowys ageyn, of lond þei chaced him oute,  
Siben with grete nobley, & with mykelle honoure,  
Henry toke his way toward þe Emperoure,  
To þe Emperour of Almayn his douhter to gyue.  
Malde hight þat mayden, a fayrer mot non lyue.  
þat mayden moder hight Mald þe gode quene,  
Lady to maynten right sen sho was has non bene.  
Now has kyng Henry, þorgh þis weddyng,  
Grete power & party ageyns a lordyng.

De Matild  
filia Hen-  
rici regis.

**I**N Now Henry kyng leue nam at þe Emperour Henry,  
& his sonne William, & went to Normundy.  
He gaf William his sonne with skrite & <sup>1</sup> f<sup>m</sup> seele fulle fre  
To hold, als it was wonne, alle Normundie in fe.  
To Thebaud of Plesance left with him of his meyne,  
& vntille Ingland est he turned ouer þe se.

**I**N his seuentend zere þat he regned kyng,  
Malde þe quene his pere in God scho did endyng.  
At London at Saynt Poule's in tounge is scho laid,  
Criste þan haf hir soule meusk of hir men said.  
If any man wille witen, & se of hir storie,  
At Westmynster written er þei redilie.

De morte  
Matildis  
Reginæ  
bonæ.

---

<sup>1</sup> Dele. <sup>2</sup> Sic. Sed f. delend. est.

*Henricus primus Rex.*

**I** Now es þe kȳng sorȳ, hir dede dos him fulle gram,  
 He gos to Normundy to his sonne William.  
 Tuo zere he wonnes, & faire courte þer field,  
 Untille boþe his sonnes þer moder dede he teld.  
 & in þe þrid zere þe kȳng to Ingland went,  
 His sonnes & þer powere a noþer tide þei hent.  
 þei toke a noþer tide, alas! it was ouer hard,  
 & dronkled bi þe se side boþe William & Richard.  
 Tuo erles & þet wȳues with þam dronkled were,  
 & manȳ oþer lyues in þe se left þere.  
 William Bigot þer selle, Roberd Maudut þat liiht,  
 & Sir Geffrey Ridelle, & Othes þat was his knyght.  
 þise men were of Gode, þat dronkled alle in fere.  
 To lyue non ne gode, but on was marinere.  
 þe bodics with þer godes wer costen vp on þe sond,  
 After an ebbe of þe flode, euer ilkøn þei foud.  
 Tuo sonnes were our kȳng born, þat his heires suld be,  
 & boþe ere þei lorn, for soth þat is þite.

**T**O lond com þe kȳng, after þat passage,  
 With manȳ gretē lordȳng of his baronage.  
 Godefrey of Louayn, þe duke þat was douhtȳ,  
 Bi messengers tuayn sent to kȳng Henry,  
 For his douhter Adelayn, þat wele was þan of age.  
 Sir Henry mad þe sȳne, & mad þe marriage.  
 þe maȳ withouten vice, his weldȳng was wele dight,  
 & Malde þe Emperice is heȳre of Henry right.

Matild im-  
 peratrix  
 vidua.

**I** þe Emperour Henry, þat Mald has to wȳue,  
 Scho had no child him by Mald in alle his lyue.

þan died þe Emperour, Henry for Mald sent  
As Emperice with honour; Mald tille Ingland went.  
Henry was alle glad of his douhter comýng,  
Nouht long siþen scho had praier for weddýng.  
þe goule erle of Aniove of Mald herd he say  
Fulle richely to trowe, tille tok his way.  
He ryued vp at Douere, & dight him eft alle bone,  
Whan alle were wele ouere, to London com he sonc.  
þe erle so wele sped tille our kýng Henry,  
þat his sonne suld wed, & Mald was alle redý.  
þe Emperice was dight, as lady felle to be.  
With hir went many a knyght tille Aniove þat cuntre.  
þe erle þis lady gent gaf Henry<sup>1</sup> his sonne,  
Alle his tenement, þat his eldres was wonne.

---

<sup>1</sup> *The Author here (as he does also in many other Places) strangely differeth from other Historians, in making Maud the Empress to be married to Henry Son of the Earl of Anjou, when she was really married (after the Death of the Emperour Henry IV. who was her first husband) to Geffrey Plantagenet Earl of Anjou, son of Foulk King of Jerusalem. Hence John Rastall (in his most scarce Chronicle) writes thus; ¶ About the. xxi. yere [of Hen. I.] there was a great counsell called in London | for the correccyon of the vicyous lyyunge of preestes*

to be done by the kynges offycers. Sone after this Henry the Emperour dyed | & Maude the empresse came to her father kyng henry | whiche caused Dauyd the kyng of Scotlande and the more parte of the lordes of Englande to do othe and fealte to the Empresse | and to kepe the lande to her if the kyng dyed without issue male.

¶ Also about the. xxviii. yere | one Geffrey Plantagenot erle of Angeo maryed the sayd Maude and after by her had issue Henry | whiche henry after kyng Steuyn was kyng of Englande.

Whan

Whan þe fader had ent alle at his auys,  
To þe holý lond he went, & died oñ Gode's enmýs.

**H**ENRY his sonne & Molde, þat held þe seignorie,  
A squne þei had fulle bolde, & his name Henric.  
Sipen had þei a noþer, þat þei cald William,  
þat was Henry broþer, boþe of Mald cam.  
Hir fader þe kýng loued þo childre so,  
þat he wild for no þing þe sight of þam forgo.

ÞE kýng went at the last vnto Normundie,  
& praied his douhter fast, to bere him companie;  
& hir sonnes boþe, Henry & William,  
þei were him nere boþe, gladly with him þei nam.  
Henry regned here þrittý gere & fiue,  
& þre moneþes sere, in þis feble lyue.  
þe dede euele him toke, he died at his day,  
þe body did þei loke, þat long abouen erþe lay.  
On bere lay kýng Henry, on bere bigond þe se,  
þat non wist certeynly, who his heýr suld be.  
Of Mald som had þe speýre, þe erle wif of Aniowe,  
Hir sone Henry & heýre of him was masté to trowe.  
So long he lay oñ bere, for doute of his lynage,  
Tille men þe soth mot here, who suld haf þe heritage.  
Els I ne wote for wham, his biriýng suld men schonne,  
Tille Steuen of Plesance cam, þat was his sister sonne.  
Steuen com for þe nons, þis lond to haf he þouht.  
After were Henry bones to Redýnge's abbay brouht.

De morte  
Henrici  
primi per  
totum.

His bones did he lay in a tounge of honour,  
It was his owen abbaÿ, þerof he was <sup>1</sup> foundour.

**H**ENRY is at his reste, his soule at Criste's wille,  
& Steuen wille do his beste, in Ingland leues he stille;

DeHenrico  
comite An-  
degawia.

Thebaud, Steuen broþer, as erle in his cuntre,  
Of þ side ne of oþer no þing deles he.

Henry of Aniowe takes conseile at frendes,  
With Malde, þat is so trowe, to Saynt Denys he wendes,  
& his sonne Henry, þat men helde of grete pris,  
þei gaf him Normundie bifor þe kyng Lowys,  
& tille his heyres for aÿ, to hold of þe kyng of France.

And on þe toþer day men teld him of a chance,  
þat Gerard of Peiters þe erle Marchis had fet,  
Aniowe with þer souders was alle biseged & set.

Whan Henry herd telle, he tok leue at Lowys,  
Bot Mald scho gan duelle at þe castelle Sir Amys,  
þat was duke of Gaynes, Henry cosyñ þorgh right.  
To suffre Henry paynes he hette him alle his myght.

Also þe duke Henry with his fadere zede,  
With help of Normundie, þe better mot he spede.

---

<sup>1</sup> ¶ This kyng henry the  
fyrst | bylded the Abbey of  
Redyng | & released the En-  
glysshemen the Dane gelt.  
Also this kyng henry beyng  
in Normandy in the xxxv.  
yere of his reyne | the se-  
conde day of December in

the yere of Chryst. M.C.xxxv.  
dyed. Some say he dyed of a  
surfet | and some wryters say  
that it was by a fall of a  
horse | and his body was  
brought into Englaunde | and  
is buryed in the Abbay of Re-  
dyng. *J. Rastall in his Chr.*

Bot

Bot William, Henry broþer, died; & þan was wo,  
 þe werre with alle þe toþer lasted fife zere & mo.  
 In alle þis ilk tīrpelle wex Steuen a fulle wise man,  
 þorgh quaintise & conseile þe coroune of Ingloūd wan;  
 þe date of Jhesu pundred, þat men tellis bi,  
 A þousand & a hundred & sex & þritti.

De corona-  
 cione Ste-  
 phani.

**O**N Saynt Steuen day, withouten any conquest,  
 þe barons on gode aray at London mad þei feste,  
 þorgh conseile of ilkon, þai gaf Steuen þe coron,  
 Heȳre was he non, no þertille had resoun.  
 þe Emperice sonne Henry he had right þertille,  
 Bot right zede þer forby, þe barons did no skille.

De jura-  
 mento Re-  
 gis.

¶ Bot sen his coronyng tille Oxenford he fore,  
 & þer Steuen þe kыng bifor þe clergie suore,  
 þat if a bisshopriche vacant wer þe se,  
 þe kыng, no non of his, suld chalange þat of fe,  
 With wrong no with right, of non þat fro him cam,  
 So help him God alle myght, & þat halidam.

¶ A noþer oth not leste, þe clergie did him karke,  
 þat wodes ne foreste, withouten palaised parke,  
 þe comon folk suld queme on & oþer in fere,  
 þe kыng no man suld deme in courte for wilde dere,  
 Clerk ne lewed man for no wilde beste,  
 For comon þe folk it wan wod open & forest.

¶ þe þrid poynt þei wild, to suere he was dryuen,  
 þat þe Danegelde for euer suld be forgыuen,  
 & of ' of ilk a hide tuo schillynges þat he toke.  
 Suld neuer eft betide, he suore þat on þe boke,



Ne costom no seruise of þing þat he forgaf,  
 þat noiþer he no hise suld chalange rif no raf.  
 Of som poyntes he spak, & suore vnto þe clergie.  
 þat ilk zere he it brak þe kyng in som partie.

**WHAN** wrathed Steuen with Daudid of Scotland,  
 þat wild not till him cheuen, no bowe vnto his hand.  
 Daudid vnto Mald had mad his homage,  
 Steuen was in defaut, to Daudid did outrage.  
 Bot Henry Daudid soune, þat his heyr suld be,  
 Contek for to schonne, to Steuen mad feaute.  
 Steuen sauh his skille, þat Henry did resoun,  
 With alle þat longed þer till he gaf him Huntýngton.  
 Henry of Huntýngton he wrote þe gastes olde,  
 & sais in his sermon þat newe ere now tolde.  
 A bisshop of Lyncoln, Alisaundre he hight;  
 þat non suld be forholn, he praied him if he myght.  
 In Alisaundre tyme kam, & Henrie's þe compilour  
 Ros þe ordre of Sempýngham þorgh Gilbert þe confessour.  
 Saynt Margrete story sais Daudid of hir kam,  
 Of Daudid kýng Henry, of Henry com William,  
 Of William Alisandre, & Alisandre of him,  
 þat wedded kýng Edward sistir, þat was þe Scottis grim.  
 þis is þe Genelogie fro S. Margarete þe quene  
 Of kýnges bi & bi in kýnde þat has bene.  
 Now of Steuen to speke turne we est ageyn,  
 Our tale wille we no breke, bot telle forth þe certeyn.

**A**T Pask in London þe kýng his feste held,  
 With erle & baron, with knyght þat was of scheld.  
 Was non þat þider zode, þat holden was of pris,  
 þat he ne had gyftes gode of Steuen þat was wys.  
 After þis fest praised Steuen with alle his here,  
 þe castellis he seised, þat he hat neuer ere.  
 & Baudewýn of Beduere he flemed fro toun & felde,  
 A kestelle with powere ageýn þe kýng held,  
 þe kastelle tille him toke, Baudwýn had it lorn.  
 Here how þe kýng forsokke his oth þat he had suorn:

Perjuratus  
 est Rex.

**I**n Huntýngtonschire þe kýng in þat forest  
 A monetli lay, to spire for wod & wilde beste.  
 Forsters did somoun, enquered vp & down,  
 Whilk men of toun had taken his venýsoun,  
 & who þat was giltý þorgh þe foresters sawe,  
 Mercied was fulle hi, & don<sup>1</sup> & fulle grete awe.  
 þus he brauk his avowe, þat he to God had suorn,  
 For a buske or a bowe þat he forgaf befor.

**O**PON þis ilk sýn to Normundie he went.  
 þo serganz he fond þerin, he exiled þam & schent,  
 þat had kept þe land þorgh Mald þe Emperice,  
 þat were hir wele willand were putt out of office.  
 Sýþen he went to Fraunce, & comi vnto Parýs;  
 & þer acordance bituex him & Lowýs,  
 & gaf it Eustace his sonne alle Normundie in fe,  
 To hold, as it was wonne, of Lowýs for feaute.  
 þe kyng for his seruisse confermed his gyft,  
 & on þis ilk wise Eustace to duke was list!

<sup>1</sup> F. in fulle.

þe brid zere of his regne he com to Ingland,  
Bedford he beseged, & wan it to his hand.  
þen dight him to Scotland, & mykelle folk him wit,  
& slouh alle þat he fand for luf of kȳng Daud.  
For he mot neuer drawe Daud till homage.  
Daud did bot lawe, Mald had his seruage.  
Tille Mald with alle his myght for lese or for loth,  
For scho was heyre þorgh right, to hir he held his oth.  
He sauh he myght not spede, & Daud com no nerre,  
To Wales suiþe he zede, and on þam gan werre.

De obsidio-  
ne Bedfor-  
die, & cap-  
cione ejus-  
dem.

**STEUEN** stoutly deles, in stedes þor he kennes,  
þat ageyn him holdes kasteles on þam rapely rennes.  
In Herford fulle stoutely his gannok has vp set.  
With Roberd fitz Henry Steuen so with him met,  
þat Bristow kastele & toun, whedir he wild or non,  
& slede with alle þe honour, & oþer sex ilkon,  
Carro, Lodelow toun, Schrobesbiri & Warwik,  
Dunford & Maltone, Steuen wan þam ilk a stik,  
& þo þat þe casteles kept, in penance þei soiorned,  
þat eft not on him lept, to Wynchestre he tourned.  
At Wynchestre he spires, his frendes drawes till him,  
For folk of fele schires agen him turnes grim.  
Whan Daud of Scotland herd þe soth sawe,  
þat Steuen was duelland in þe South grete þrawe,  
þe folk ferly mykelle ageyn him þei ros,  
& Daud herte gan tikelle, þat him wex fele fos.  
Fulle son at Rokesburghe his parlement he helde,  
þe solk did somon þorgh of tuenty wynter elde.

Misit Gan-  
nok in Her-  
fordia.

De Rege  
Scottorum.

& gaf þam sonde at wille in Ingland forto fare,  
 Man & beste to spille, non ne suld þei spare.  
 Southward þe Scottis hasted; bifor þam bare alle down,  
 Alle þe cuntre wasted vnto Aluertoun.  
 Whan þe kyng Dauid Aluerton had sene,  
 & wend wele at his grith alle Ingland had bene,  
 þe Norreis so þam defendid ageyn þo þat he broght,  
 Whan Dauid alle had spendid, of þam wan he nouht.  
 Liste how Dauid les his spente & his trauaile,  
 & whilk oñ him gaa pres; to renne oñ his rascaile.

**T**HE archbisshop Thurstan, a gode clerk wele in age,  
 Herd þe Scottis com ilkan of Dauid baronage,  
 Forto destroie Ingland, & set it in seruage,  
 Thurstan sent his sond, till a bissh sauage,  
 Rauf of Orkeney; noble of lynage,  
 þat he suld tak þei wey, opon his kostage,  
 & do þe Scottis deie, & þer pride asuage.  
 Whan Rauf herd him so seie, he dight him to þat rage.  
 þise were þo þat nam, als in þe geste it sais,  
 Of Almarle erle William, & Walter de Gounteis;  
 Roberd de Brus þer cam, & Gilbert de la Say,  
 & his sonne Adam; & Roger de Moubraý.  
 Walter Spek was in þat stoure, gode knight at alle heues,  
 þe boke tellis grete honoure of his douhty dedes,  
 Of monkes & chanones he did mak abbeis,  
 Wis man in þe lawe knyght gode & curteis.  
 William Peuerelle com als, he was of þe West,  
 Ageyn þe Scottis fals, a gode man with þe best.

þise were þe barons, þat com of þe North ende,  
þat Rauf mad somons ageyn Daudid to wende.  
þise men list þer standard, þat stoute was & grim,  
Ageyn Daudid wandelard, & disconfite him.

**S**AID Rauf tille ilkon, or þei ta bataile went,  
“Of þe bissliop Thurston haf I comandment,  
“ þe clerkes forto tech, for þe londe’s nede,  
“ þe lewed also to preche, & comforte þam to dede.  
“ ze wite wele a remenant, & forsoth ze kenne,  
“ þat Inglis & Normaut be now ons men.  
“ zour ancestres conquered all France quitely,  
“ Were þei neuér ferde of Frankis men hardy.  
“ Pople with alle þe recchesse, & akres, als þei wonnen,  
“ þorgh þer douhtinesse, þe lond þorgh þei ronnen.  
“ Sifen wan þei Inglond, þat is so plentynous,  
“ & now er þise bot mansbond, rascaile of refous.  
“ On zour fadres þink, þat were staworth in stoure.  
“ For þise ne salle ze blenk, bot hold vp þer honoure.  
“ Go we with godc wille, & here I zow assoyle,  
“ Of alle zour synnes ille granted of þe apostoyle,  
“ þat ze haf said or þouht, or don þat is schryuen,  
“ In Criste, þat ws alle bouht, be it zow forgyuen.  
“ þerto my benyson tille alle þat go bliþely,  
“ In þe name of þe fadere & þe sonne & sprit saucti.

De Radulpho de Orkneye, qui ductor fuit de bello. Hii sunt qui fuerunt in prælio.

**D**AUID of Scotland hasted to þe bataile,  
Walter Spek ros on hand, þe folk to forme & taile.

He bad, þat non alone breke out w<sup>ch</sup> þe rengaile.  
 William of Almarle acordes to þer conaile.  
 To while þat þise men bold with þer folk gan daile,  
 Sir Robert de Brus þe old to Dauid gan traualle.  
 Here now of þe Brus, how he Dauid gan saile,  
 With word þat was Irus, if it mot out nauaile.  
 " Dauid my lordyng, land I hold of þe  
 " & als of Steuen kýng, for hange & leaue.  
 " Leue alle þis foly, þat þou here bigyones,  
 " þin heýres salle it bý, & þou ho þýng wyntes.  
 " & loke, þat þou not lese of lond þis ilk day,  
 " þe best I rede þou chese, þi lif saue if þou may.  
 " For Inglis & Normant er stalworth men in stoure,  
 " It is folk valiant, ouer alle þei bere þe floure.  
 " For neuer mot þou fynde Inglis kýng giloure.  
 " To þe & to þi kýnde haf þei don honoure,  
 " Londes haf þei gyuen to þin ancessoure.  
 " If trespas be misdryuen, & do þin owen socoure,  
 " & I wille mak amendes, tak a day of loue.  
 " If þou ne wille, þou spendes, & we salle be aboue.  
 " þou may haf þi wille, if þou to loue chese,  
 " & if þou turne tille ille, non wote who salle lese.  
 " Wherfor, my lord Dauid, do bi gode conseile,  
 " Tak goþ pes & grith, & late be þis tirpeile,  
 " & late not now be spoken of þe mishap.  
 " For eft it wille be wroken with a hardere klap.

De consilio  
 Roberti  
 Brus.

Dauid

**DAVID** listend Roberd, to pes fulle ech to drawe,  
Bot oþer was ansue d, & sturbled alle þer sawe,  
William bis neuen, a man of proude wille,  
& said, “ Roberd þe bru, traytour hold þe stille.  
Roberd said him nay, traytour was he non,  
“ David haf gode day, myn homage now is gon.  
He smote his hors with spors, & fleih fro þat rascaile,  
& comandid his trompors, to blow vnto bataile.  
¶ Rauf of Orkeney cried, “ Inglis go now go,  
“ & do þise Scottis deie, þei waken vs euer wo.  
þe Normans were alle glad, þorgh schet þam als þe ro.  
þe Inglis did as he bad, bifor þam stode bot fo.  
Almerle his banere sprad, & oþer barons mo,  
Mikelle blod þei schad of folk þat þei gon slo.  
David away fled, þat bigan alle þat þro,  
Here how a squier spel, sen David fled þam fro.  
¶ A hede þat was of smyten, þat þis squier fond,  
Priue, þat non suld witen, in an orfreis it wond,  
& sette it on a spere, in an orfreis vnbiwened,  
& said, “ lo! here I bere David k yng heued,  
“ þis is þe hede þat was of David þe Scottis k yng.  
þe Scottis said, “ allas! þis is a grete encumberyng.  
þe Scottis þat stode fer fro, & þe hede biheld,  
Fulle wightly gan þei go, schand out of þe feld.  
Wolgryn & Dufnald for euer more þei left,  
Of knyght no squier bald on lyue non þei left.  
þe Scottis whan þei cam, bestes ouer alle þei toke,  
Hors & nete alle samen bifor þer oste þei schoke.

þei did it for a wile, þorgh & þorgh tou,
 To put bestes in perile, our folk to bere down.
 Our men herd it say, þei were warned bəforu,
 In ilk strete & way þei ordeynd an erþe horn.
 Whan þe com þam blewe, þe bestes ngeyn fled,
 þe Scottis men down thewe, for roryng wer þei dret.
 þe bestis þorgh þam zede, & ouer þer rascaille ran,
 þe Inglis after with dede, & slouh þam ilk a man.
 þis was at Kouton more, þat þe erþe hornes blewe.
 þer þe Scottis misfore, men telle þe tale zit newe.
 Sir Henry, Dauid sonne, þe romance sais so þere,
 His dedis were more to mone, þan sex þe best þer were.
 Our barons had þe pris, with þam held þe right,
 þe Scottis side down Iis, þei þanked God all myght.

De capti-  
 one David,  
 & de Eus-  
 tathio filio  
 Stephani.

¶ þe moneth of heruest was Dauid disconfit,
 þe next zole alle preste Steuen dight him fulle tife,
 & tille Scotlond went, & tok he kyng Dauid,
 & tille Inglond him sent, his sonne Henry him wit.
 ¶ A sonne had Steuen þe kyng, Eustace was his name,
 In armes gode gynnyng, of pruesse had he fame,
 Lowys doulter of France Eustace tok to wife,
 Steuen for þat chance was more stouter in strife.
 Alisander, þat was bisshop of Lyncoln schire,
 I ne wote for what trespas, þe kyng tille him had ire.
 Sleford & Neuwerk þe kyng rest him þo tueyn,
 At Wynchestere þorgh conseile he had þam boþe ageyn.

Matildis  
 Imperatrix  
 venit in  
 Angliam.

¶ þat ilk tyme so felle Mald þe Emperice com to lond,  
 þe castelle of Arondelle open ageyn hir fond.

Whan



When Steuen vnderstode Mald was in Arondelle,  
 With mykelle folk & gode<sup>1</sup> bigeged þat kastelle.  
 Mald þouht of þis stoure, scho biþouht hir straitte,  
 & douted dishonoure; þat mot com þorgh disceite.  
 Scho did hir to Bristow, & duellid oþer half zere,  
 & þider fro Anjowe com hire a messengere,  
 & told to Mald here, þat scho fulle wele trod;  
 Hir lord lay on bere, his soule bitaken God,  
 & Henry hire sonne had þe heritage,  
 To hold as it was wonne, don was his homage.  
 Mald in Bristow lettres fast sendes,  
 Bi messengers trowe, forto procoure frendes,  
 To burgeis & citez (þe wardēyns alle scho freistes,)  
 & to lordes of feez, þat scho on treistes.  
 Of help scho þam bisouht, in right & leaute,  
 þat þei failed hir nouht, for heyre þe wist hir be.  
 þe barons said, scho had right in hire askyng.  
 Son was þe contek schiad bituex þam & þe kyng.  
 Ilkon on his side to bataile purueid him,  
 þat power had to bide most was stoute & grim.  
 ¶ Sir William of Almarle wex a stoute sire,  
 He zerned to haue alle Lyncolnschire,  
 Ageyn Gilbert þe Gaunt reised his banere.  
 Gilbert was valiaunt, ageyn him fulle austere.  
 Gilbert had þe erledam þat tyme of heritage.  
 Bituex him & William was don many outrage.  
 Of Gilbert first to telle, to William did he wouh  
 He did brenne Helwelle, & William broþer slouh.

Misit baro-  
 nibus pro  
 auxilio.

<sup>1</sup> Sic.

þe castelle of Bitham to Gilbert golden was.  
It longed to William, þat tyme felle him þat car.

**W**ILLIAM of Almarle þat tyme Northward rode,  
þe castelle of Hundmanby he cast down alle o brode.  
Sir Eustace le fitz Jon at þat dede was,  
More him, þan ilkon, þe wited þat trespas.  
Who so was wroþe, or oþer, biforn, for any chance,  
His enmy þe toþere toke þan his vengeance.  
þo þat lufed werryng mad parties ay bituen,  
Som held with Steuen þe kyng, & som with Mald þe quene.  
For erles & barons, þat were of Malde's kynde,  
Souht citez & touns, þe kyng if þei mot fynde.  
Hir frendes fulle fast waited aboute & woke,  
& Mald at þe last kyng Steuen scho toke,  
& led him to Bristow, & did him þer in hold,  
In prison, I trowe, þorgh þe quene Mold.

<sup>1</sup> þan þe riche & pouere, & alle comonly,

<sup>2</sup> For Berwik to Douere held hir for lady.

¶ Whan þe lond gan hir loute, & alle was at hir wille,  
þan bare scho hir oner stoute, & wild vnto no skille.  
For or þat gere was gon, scho bare hir so stoute,  
þat þe Lundreis ilkon of London drof hir oute.  
Mald þorgh þe Lundreis fro London is katched,  
With hors & herneis Bristow has scho latched.

---

<sup>1</sup> Des riches & des pouers. | leimperice dame rescen de  
de communalte Est Malde | gre. *Gall.* <sup>2</sup> F. fro.

What for ire & tene, & alle in euelle wille,  
Scho stolked kyng Steuen, & þer did scho ille.

**N**OW turnes eft Mold to Wyncester fulle stoute,  
& Steuen out of þat hold quaintly skaped oute.  
Roberd went hir with, Malde's half broþer,  
& þe kyng Dauid of Scotland was þe toþer.  
At Wynchester gan scho duelle, biseged þe castelle:  
þe Londreis herd it telle, & gared þam fulle welle,  
With gode aparaille of alle þat þei mot gete.  
þe sege þei gan assaile, & tok hir at þe mete.  
Roberd þer was taken in to þe Londreis hand,  
Bot Dauid was wele waken, he fled fast to Scotland,  
Alle þorgh Chestreschire, he fled to Louthian.  
A preste was with hire, þat Mald fro þam wan.  
Mald & Roberd Louelle tille Oxenford þei fled,  
& seised þe castelle, & Steuen fast him sped,  
& gadred him an oste, & went vnto Wilton,  
& did reise in þat coste a stalworth donjon.  
Mald wist þat fulle wele, hir barons þider sent,  
& Steuen left ilka dele, & to Northampton went.  
William Marschalle o chance was taken at þat turne:  
He gaf for his delyuerance þe castelle of Schirburne.  
Folk bigond þe se, þat were of Steuen's kynde,  
Tille him com grete plente, & oþer þat þei mot fynde.  
Steuen with his power tille Oxenford gan schake,  
His sege he set plener, þe castelle forto take.  
þe Emperice it held, was it þe wynter tide,  
þe snowe lay in þe feld, þe water frese biþide.

De Matilde  
Imperatrice.

þe.

þe lady had defaute boþe of mete & drynk,  
 & scho dred þer assaute, hunger was at þe bynk.  
 Scho asked hir conseile, what was þer of to rede.  
 " Steuen wille vs traucile, & famen vs to dede.  
 Non ne couth ne wild conseile on no partie,  
 Bo þe castelle to zeld, & ask þe kýng mercie.  
 þat ne wild scho nouht, hir herte was so stoute.  
 Bot here now how scho wrouht, & how scho passed oute.  
 A fulle selcouth rede tok at hir owen herte,  
 Scho left for life no dede, ne colde þat was so smerte.  
 Sone after mydnýglt, þat crowe suld þe cok,  
 In þe snowe for sýght scho zede out in hir smok,  
 Ouere þe water of Temse, þat frosen was iýs,  
 Withouten kirtelle or kemse, saue kouerchef alle bare vis.  
 To Walýngford scho wan, & þer scho left a while,  
 þe way scho zed & ran, on length it is ten mile.  
 & Steuen þe castelle wan of þam cuer ilkon.  
 þei gelded it ilk man, ' wham dam Mald was gon.

**I**N þis tyme had Steuen regned auht zere in alle,  
 Lered & lewed wære euen, & pere & paringalle;  
 So þat knýght & squiere, if þei powere mot make,  
 Of holy kyrke pleynere tok þat þei mot take.  
 þe pape þan herd þe pleýnt, he sent hider a legate.  
 At London þei wer atteýnt, decre was mad for þate,  
 gif any lewed man laid hand opon clerk,  
 Or with ille on ran, þat of corun had merk,  
 He suld not escape, þorgh bisshop granted fre,  
 Of non bot of þe pape mýght he assoyled be.

þe kȳng it was herd, & chastised his meȳne,  
& oþer afterward leſt of þer nȳcete.

**T**HER after half a zere þe clergie had gode pes,  
þat noiþer wo no werre non on þam gan pres.

Bot Geffrey of Maundeule þe kȳng Steuen him reſt  
His baronie, þat while robberie with Joh was leſt.

þe abbay of Rameſeie hi nȳght he robbed it,  
þe tresore bare aweie with hand þei myȳht on hit.

Abbote & priour & monke þei did out chace,

Of holy kirke a toure to theft þei mad it place.

Robert þe Marmion þe same wayes did he,

He robbed þorgh treson þe kirke of Couentre.

Here now of þeir ſchame, what chance biſelle.

þe ſtory ſais þe same, ſoth as þe gospelle.

¶ Robert þe Marmyon he lepe vp on his ſtede,

þorgh Couentre þat toun vnto þe kirke he gede.

He comandid his men, to dryue out þe couent,

þe godes him biken, þat þei mot tak or hent.

Whan þei had inouh, als mykelle as þei mot lede

þat þei of herneis drouh, to go þei gan þam ſpede.

He turned his bridelle wiþ querte, he wend away haf gone,

þe dede him smote to þe herte, word ſpak he neuer none.

¶ Geffrey of Maundeule to fele wrouh he wouh,

þe deuelle gald him his while, with an arowe on him ſlouh.

þe gode biſshop of Cheſtre curſed þis ilk Geffray,

His liſ out of þis eſtre in curſyng went away.

Arnulf his ſonne was taken als theſe, & brouht in bond,

Beſor þe kȳng forſaken, & exiled out of þis lond.

De Roberts  
Marmyon.

De G.  
Maunde-  
uille.

þe

*Stephanus Rex.*

þe marschalle of þam alle, Helys of Saynt Omerc,  
 To ded þan gon he falle doun of his destrere.  
 þe maistir of þer pedaile, þat kirkes brak & brent,  
 & abbeis gan assaile, monkes slouh & schent,  
 Was born in Pikardie, & his name Reyuere,  
 In suilk felonie gadred grete auere.  
 He had what he wild, & was of wendýng gære,  
 & had a schipe wele filled, ouer þe flode to fare.  
 þer in was wif & childe, & tresore wikly wonnen.  
 So com a tempest wilde, his schip had alle ouer ronnen,  
 þe maryner was ogast, þat schip þat wild not go.  
 Lotes did þei kast, for whom þei had þat wo.  
 þe lote felle oñ Reyuere, & on his wif also.  
 þris kast at týmes sere, selle it on þam tuo.

ÞE schip man wist wele, þe tempest þat þam smote,  
 For þam com ilk a dele, he did þan tak a bote,  
 & did þam alle þerin, Reyuer & his gode,  
 & whan þei were o tuyn, þer schip ferd on þe flode.  
 Reyuer & his wif doun tille helle þei sank,  
 For his wikked lif þe Deuelle gald him þat þank.

**I**N his tende gere a hatrex wex alle hote,  
 þe kýng fulle austere ageyn Sir Hugh Bigote.  
 þe kýng did not wele, with þe wrong he wrouht;  
 Amendes he mad som delc; bot of þe most right nought.  
**A** Rauf þe erle of Chestre, & þe kýng were wroth,  
 In his elleuend gere, þe wend haf acorded both

In alle maner of þing; þat Rauf felt him fled.  
 Bot here now how þe kȳng Rauf þe erle begiled :  
 Unto Northampton Rauf to courte kam.  
 þe kȳng, þorgh treson, Rauf þer he nam,  
 & held him till he gald of Lȳncolne þe castelle,  
 & plenerly haf he wald þe rentis þat þerto felle.  
 ¶ þe twelfti zere of his regne at zole he held his feste  
 At Lȳncolne, as in signe, þat it was his conqueste.  
 Sone after þat feste, þat he þer seȳsen tok,  
 þe courte, moste & leste, tille Arundelle þei schoke.  
 þat þe kȳng was gone, Rauf herd sone say,  
 To Lȳncoln forth on one Rauf þan tok his way,  
 & reised a mangnel, to kast vnto þe toure.  
 þe burgeis were fulle felle, þei gald him hard stoure.  
 þe Gȳour of his oste at þat saut was slayn,  
 & Rauf, for alle his boste, fulle fast fled agayn.

**T**HE zere next on hand zede þe kȳng of France  
 To þe holȳ land, with his purueiance.  
 þe emperour with þo kȳnges went withouten grace.  
 þo & oþer lordȳnges mad þe grete manace,  
 Upon Gode's enmys forto tak vengeance.  
 þei sauh þe payens of pris of so grete purueiance,  
 þe Cristen turned for drede withouten dȳnt of lance.  
 Bot here how þe poraile spede, God gaf þam fair chance.  
 ¶ þe poraile þat went þider, þat had no spendȳng,  
 þei suore þer oth togider, to lette for no þing,  
 To wend vnto Spayn, & tuo Citez þei wan.  
 þe Sarazins was þer wayn, & slouh þam ilk a man.

Ecce kou-  
 wardise  
 magnatum,  
 & fuga eo-  
 rum.

þei

þei zede fro lond to lond, & non ageyn þam stode.  
 þe better grace þei fond, þe ferrer þat þei zode.  
 Hidere com þat tiþand tille oþer lordes manymo,  
 How mykelle grace þei fand, þat durst þe Sarazins slo.  
 þe lordes mot haf schame, whan þei herd it telle,  
 þat dred for Gode's name, at home þei zede to Helle.

De morte  
 Matildis  
 Imperatri-  
 cis, & de  
 forma scri-  
 pti inter  
 Stephanum  
 & Henri-  
 cum filium  
 Imperatri-  
 cis.

**I**N his sextend zere Steuen þat þe lond auht,  
 Mald scho died here, hir soule to God betault.  
 & hir sonne Henry to lond was he comen,  
 þe barons & þe clergý till him alle þe nomen,  
 & with þe kýng Steuen þei held parlement,  
 þat Henry & he euen acorded or þei went.  
 With skrite was set þe pes, & ordeýnd þorgh baroun,  
 þat Steuen till his dises of Ingland suld bere coronoun,  
 & his gyft certeyn be holden stabillý.  
 To Normundie ageyn suld turne þe duke Henry,  
 & Ingland alle holý after Steuen þe kýng  
 Suld turne to þe same Henry, withouten geýnsaiýng.  
 & if þat Henry die, or Steuen mak his doses,  
 Henry heyr we seie salle haf þe lond in pes,  
 Coroun forto bere, as heyr & eldest sonne,  
 His heritage to were in right, als it was wonne,  
 So þat Steuen þe kýng, no non of his heýres,  
 For heritage no þing salle chalange for þeires.  
 þis dede was enseled bitault þam of S. Poule's,  
 þat wrong were not xleled for drede of lif & soules.

Now



**N**OW wendes duke Henry vnto Normundie,  
 Seysine has plenerly of alle his cheualrie,  
 & Steuen leues here, Inglond is his balie.  
 After in his prid zere Steuen falle seke gan lie,  
 & in þat grete languour endid he his life,  
 Ninetene zere þe honour he kept in werre & strife,  
 At Feursham he lis, at a heuen in Kent,  
 In an abbey of pris he founded with lond & rent.  
 & Mald þe Emperice þer þan is scho laid,  
 þat serued þer office to me, so þei said.  
 þe date a þousand right a hundreth <sup>1</sup> & fiftý,  
 þat Steuen to dede was dight, now comes þe secunde Henry.

Anno.  
M<sup>o</sup>. C<sup>o</sup>. l<sup>o</sup>.

**N**OW is Steuen dede, & lies at Feursham,  
 þe barons þair red, & after Henry nam.  
 To London þei him brouht with grete solempnite.  
 þe popille him bisouht þer kyng forto be.  
 þe day of Saynt Liger <sup>2</sup> was Henry coroune kyng,  
 Thebald of Canterber gaf him þe coroune & þe ryng.  
 þis Henry was Mald sonne, þe erle wif of Aniove.  
 þe Emperice was wonne, & right heyre forto trowe.  
 For Henry douhter scho was, & his heyr þorgh sight.  
 Now comes hir sonne in pas, Henry hir heyr þorgh right.

Henricum  
secundus  
factus est  
rex.

<sup>1</sup> *Obiit re vera Stephanus rex Oct. 25. 1154. Ipsius autem regina Matildis defuncta est Martii 3<sup>o</sup>. 1152. apud Hedningham nimirum sive Hengham, vulgò Henningham, elegans olim castrum (notante Camdeno) & Oxoniæ Comitum antiquam habitationem, in agro Essexiensi.* <sup>2</sup> *Oct. 2. Sed de tempore Coronationis variant historici.*

*Henricus secundus Rex.*

Henry has four sonnes, & doulters has he tuo,  
 As þe storý moncs, þese ere þe names of þo :  
 Henry & Richard, erle Geffrey & <sup>1</sup> Jone,  
<sup>2</sup> Ilkon afterward was kýng, & quene <sup>3</sup> bot on.  
 Geffrey was no more, bot erle of Bretayn :  
 & dame Helianore scho we quen of Spayn.  
 Dame <sup>4</sup> Jon was zongest, & lady of Cezile,  
 þer fader kýng richest lyuand in alle his while.  
 ¶ þis ilk Henry is told Henry þe scecunde,  
 So riche a prince in wold in þis lond siþen non funde.  
 Aniowe & Normundie alle holy he held,  
 Of Gascoýne þe seignorie bowed vnto his scheld.  
 Ilk a knýght & squiere, clerkes were to him suorn.  
 þan was his Chancelere Thomos of London born.  
 Saynt Thoma fader I fynd hight Thomas Beket,  
 In London of noble kýnd, & maste of alle was let.  
 A riche man he was, mot spend þe hundreth pound :  
 Ersdeken his sonne Thomas of Canterbiri þat stound,  
 In alle manere cause he sought þe right in skille,  
 To gile no to fraude wild he neuer till.

<sup>1</sup> John. <sup>2</sup> Perperam. Nam tres duntaxat reges erant, Galfridus vero Britannia tantummodo Comes sive Dux, id quod mox ipse notat Auctor, qui proinde forsitan voluit, comitem hic loci pro regalo accipi. haud enim aliud ubi etiam valet, sicut ex Hemingo nostro colligi potest. <sup>3</sup> Quin & hic etiam auctor secus atque alii, qui do-

cent, tam Johannam quam & Eliunorum reginam fuisse. Ad eo ut pro eorum sententia mox infra quene of Cezile pro lady of Cezile sit reponendum. id quod etiam liquet. ex Petri de Langtoft Codicibus Gallicis, in quibus, Alyenore sa sýlle fu Rayne de Espayne, Rayne de Secyille Johane la sýlle darayne. <sup>4</sup> Joane.

þe Ersebissþop þat was þat tyme died he,  
þe Erresdeken Thomas was sacred in his se:  
Wele mayntend he holý kirk, & alle þe dignite,  
With þe lawe to wirke mayntend þe ordine.  
If any man mad pleýnt of clerk for hastiuenesse,  
Or if þei were atteýnt in oþer wikkednesse,  
Thomas suffred nouht <sup>1</sup> cleke to be alle schent,  
Ne to þe lay courte be brouht to tak þer jugement,  
Bot tille holý kirke, of whom he bare þe merke,  
& at þat lawe to wirke, if he were ordeýnd clerke.  
þe kýng for þat cheson wrathed with Thomas.  
Here now þe reson, whi þat wreth first was.

Sanctus  
Thomas  
factus est  
archiepis-  
copus Can-  
tuar.

Ecce con-  
troversia  
orta est in-  
ter regem  
& clerum.

**C**LERKES often tidé misdo blithely,  
For deynoushede & pride, & for þer state is hý:  
þei passe mesure & right, forto haf þer wille,  
& whan þei ere in mýght, wille þei kepe no skille.  
For þei wille vnderfong a fulle gre emprise,  
& susteýn it with wrong, with sleiht & quaintise.  
þo þat felt þam greued, of þer wikked dedis,  
To lordes, þat þei to cheued, pleýned þei most nedis.  
þat suilk was not lees, it com to þe kýnge's ere,  
He comanded his pes to lered and lewed þat were.  
& if a clerke men founde in his lond þat rest,  
þorgh slauhter or wounde, or þorgh oþer theft,  
Men suld schewe his guilte in þe courte of lay,  
& þer be saued or splite, bot Thomas said him nay.  
Thomas said þe kýng, þat othe suld he wele loke,  
þat he suore at þe gynnyng, whan he þe coroune toke.

Ecce de  
clero per  
totum.

“ þorgh God I þe forbede to chalange any clerke  
 “ In lay courte for non nede, of holy kirke has merke ;  
 “ Ne þe franchise fordo, þat it ouh to halde,  
 “ Bot till þat courte com to, of whilk he is membre calde.  
 ¶ þis was at Clarendoun, þat Thomas gaf respouns,  
 & siben to Narthampton Thomas com est sons,  
 Delyuer his clerkes fro dome, bot no grantise was.  
 Wherfor to þe courte of Rome þan kalled S. Thomas.  
 Thomas toke þe way, & passed ouer þe se.  
 þe k yng Henry herd say, his messenger sent he.  
 . . . . . þop Rogere of zork þan kept þe se,  
 . . . . . his powere corouned forto be,  
 . . . . . oynt also with wrong, þei mad alle mirie.  
 Tille Thomas felle it to þe kirk of Canterbirie.”  
 Whan Thomas it wist, he did mak a cursyng.  
 Roger he cursed first, þat corouned þe zong k yng,  
 & alle þat wer him with, or in his courte wer sene,  
 Saue þe k yng had grith, his childre & þe quene.  
 To Thomas þe k yng bisouht, þe bishop to assoile,  
 Bot Thomas wild nonh, bot þorgh grace of þe apostoile.

*Torn off. But the sense, notwithstanding, is plain, especially if the passage be compared with the French, which is thus: Ceo fu a Claringdoun, ou Thomas ad parlez, Et a Norhampton vint il altre secz, Deliuere ses clers, mes rien luý fu grantez. A la courte de Rome ad Thomas appellez. Thomas deuers la courte va la*

*mere passer, Et le Reis Henry fet maintenaunt maunder. Le ceuesqe de Euerwik son noun fu Roger, Et son siz Henry le fist corouner, Et oyndre en Reis, le regne pur [the word pur is wanting in Mr. Anstis's Copies] gouverner. Toit fist a Thomas, ke fust outre mere. Kar pur veir a luý appent eel mester. Wher-*

Wherfor þe kýng wex wroth, & Thomas did exile,  
His kýnred lese & loth he did fleme & reuile.

¶ þe kýng suld haf no plight, þat Thomas so was dede,  
He said bot tille a knyght, þat Thomas him misbede ;  
& if he had had men, as he wend, of renoun,  
þei suld haf venged him of suilk a clergíoun.

Foure kýngtes it herd withouten any more,  
To Canterbiri þei ferd, & slouh Thomas right þore.

¶ Who so wille wit þis chance his lif & his languour ;  
& how þe kýng of France did him grete honour ;  
& how þe pape sent his bulle with a legaté ;  
& how, or he went, he serched alle þe state ;  
& how at Pountney þe angelle to him said ;  
& how alle his kýnde exile was on þam laid ;

De morte  
Sancti  
Thom. p.

<sup>1</sup> *In the Cathedral Church at St. Bennet's Altar, as even Rastall takes notice, in his most wonderfull rare Chronicle, lent me by the curious and ingenious Mr. John Murray.*

¶ Also (saith he) for dyuers actes that the kyng procured to be made agayne the lybertés saynt tho: of the churche. There mas of fell a great debate Caunter- betwene hym and buryslayne. Thomas then Arch- byshoppe of Canterbury | that the byshoppe sled vnto Rome. But after whan Thomas came agayne to Caunterbury. iiii. of the

kynges knyghtes because the kyng beyng in Normandye | they harde the kyng say these wordes | if he had any men about hym | he had ben a venged vpon that traytour longe or that tyme. Therefore these knyghtes came fro the kyng beyng in Normandye | and slewe this Thomas in the cathedrall church in Canterbury at saynt Bennettes auter: whiche Thomas is nowe by the churche canonysed for a holy saynt. | & dyuers myracles auctorysed by the churche that god hathe shewed for hym.

& how þe apostoile laid on þam grete payn,  
 Or he wilde þam assoile, þat had Thomas slayn;  
 & how for holy kirke he suffred passion,  
 & how God dos wirke in schrine, þer he is don;  
 Open his boke & se, for þer in ere þei writen,  
 Meruailles grete plente, þat fele of vs ne witen

**C**OMEN is tiding, þe bishop slayne is he,  
 & þe gonge k yng is went ouer þe se,  
 Of Almarle erle William with þe k yng was þen,  
 Tuo castels he nam open þe Frankis men,  
 Of Almarle in þe castelle þre lordes he toke,  
 Of messengers fulle suelle he sent hider to loke.  
 Untille Ingland, of Flandres men fulle ille,  
 In warde or in bond in prison leue þei stille.  
 ¶ þe fader k yng Henry in herte had he payn,  
 & angused greuosly, þat Thomas was so slayn.  
 William þe Scottis k yng therfor was fulle blithe,  
 þat Henry had ille lik yng, werre on him gan he kithen.  
 Burgh his way beforn hē sesed þat k astelle,  
 Mulgard þorgh him was lorn, Prudhow saued welle.  
 His way left he nouht, till he com till Alnwik,  
 þer was he taken, & brouht to Richemunde also quik.  
 Richard þe Moruile knyght of gode renoun,  
 Richard Comyn þat while with him com to þe toun.  
 þe Northren so wele stode in treuth to þe k yng Henry.  
 þat g yf ten he gaf þam gode, & þat was largely.  
 So þat alle þe toþer com vntille his grith  
 Of lordes ou & oþer, & fayn to hold him with.

De falsi-  
 ficate Scot-  
 torum.

Captus est  
 rex Scot-  
 torum.

Contek

Countek in countes alle was pēysed welē,  
 Baret of baron feez forgūen ilkadele.  
 þan was Inglond in pes & charite,  
 & alle in Henrý gracious kýng & fre.  
 In his nientend gere of his regalte,  
 Henrý his sonne his pere was git ouer þe se.  
 þe kýng sister of France Henrý allied him to,  
 Here of a desceyuance þei conseild him to do.  
 þe erle Philip of Flandres gaf him in conseilē,  
 & Thebald of Plesence egged to þat tirpeile,  
 Ageyn his fader to rise, þer hē had no right:  
 þe kýng of France & hise hight him alle his mýght.

De consilio  
 & falsitate  
 Franco-  
 rum.

**W**HAN þe fader wist þe sonne wild werre on him,  
 I blame him not if him list turne ageyn fulle grim.  
 For þam of Scotland he sent William & David his broþer,  
 Tille bliþely þei went, & with þam many oþer.  
 þe erle of Leycestre þe oste alle did he guye,  
 Of werre he was þer maistre, dight þani to Normundie.  
 Whan þei were vp aryued, þei fond þer þar chance:  
 þat reame was biseged with þe power of France.  
 Henrý chaced his sonne þorgh force fro toun to toun,  
 þe kýng of France estsonne left tent & pauilloun.  
 Philip of Flandres fleih & turned sonne þe bak,  
 & Thebald nouht ne deih, schame of þam men spak.  
 Fro toun to toun of reme þe Frankis did þei fle,  
 Ouertok it to zeme, & saued þat cite.

De remota  
 obsidionis  
 per Henri-  
 cum.

Our Inglis duelled þer, vnto þe pes were pleyn.  
þo þat þer were beforn wild no more com ageyn.

Reversi  
sunt in  
Angliam.

**I**N þe moneth of May our Inglis of was gare,  
Vpon þe first day tille Ingland forto fare.  
Fulle sone þe zong kyng with gode man þat wer gayn  
Purucid his wendýng, & Richard fitz Alayn,  
þe duke of Peiters, & þe erle of Bretayn,  
þise & oþer pers to sauh tillýng did þer payn.  
þise on knees gan falle bifore þe kyngis face,  
For luf þei praied him alle to granto þe kyng his grace.  
“ zour wrath him forgýue, þe trespas to amend,  
“ In pes with zow to lyue, & at zour conseil descend.  
þe sonne cam also suiþe, & cried his fader mercý.  
þe kyng þerof was bliþe, forgaf him gentilly;  
& he with scrite & oth mad obligacion,  
þat for leue no loth, þorgh conseile of treson,  
Suld werre on him begynne, bi water ne bi lond,  
Ne his pes breke no tuýne, þe sonne þertille him bond.  
In alle þis sauh tillýng bituex þe fader & þe sonne  
Com þe Scottis kyng, & asked Henry a bone  
Of grantise of græce, to haf his seignorie.  
Bifor alle in þat place he gaf it him bliþely.  
þan wer boþe þe kynges brouht alle tille euen,  
& pesed in alle þinges, þauked þe God of heuen.



**H**AN said Sir Henry, nedes burd him wende  
 To France & Normundie, to wytte a certeyn ende.  
 At Parys wild he be, at þer parlement.  
 þer wille wald he se, to what þei wild consent.  
 At þe duzepers þe sothe wild he wite,  
 & on what maners, & wharto he suld lite,  
 & whedir þei wild to werre, or þei wild nouht,  
 Or alle in luf sperre þat þing þat þei had wrouht.  
 ¶ He sauh wele bi signe, he drôuh fast till eide,  
 Long myght he not regne, ne on his lif belde.  
 Wherfor Henry said he wild, or he went,  
 þat þe summe wer laid of his testament.  
 Liste & I salle rede þe parcelles what amountes,  
 If any man in dede wille keste in a countes.

**S**EX þousand marke till Acres did he fend.  
 Ageyn his comyng þidere, bi marchandz so he wend.  
 Fifty þousand marcs had he lent abbeis,  
 þat wer in pouerte, vp þam forto reise.  
 Alle þat was gyuen, & befor hand lent,  
 þat was not in cofre, whan he mad testament.  
 Of þat þat was in cofre, & in his cofines,  
 He mad his testament, als did oþer pilgrimes.  
 ¶ To Waltham zede þe kyng, his testament to make,  
 & þus quathe he his þing, for his soule sake.  
 ¶ To temples in Acres he quath siue þousand marke,  
 & siue thousand to þe hospitale, for þei were in karke.  
 ¶ To þe folk þat duelled, Acres forto fende,  
 Oþer siue þousand marke he gaf þam to spende.

De testa-  
 mento Hen-  
 ricisecondi,  
 facto apud  
 Waltham,  
 per totum.

- ¶ Tille oþer houses of þe cuntre siue þousand marke he gaf,  
Tille heremites & tille seke men, & oþer of suilk raf.]
- ¶ Tille monkes & to Chanons, þat were in Ingland,  
Fiue þousand marke resceyued þei of his hond.
- ¶ To þo of þat religion, þat were in Normundie,  
Fiue þousand mark vnto þer tresoric.
- ¶ & to meselle houses of þat same lond,  
þre þousand mark vnto þer spense he fond.
- ¶ To ladies of habite, Vilers & Mortayn,  
He gaf tuo hundreth mark, I trowe þei were fayn.
- ¶ To þo religiouses þat were in Gascoync,  
He gaf a þousand mark, withouten essoync.
- ¶ To þam of Founz Eberard, þer his body lis,  
He gaf tuo þousand mark, þo ladies of pris.
- ¶ To þe ladies of Bretayn, men calle Seynt Suplice,  
He gaf a hundreth mark, to mend þer office.]
- ¶ To þe houses of Chartres tuo þousand mark bi counte,  
& þre þousand mark to þe order of Grant mqunte.
- ¶ To þe ordre of Cisteaus he gaf tuo þousand mark,  
þe ordre of Clony a þousand, to lay vp in arke.
- ¶ þe ordre of Premonstere tuo hundreth mark þei had.  
To þe ladies of Markayne a hundreh mark þei lad.
- ¶ To þe houses of Arroys, þat ere bigond þe se,  
Tuo hundreth mark þorgh testament gaf he.
- ¶ To women of Ingland, of gentille lynage,  
A hunderth mark of gold, to þer mariage.
- ¶ To gentille, & tille oþer, þat were in Normundie,  
A hundreth mark of gold þei had to þer partie.

To gentille women of Aniowe, of non auancement,  
A hundreth mark of gold vnto þam was sent.  
Withouten þis testament þat he did writen,  
& þe grete tresore tille Acres was witen,  
& þat he lent religiose to bring þam aboue,  
Fourty þousand mark he gaf for Gode loue.

**W**HAN þe kȳng Henry had mad his testament,  
He dight his oste redy, & to Parys went.  
Fro . . . erwent to Douere þat best wer worþi  
With . . . . . went þei ouer, atired richeli.  
þa . . . . . nd þe folk in Parys, þat þei wele herd,  
With so fayre folk of pris neuer to prince ferd.  
Of þe kȳng of France he asked amendment,  
þe duzepers for chance þei ros with on assent,  
& in þer conseile kaste þer chance on ilk side,  
þei acordid at þe laste, þat pes mot best betide.  
Whan pes was set certeyn, bituex þo kȳnges tueye,  
& Normundie þorgh sejen, tille Ingland he tok þe weye.

**I**N þe zere afterward at midsomer men teld,  
þe kȳng in Oxenford his parlement held.  
Bi his writte he sent after kȳng William :  
William dight him & went, tille Oxenford he cam,

---

Kaunt le Rey Henry ad  
fet son testament, Al parle-  
ment de Fraunce son chemyn  
enprent. Touz les melz va-  
nez [sive vauz] de Douer a  
Derwent Sunt oue [sive ouf]

le Rey alez, atyrez richement.  
Douut par my Parys est dist  
communement, Ke vnkes vi-  
rent Reys.oue si [sive ouf ly]  
bele gent, Petri nostri ex-  
emplaria Gullica.

& suore to kyng Henry þe next Assumpcion,  
 þat was of our Lady, suld com to zork his toun,  
 & bring þider his clergie of Scotlond þe barons.  
 He did so certeynlie þe day of his somons.  
 þer þei mad ilkon homage & feaute,  
 Not to þe fader alle on, bot till he heir suld be,  
 & obliged þam with scritte, hýngand ilk a scale,  
 þat þer dede was perfitte, & his homage leale.  
 & þe kirke of Scotland to Canterbirie ore se  
 Obliged þam & band, as to þer primalte;  
 & if þe Scottis kyng mistake in any braide.

Statutum  
 factum in-  
 ter Angli-  
 am & Sco-  
 tiam per  
 assensum.

¶ Of treson in any þýng, ageyn Henry forsaid,  
 The barons & þe clergie in on wer alle schryuent,  
 Vnto kyng Henrie ageyn William suld be gyuen.  
 & if it so betide, þat any thefe or feloun  
 Fle fro Inglond side to Scotlond regioun,  
 Bot he mak þam to wite, whi þat he is comen,  
 þat þe courte may him quite o' chance if he be nomen.  
 If he be els funden, for thefe tald & bent,  
 Tille Inglond brouht alle bunden, & þer haf jugement.  
 ¶ Als if it so be, of Scotlond skape a thefe,  
 & till he Inglond fle, als a felon grefe,  
 Bot if he to þer baylifes mak his sikernesse,  
 þat þei will him maynpis, if he wer cald to stresse,  
 If he folowand were souht for þat felonie,  
 Ageynto Scotland be brouht, & þer hanged lie.

WHAN þis þing was grant, Henry dred disceite,  
He wild, þat his conant were holden stable & streite,  
He sesed fine castels, & held þam in his wage,  
Foure erles & sextene kȳnghtes þerfor in his ostage,  
Ilkon of þe knȳghtes had a barony,  
þei & alle þer rightes were don in his mercy.  
¶ Whan Henry for his owen had holden þat seignorie,  
& þe dede was knowen þorghout Albanie,  
þe castels & ostagers he gald þorgh curteysie,  
& <sup>1</sup> with William with chartre bond him tillc Henrie,  
þat he & his heires, & alle þer progenie  
Of Scotlond, suld hold of Henry certeynlic  
& of alle his heires; & com to þer erie.  
& homage & feaute to mak þam redie.  
Whan þis was set & stabled, & pes cried on hii,  
Henry þe zong kȳng gede to Normundie,  
& died <sup>2</sup> þer þat gere, & biried solemplic.

<sup>1</sup> *Abesse malim. Nam exemplaria Gallica, per chartre enselele Rey descoz selȳe, i.e. per chartam sigillatam Rex Scocie seipsum obligavit.* <sup>2</sup> *His death was much lamented by his Father, notwithstanding he had been a disobedient Son; which disobedience arose (in a great measure) out of discontent, that his Father had abandon'd his [young Henry's] Mother. [Q. Eleonor,] and given himself up intȳrly (as it were) to the Will*

*of the fine young Wench Rosamond, a thing that struck also very much upon the young King's Brothers, Richard and John. For which reason it is, that we have this Passage in Rastall's Chronicle: This kynge henry let crowne henry his eldyst sonne kȳnge of Englande | and went hym selfe into Normandye | but his son henry dyed before his father | and therefore he is nat accounted in the nombre of kynges*

Whan þis zong kȳng was dede & laid in graue,  
Fro Jerusalem com tȳng, þat help burd it haue.

**WHAT** tyme in Jerusalem 'wad dede a doultȳ kȳng,  
(Was blode non of his tēme, bot a mayden zing)

De Balde-  
wino lepro-  
so, & Wil-  
helmo Ac-  
quitaniae,  
pro auxilio  
in Angli-  
am veni-  
ente.

Baldwȳn þe meselle, his name so hight,

Noble kȳng & lele, & wele zemed his right.

Neuer in his lyne he lese a fōte of lond,

The Sarazins gan him dryue, þei were him euer fleand.

For foule meselrie he comoud with no man,

Sarazin with maistrie neuer nouht of him wan.

With him was a knȳght, & vnder him chefetaȳn,

& name couth of myght, William of Aquitayn.

Whan Badwȳn was dede, he weddid þe mayden zing,

þorgh þe Cristen rede William was chosen kȳng.

For þis bold Baldwȳn Cristen men gan morne,

Gode hap had þe Sarazin ageȳn on vs to turne.

þe Sarazins on vs cam, our Cristen foue gan felle,

So þat kȳng William no langere þer durst duelle.

Bode com to þis lond, for help & socour,

Kȳng Henry be fond, & schewed him alle his stour,

How þe fals soudan destroyed alle þe lond,

Slouh ilk Cristen man, or els in prison bond,

kynges of Englaunde. This  
Henry his son and his. ii.  
bretherne | John | & Ry-  
charde | made warre agaynst  
theyr father. Some say the  
cause of the warre was be-

cause the kyng imprisoned  
Elynor his wyfe | whiche  
was kept in prison tyll the  
kyng dyed | and he kept the  
wenche Rosamonde.

<sup>1</sup> Pro, was.

“ per-

“ þerfore I pray to ȝow, haste þat ȝe wer comen,

“ Bi þis is Acres now biseged, or alle nomen.

¶ Whan þe kȳng it herd, he wept with his ine,  
þe Cristen so misferd, þe Sarazins did so pȳne.

Rex lacrimatus est.

He said, “ Mȳ sonne, mȳn heȳre, þat was coroune late,

“ Of his lif was mȳ speȳre, he mȳght haf taken þe gate.

“ Bot now is he dede, mȳn heȳre þat bare coroune,

“ þerfor I kan no rede, I doute me of tresoune.

“ For if I were of lond, þe werre suld sone bigynne,

“ Aliens suld sone fond, our heritage to wynnne.

“ Richard mȳ sonne is knȳght, with me wild he go,

“ Sone suld we lese our right, if we were fer þer fro.

“ Faȳn I wild purueie for Acres, þat cite

“ Ordeȳned wer som weic, how it mot saued be.

William tok his leue at our kȳng Henry,

Giftes wele to leue he had richely.

He went to þe kȳng of France, & schewed him his resons,  
þorgh þer ordenance þer duzepers gaf respons.

Bifor Sir William þe duzepers gaf ansuere,

“ It er bot tuo kȳngdams on þis half Grece to were.

“ France & Ingland þise tuo regions,

“ & er in dinerse lond, & in sere bandons :

“ Henry in Ingland wounes, & has tresore mouh,

“ Richard & Jon his sonnes fulle felle, & wille non bouh.

“ & if þat ȝe were gone, & we went with ȝow,

“ þat Richard & Jon wille waken vn mykelle wouh.

“ Bot whan kȳng Henry & his sonnes wille go,

“ We salle be redȳ, forto wend with þo.

Responsio  
Francorum  
Willelmo  
Aquitaniae  
per totum.

William went ageyn vnto Jerusalem,  
Of þise kýnges tueyn wás zit no bote o beame.

**H**ENRY for his trespas did fulle grete honour  
To þe martir Saynt Thomas, for mercý & socour.  
Sex zere siþen lyued he in wo & sorow soure.  
He went ouer þe se, & lay in grete langoure.  
In grete sekenesse & hard he lay in Normundie:  
Tille him com his sonne Richard, forsóth, fulle kýndelie,  
& whan Henry suld die Richard þorgh blissýng bond,  
He suld his cheualrie vse in þe holy lond,  
“ I salle lene þe inouh for to do with alle.  
“ Fader,” he said, “ for gow certes þider I salle.  
Whan he had regned here, & felt of fele assaies,  
Foure & tuenty zere sex monethes & tuelf dayes,  
No more of him to seie, he died sone afterward.

Mortuus est  
Henricus  
secundus,  
Anno Do-  
mini. M<sup>o</sup>. C.  
LXXXII<sup>o</sup>.

He ligges in an abbeie, men calle þe Founz Everard.  
A þousand & a hundred þe dete fourscore & nyne.  
So many zers it pundred, whan he passed þis pyne.  
In a moneth mirie, Septembre þe gynnyng,  
Bandwyn of Canterbirie com to croune þe kýng.  
Richard at Londoun, opon a Sonenday,

Coronacio  
Regis Ri-  
cardi apud  
Londo-  
ni m.

At Westmýnstre tok þe coron, of zork bishop Geffray  
Was sent after þat tyde, him felle to be þe toþer,  
Opon þe fadere side he was Richarde's broþer.

Lege, Foure & thrifty &c.  
Nam, Apres. xxx. iiii. anz.  
vi. mays. xii. jours Du regalte  
Rey Henry cessaynt ses labours.

Il. gist al Fount Ebrard en  
lahbeye de sorours in MSS.  
Gallicis.

Richard



Richard his pallion bi messengere did com,  
 & his confirmacion fro þe courte of Rome.  
 ¶ Comen er to kȳng Richard boþe erle & baroun,  
 þat had þe lond in ward þorgh out þe regioun,  
 Knȳghtes & burgeis, serganz als was resoun,  
 Homage to mak alle weis þat felle vnto þe coron.  
 þe pes did he crie, & purueid warnisoun,  
 þe Sarazins þorgh maistrie haf won Acres toun.  
 Inglis & Normant, knȳghtes for rewardoun,  
 With Richard ere in conant ageȳn Sarazins feloun.  
 His fader left him inouh, penȳes grete foȳsoun,  
 ¶ þat he þe way not widrouh opon his benisoun.  
 þe kȳng of France was went to Saynt Denȳs to hok  
 His priue parlement, & þer ope him it tolde,  
 þat Richard priuely his purueiȳance did gynne.  
 Opon þe pȳemȳ, þe lond Surrie to wynne.  
 To Paris turned þe kȳng, for þat ilk sawe,  
 & þer a sameniȳng his barons þider gan drawe,  
 He bisouh in þam alle, to conseil at þat nede,  
 What help mot best falle, for þe Sarazins drede,  
 & told þam an outrage, þat Richard þe kȳng,  
 Wille stele þis yiage, withouten mȳ witiȳng.  
 Loke how kȳng Philip said vncurteisly,  
 Dayet haf his lip, & his nose þerby.  
 Forto þat parlement com Richard messengers,  
 þat to Philip wer sent, & to þe duzepers.  
 þe names of þam þat cam was þe erle of Peiters,  
 & Almarle erle William, & an erle Rogers,

Ecce de  
 stultitiquio  
 regis Fran-  
 cia.

Lucas de Lucie, & Roberd de Coyngrers,  
þise grete Philip of France, & alle his conseilors.

Nuncium  
Ricardi  
editum in  
curia regis  
Franciae.

**T**HE erle of Almarle said, “ Richard our Inglis kýng  
 “ His luf is tille zow laid, & luf is his gretýng,  
 “ þat ze wille tak to herte, þe grete nõyse & crie  
 “ Fro Acres þat comes so smerte, lorn is so doelfullie.  
 “ Our Cristen men erè lorn, þe Sarazins alle aboue,  
 “ þerfor Richard beforn praies zow for loue,  
 “ For him þat on þe croice died for mankýnde;  
 “ Bes boþe at a voice, in onc zour wille be mýnde,  
 “ To help þe Cristen men, þat Jhesu Criste bouht,  
 “ Ageýn þe oste paen, þat him lufed neuer nouht.  
 “ Richard him atires, his wille þerto is fest,  
 “ So mýkelle he þider desires, þat he may haf no rest.  
 “ If ze of him haf help, & he for zow socour,  
 “ Alle þis world salle zelp of zour grete honour.  
 Whan þe duzepers herd þe bodivord of Richard  
 To Philip, þei ansuerd, “ his sond ze salle reward.  
 “ He bedes zow luf inouh, ze þank him of his sond.  
 “ So noble bot on of zow is non, be water no land.  
 “ Richer kýng is non in þis world bot ze,  
 “ No yalianter of bou in Cristendam als he.  
 “ Large er þo londes, þat his eldres wonnen,  
 “ þe dedes of þer bondes þorgh reames er ronnen.  
 “ Siluer he has inouh, his fader has him fonden  
 “ Knýghtes to do his prouh, with skrite tille him er bonden.  
 “ To whom Acres salle be zolden also tite,  
 “ His felauschip to fle, to God ze do despite.

Philip

**P**ILIP sent ageyn to Richard curteylly  
 Bode bi þo certeyn, said often grant mercy,  
 & þanked him his gode wille, & his noble sond,  
 & he wild fulfille, & at his myght suld fond,  
 & sent Richard to say, þe next Marche folowand  
 He suld take þat way, if wynde wild with him stand,  
 At Marsile to aryue, if he of lif had space,  
 & if þe wynde wild dryue, þorgh myght & Gode's grace.  
 He praied Richard þe kyng, & alle his men of Gode,  
 To teue for no preching, þat way þat þei ne zode.  
 Whan Richard had conceyued, þat Philip þerto stode,  
 His mobles on siluer reised þorgh Ingland alle his gode,  
 Rentes & som feez he comandid to selle,  
 þat burgh no Citez of taliage suld non telle,  
 þe tende suld be nouht, no þe tuende non make.  
 þe bisshop of Durham bouht Saberg, with þe wapentake.  
 þe bisshop of Wynchestre at þe kyng he bouht  
 Two maners tille his estre, & Richard wisly wrouht.  
 For he welc vnderstode of taliage was grete drede,  
 It suld neuer do gode, ne þer withalle suld spede.  
 Namely to þe holy lond, þider he þouht to go,  
 In taliage non he bond, ne robbed ne did wo.  
 He sent to þe Scottis kyng, þat he suld com & do,  
 & mak pes for þat þing, þat he was halden to.  
 þe moneth of Nouembre, after Alhalwemesse,  
 þat wele is to remembre, com kyng William alle fresse,  
 Batand to Canterbiri, & þer zald him his fee.  
 Kyng Richard our sire homage & feaute

Responso  
 regis Fran-  
 corum.

Vendidit  
 mobilia &  
 maneria.

De homa-  
 gio & obli-  
 gacione  
 regis Scot-  
 torum.

He mad for alle þo landes, þat he of Ingland held,  
 & tille þe pes he stādes, þat bowes tille his scheld,  
 git of penyes rounde to Richard gan he bede  
 Sexti þousand pounce, to mende his misdede.  
 & Richard on þis wise forgaf it William so,  
 To saue þat seruisse, þat Malcolme was wone to do  
 Unto þe Inglis kýnges, as right was & skille,  
 & do alle þe comýnges, whan bodword com þam tille,  
 To London forto com, whan parlement suld be,  
 Als custom was wonne, & tak þer his liuere.  
 & Richard als quik zald to kýng William  
 Rokesburgh & Berwik, þat he in his hand nam.  
 William tok his leue, his way to Scotland ches,  
 Wele mot William cheue, & alle þat lufes pes.

Stabilivit  
 justitiaris  
 & custodes  
 terræ.

**K**YNG Richard zit duellis, & purueis him to fare,  
 & mykelle þing sellis, siluer forto zare.  
 Wardans sette he stable, trewe men at his myght,  
 þat neuer lufed fable, bot mayntend pes & right.  
 Sire Huce of Durham, bisshop & man worþi:  
 An oþer Sir William, bisshop of Ely.  
 þise suld kepe þe lond, & þe dignites,  
 Justises tille þam he bond, to kepe þe lawes & fceez;  
 Huce Bardolf fullé fers, William Marschalle his pere,  
 Geffrey le fitz Pers, William dela Bruere:  
 þise were mayntenours, to sustene þe coroun,  
 & rightfulle governours þe folk in feld & toun.  
 ¶ Now has he brought to stalle, his lond stabled redy,  
 & now with his folk alle, he wendis to Normundy,

& þer he purueis him tille Acres & Sully.  
 On Gode's enmÿs grim he gadres gode partÿ.  
 In þe cite of Rouhan his zole feste he held  
 With manÿ douhtÿ man, & kuyghtes gode of scheld.

Applicuit  
 in Nor-  
 maniam.

ÞE Monenday þat felle to be next after þe tuelft day,  
 þe kyng of France & he, at þe riuer of S. Rÿmay,  
 Held a parlement, gode sikernes to make,  
 þat boþe with on assent þe way suld vndertake.  
 Ilkon sikered oþer with scrite & seale þerbÿ,  
 Togidere suore þam breþer, wherfor þe clergÿ  
 Gaf a grete cursÿng oñ whilk of þam so brak,  
 Bigan a wikked þing; þat euelle bituex þam spak.  
 ¶ Now is Philip certcÿn, he gos to S. Denÿ,  
 & Richard turnes ageÿn, to dight his nauÿ.  
 He serches ilk coste of alle his seignorie,  
 þe Guÿours of his oste, þise wer withouten lie;  
 þe Ersebissshop of Anxus, danz Guãrd of renoun,  
 With anoþer bissshop, Bernard of Bayoun,  
 & Richard de Cameuile, & Roberd du Sabloun,  
 & William de Fortiz was lord of Oleroun,  
 þise gouerne þer nauie, now ere þei in þe se,  
 Toward þe paemie, þider þei zerned to be.  
 Richard said þam his wille, "mariners if ze moun,  
 "Aryues in to Marsille, with Gode's benisoun.  
 þis was þe first woke of þe passion,  
 As I on on boke gan loke, þe oste clerke & baron  
 Wer sailand in þe se toward Marsille þat toun.  
 Helo þam ber þei wild be Criste & Saÿ Simioun.

Modo pa-  
 raverunt se  
 ad terram  
 sanctam.

þei had in þer route a hundreth schippes & ten,  
Bot God þei had no doute, ne no defaute of men.

Ecce mira-  
culum &  
de maris  
periculo.

**O**N þe fifte day changed þer wynde,  
Rest þam þe right way, to wend þe wer blynde.  
þe right se of Bretayn, þer out were þei went,  
In to þe se of Spayn wer dryuen in a torment  
Among þe Sarazins, bot God, þat grace þam lent,  
Saued þam alle þo tȳmes fro þer encumberment.  
Ten schippes wer dryuen, þorgh ille auisement,  
þorgh a tempest ryuen, þe schipmen held þam schent.  
On þer was on depe kroken & alle to rent,  
þe nien God gan kepe, þat grace he þam sent.  
Est God þei bisouht, to saue þam in þat cas,  
Sauely to hauen be broulit, for luf of S. Thomas,  
þat for holy kirke suffred martirdam,  
& God for þam gan wirke, her how a voice cam.  
A schip þer was of London, richely atired,  
A hundreth þer in fondon, to serue God desired.  
Biside þam on þer schip com a bisshop down,  
þe mast in hand gan kip, with croice & pallioun,  
& a kyng þe sihi, of gold schone his coroun,  
A noþer bisshop þam bi, þe first said his sermoun.  
þan said þe Ersbisshop to Londreis wordes suete,  
“ I am Thomas your hope, to whom ge crie & grete,  
“ Martir of Canterbire, your bale alle I bete.  
“ Seynt Edmund þe martire his help I zow hete,  
“ þe bisshop S. Nicholas, whos help is ay redie  
“ To schipmen in alle cas. whan þei on him crie.

" We þre haf þe ward of God & our ladie,  
 " þe schippes of kýng Richard to kepe & gow þam bie.  
 After þis biheste, þat Thomas to þam said,  
 Sone alle þe tempest in a throwe was laid.  
 Þise nine schippes gan ride þer wýld wýnd þam driue,  
 þei ne wist to what side, ne what hauen in to riue.

**A**T Leons sur le Rone was Philip & Richard,  
 þei spak & mad þer mone, what hauen þe mot toward.  
 In alle þe cuntre þorgh so grete folk mot men se,  
 þat nouþer cite ne burgh mýght þei in herberd be.  
 Philip toward Gene his oste did alle go,  
 & Richard oste bidene at Marsille left alle þo.  
 To mete on a while þe trompes blowe alle clere,  
 Batand fro Cezile com him a messengere,  
 Fro þe quene dam Jone, his awen sister dere.  
 Bifor þam euerilkone he told kýng Richere,  
 Dede is kýng William, þat regned in Cezile,  
 þat Jone þe lady nam, he lyued bot a while.  
 þat erle is of Tancre, Geffrey a doubty knyght,  
 & valiant man of dede, & to þe coroun has right,  
 He regnes after him, & late had þe coroune,  
 To Jone he is fulle grim, & haldes hir in prisoune.  
 Hersfor kýng Richard wrathes him & sais,  
 " Dight vs þider ward our busses & galais,  
 " Mi sister I wille out wýn or I ferrer go.  
 " Bot he bigyn Cezile he turnes fro,  
 " & bot he wille with pes acorde in reson,  
 " It salle rewe him þat res, þat he to Jone has done.

De Johan-  
 na, sorore  
 sua.

M. C.  
LXXX.

þe date was a þousand a hundreth & ninetie,  
þat R. was sailand toward paemie.

¶ Þe seuent day of heruest, in þat ilk zere,  
þat I rakend last, writen abouen here,  
þat Richard turned to Gene, & whan he com to lond,  
Philip was mykelle to mene, R. seke him fond.  
Bot mykelle he comfortid him, & siþen tok his leue,  
Toward Cezile fulle grim, þe kýng he þouht to greuc.

¶ Whan his flete was alle at Tibre euerilkone,

Hic venit  
Octobonus  
Cardinalis  
ad Regem  
Ricardum.

þe pape a cardinalle sent Sir Octobone.  
What Richard spak, & he conselle is & was,  
To me it is priue, I sauh it in no pas.  
þer duellid R. schip þre daies to gesse,  
Bi þat was kýng Philep risen of his sakenesse,  
& was in Cezile ariued at Meschyne,  
& after in a while com R. euen as lýne,  
þe day of þe croice, in þe heruost tido,  
Right als Gode's voice had ordeýnd him to ríde.  
Were þo schippes nine, þat R. wend haf lorn,  
In þe hauen of Meschyne ariued litille befor.  
It was a Gode's grace, þat þat ilk nauie  
Ariued in þat place, þer Richard suld lie.

Misit nun-  
cium ad  
Tancredum  
Regem.

**T**HRE days in þat cite duellid kýng Richard,  
To þe kýng of Tancre he sent his letter hard.  
“ To deliuer his sister Jon out of his prison  
“ Men mad tille him grete mone, it was without resou  
“ Bot he deliuer hir mé with luf, at my praire,  
“ þat tyme salle he se, scho salle be bouht folle dere.



¶ þis kȳng of Tancrede he was a wȳs kȳnȳht,  
 He sauh it was to drede, & hē did not alle right.  
 He sauh Richard an ired, & his mȳkelle mȳght,  
 His folk armed & tired, & aȳ redȳ to fight.  
 He sent his sister Jone with mȳkelle honeste,  
 With his barons ilkone, to Mischines þat cite.  
 Philip was curteise, ageȳn dame Jone he zede,  
 Tille hir broþer paleise with grete honour did lede.

**A**N ilde was þer biside, þat a Sarazin held,  
 Trounge he gaf bi tide to Cristen men, þei teld.  
 Allas! said Richard, þat euer it suld so be,  
 þe Cristen þorgh forward suld grant a Sarazin fre.  
 A water þat closed it in, þat flum was de la fare,  
 þe wonnȳng of þe Sarazin, þat ilde hight Labamare.  
 Kȳng<sup>1</sup> Richad it wan, & tille his sister it gaf,  
 þe Sarazins ilk man he slouh alle rif & raf.

¶ An oþer ilde biside, men cald it Griffonie,  
 Richard þat ilk tide, he did þam alle out flie.  
 þe wonnȳng of þat ilde Richard gon þam reue,  
 Was non of þam so wilde, þat lenger durst þer leue.  
 Whan þe folk þis herd, þe burgeis of Meschȳn,  
 þer gates ageȳn him sperd, & wild not lat him in.  
 Wherfor þe contek on þis maner it cam,  
 & for þei did þat chek, an oth he suore to gram,  
 Bot þe kȳng wilde mende þat þei did him þere,  
 A þing he suld sende, to do als lawe it were :  
 He fille þe testament of kȳng William þat was,  
 þat tille his sister ment for dowerie þat trespas,

De fictione  
regis Phi-  
lippi.

De humili-  
tate & sa-  
pientia re-  
gis Tan-  
credi.

& bot he gald it alle, þat is writen þer in,  
With luf, els I salle with werre fond him to wyu.

¶ Whan þe kýng of France herd þe tíþinges,  
þat so grete distance was bituex þo kýnges,  
Conseil gan he take, þat he suld be partie,  
A gode acord to make; forsoþe fulle sayntlie.  
Noþeles þe kýng of Tancrede did fulle curteisly,  
To kýng R. he zede, & said he was redý,  
þe testament to fulfille of kýng William,  
& þat his men fulle ille vnskilfully nam.  
“ Alle þat was reson, I wille amend it wele,  
“ & tille þi sister haf don plenerly ilka dele,  
“ Alle þat me felle to do of William’s ’ testament.  
“ Witnes I tak hir to hir seluen in present.  
“ Hir seluen dame Jone acorded with his sawe,  
“ Of þe testament alone he has don alle þe law,  
“ Alle þat felle to me, bot zit I ask a noþer,  
“ þat fallis vnto þe kýng Richard my broþer,  
“ Of my lordes witeword, witnes þer of haf I.  
“ Of gold þer is a borde, & tretels þer bi,  
“ Of siluer oþer vesselle gilte fulle richeli;  
“ & zit a noþer jowelle fairer & worþi,  
“ A pauillon of honour, with riche atisfement,  
“ To serue an Emperour at a parlement.  
“ þus quath my lorde þe, þat tyme he suld die,  
“ þe soth forto say, & witnes wille not lie.

---

’ L. testament.

“ Ducepall

“**DAME,**” said Tancred, “ of trestels & borde  
 “ Fulfille I salle in dede þe kýnge’s witworde.  
 Fourti þousand vnces of gold he bede þe kýng,  
 & R. tok þe pundes, withouten more sayng.  
 “ Bot þis,” he said, “ I sauc, þat Arthure my cosyn  
 “ Tancred douhter salle haue, & alle þat now is þin.  
 Of Bretayn Arthure is als erle of heritage,  
 & he granted to þis, confermed þat mariage.

¶ Als þise tuo kýnge wore about þis forward,  
 At Meschyne righ þore þe kýnge’s moder Richard  
 Ariued at þat riuale, brouht him busses þritti  
 Charged with vitaile, with gode men & douhti.  
 Of Flandres þe erle Philip, a lorde of honour,  
 Of Helianore schip he was hir gouernour.  
 Elianore brouht þer a fair maiden zing,  
 þe kýnge’s douhter of Nauere, to R. þe kýng.  
 Hir name was Berengere, faire woman of age,  
 Was þer non hir pere of no heiere parage,  
 In Cipre of þat may was mad þe mariage  
 At kýng R. pay, þorgh conselle of baronage,  
 Whan þei were trouth plight, & purucied þe sposage,  
 Helianore forth hir dight to Rouhan hir menage,  
 Bileft dame Berengere at Richarde’s costage.  
 Dame Jone kept hir dere, þei lyued als birde in cage,

Hic venit  
 mater regis  
 R. ad eum.

**WHAN** pes was alle ccrteyn of Richard & Tancrede.  
 To þe cite of Kateyn in pilgrymage þei zede.

Ricardus &  
 Tancredus  
 peregrinati  
 sunt ad san-  
 ctam Agni-  
 tham virgi-  
 nem.  
 To

To þe fertre of Saynt Agate Richard made offerýng,  
 & praied hir of grace to duelle þat with þe kyng,  
 Alle þre dayes tide Richard mad soioure,  
 þe barons bi þat side did him grete honoure.

Whan Richard suld wend, he tok leue at Tancrez,  
 Tancrez was fulle hend, conueied him tuo journez,  
 Gaf him four schippes grete, & were of way beforþ,  
 þe tuo charged with whete, þe toþer with oþer corn,  
 & fíue oþer galeis with alle þer apparaile,  
 Richard was curteis, þanked his-trauaile,  
 & Richard at þat turne gaf him a faire Juelle,  
 þe gode suerd Caliburne, þat Arthur luffed so wellc.

¶ þan said Sir Tancrede vnto Richard our kyng,  
 “ God, þat saues at nede boþe þe olde & zýng,  
 “ Kepe þe fro mischance, & fro þe fals enmys,  
 “ þat er with Philip of France, euer ageyn þi vis,  
 “ Bi Hugh of Burgoýn he sent a letter vnto me,  
 “ þat I suld, or þou went, be bitraied þorgh þe,  
 “ & if werre or wo had risen vs bituen,  
 “ þe & þine to slo with me he suld haue bien.  
 “ þe soth þan schewes it, þat my sawe is trewe,  
 “ Sir haf here þis writ, & schewe him alle newe,  
 “ If he it geýnsay, I wille proue it on him.

¶ Tancred went his way, & Richard wex fulle brim.

R. tok his leue, Sir Roger turned & went,  
 & R. gan him greue, to Philip þe letter sent.

¶ þe nauie com on a stounde, to Meschýns þat cite,  
 Biforn him he founde his sister & his meýne.

De alterca-  
 tione inter  
 Ricardum  
 & Philip-  
 pum per  
 totum.

R. with Philip dele wild he nouht.

Philip bote on his lyppe, & perceyued R. þouht.

Whi þat it ment, Philip gan asprie :

A wiles to R. sent, how long he wild þer lie,  
& what tyme he had tight forward his nauie,

His sege to sette & dight, to help þe Cristen crië ?

¶ R. ansuerd þer tille, & said, “ it is foly,

“ To schewe counseil & skille, þat not is to affie,

“ & þhit þer owen writte þer dede dos certifie.

“ Me þink in myn inwitte it semed traytorie.

¶ þan spak Philip ogrefe said, “ I wote what þis menes,

“ þat was a fals brefe, & forged wele, it semes,

“ For my syster Aleyse, þat is now forsaken,

“ For on of mor richenesse of Nauer þou has taken.

“ It salle not so Richard, I wille þe gif a gyue,

“ þou salle hold forward, if þou wost þat I lyue.

¶ **W**HAN Richard vnderstode, þat kyng Philip had  
suorhe,

Bifor þe clergie he stode, & proued it on þe morne,

þat his fader Henry þat ilk Aleyse had knowen,

A childe scho him by, þat he held for his owen.

¶ Respouns del Rey de  
Francee quaut Richard ad  
oÿe, Al matyn ly proue de  
uaunt la clergie, Qe le Reis  
son pere, duk de Normendye,  
A neyt conou Aleys, quaut  
lauait en bayllye, Et fyllle

engendrait, ke mort est &  
seuelye. La leye de seyncte  
eglyse trop serrayt blemye.  
Et Richard & Aleys de dam-  
pue dieu maldye, Si en ma-  
ryage Richard par la se lye,  
*Codices Gallici.*

A mayden childe it was, & now dede is it,  
 " þis wer agrete trespas, agayn myn owen inwitte,  
 " So febli forto wirke, for drede of Godc's awe,  
 " I Richard haf maugre, & I Aleÿse take,  
 " Whan my fader & she suilk samenÿng gan make.

¶ þan said kÿng Philip tille alle þo of France,  
 " Of gile þis is a trip of Richard desceÿuance,  
 " Gisors my gode cite, with alle þe puruciance,  
 " Richard I gaf it fre, to mak þis aliançe  
 " Of him & hir þo tuo, þat er now in distance.  
 " Ten þousand mark & mo, þat now er in balance,  
 " & I betraised of alle, bi God, þat alle may auance,  
 " I salle bring him to stalle, bot he mak me acquitance.

" **NOW,**" said kÿng R. " þe manace late alle be,

" þou salle haf reward of Gisors þi cite;  
 " þe tresore ilk a dele, þat þou me bitauht.

" For me salle haf wele alle þat þou euer ault.  
 þe barons suffred nouht þe kÿnges to be wroth,  
 Luf & pes þei souht, þat þei acorded both.

Richard gald him his right, his tresore & his toun,  
 þorgh witnes & sight, of clerk, erle & baroun,  
 His sistir forto marie, where God wild loke,  
 To mak certeyn partie, R. a quitance toke.

**AFTER** þe acord sone, Philip dight him forwãrd,  
 To boote mad him bone, & toke leue at Richard.  
 þe wynde was in his saile, tille Acres gan him driue,  
 Bot litille was his trauaile, tille R. gan ariue.

Concordati  
 sunt per  
 barones.

Whan

Whan Philip tille Acres cam, litelle was his dede,  
 þe Romance sais grete skam, who so þat pas wille rede.  
 þe Romancer it sais, R. did mak a pele,  
 Oñ kastle wise alle wais, wrouht of tre fulle welle,  
 Ageyns holy kirke tille Alcýse forto drawe.  
 In schip he did it lede, to reise vp bi þe walle,  
 &, if him stode nede, to couere him with alle.  
 He reised it at Meschines, of werre tijing he herd,  
 For þe ilde of Sarazins þer gates ageyn him sperd.  
 þe Romance of Richard sais, he wan þe toun.  
 His pele fro þat forward he cald it *mate Griffoun*.  
 Tancred he was wýs, he did R. wille,  
 To Philip turned his výs, so þat he held him stille.

**N**OW is Philip oñ flete, kýng R. git duellis,  
 Hes pele þat he vpsette est ageyn it fellis.  
 For wrath first of Tancrede R. vp it reised,  
 If he had turned to nede, his folk forto haf eised.  
 Bot whan þei were mad frendes, þorgh sight baroun,  
 Tancred to him sendes, praied him take it down;  
 þat no man for envic est ageyn him held,  
 Ne þorgh non oþer harie to do him reise his schelde.  
 Now purueies him Richard ilk a day alle preste,  
 Tille he be forward, he may haf no reste.  
 Acres þan is his triste, opon þe Sarazin scendes,  
 To venge Jhesu Criste þiderward he wendes.  
 þe kýnge's sister Jone, & dame Berenger,  
 Formast of ilkone, next þam his Chanceler.

De navibus  
 periclitau-  
 tibus in  
 mari versus  
 Cipriam,  
 & Cancel-  
 larius sub-  
 mersus est.

Roger Mankacl þe Chancelere so hight  
 His tide felle not wele, a tempest on him light.  
 His schip was dounborn, his self gan þer deye.  
 þe kýnge's seale was lorn, with oþer busses tueye.  
 Dame Jone þe fre to Jhesu scho bisouht,  
 In Cipres scho mot be to hauen sauely brouht.  
 þe mayden Berenger scho was alle ofright,  
 þat nouþer fer no nere þe kýng scho sauh no sight.  
 Tuo busses wer forfaren, þat in þe tempest brak,  
 þe godes attached waren to þe kýng of Cipres Isaac.  
 þat þat askep þat drede, & to Cipres wan,  
 Isaac did þam lede, to prison ilk a man.  
 Whan kýng R. herd of þat mischuos tide,  
 & how his schippis misferd, he turned vnto þat tide;  
 Tille Isaac lettres sent bi Roberd of Thornham,  
 Sir Steuen with him went, a noþer knyght William,  
 " Praic him for God aboue, als I am his pilgrime,  
 " zeld it me with loue, þat he holdes of myne.  
 " My godes þat he has þare, my men deliuere of bond,  
 " & destorbe not our fare, we salle to þe holy lond;  
 " & if he wille nouht deliuer me my þing,  
 " Fulle dere it salle be bouht, bi Jhesu heuen kýng.  
 e messengers kamen to þe kýng ýsaak.  
 ýsaak tille alle samen, þis ansuere he spak.  
 " Messengers, wherto chalange ze my þing,  
 " & what haf I to do with Inglis tayled kýng?  
 " þe godes þat be fonden on my londe o chance,  
 " Tille him I am not bonden to mak deliuerance.

De navi-  
huz.



“ It is my profit, to myn I wille þam holde.  
þei went ageyn fulle tite, to kyng R. alle tolde.

**W**HAN kyng R. herde sã ysaak respons,  
“ Turne we þiderward, & delyuer our prisons,  
“ & so it may betide, þei salle dre abie  
“ My þat þei hide, my men in prison lie.  
Now he changes his weic, tille Acres may he nouht,  
Many þerfore gon deie, I schrowe Isaak so wrouht.  
It was Isaak to wite, tille Acres he com no nerre,  
þe skape oñ him gan bite, þat R. turned þe werre.  
Whan Isaak had tiband Emperour of Griffons,  
þat R. drow to land with him alle his barons,  
He did gadre an oste of Cipre & Griffonie,  
& com vnto þat coste, to waite Richard nauie.  
R. was perceyued, þei were renged redie,  
& how þer pencils weyued, son he mad a crie:  
“ Arme we vs I rede, & go we hardilie,  
“ & we salle mak þam schede, & sondre a partie.  
He was first þat stirte to lond out of þe hooete,  
Armed & sward girte, bot an axe he smote.  
With þat axe he hewe, þe Griffons mad him weie.  
Many to dede he threwe, & to grounde down leie.  
His maryners gan vp rine about in stedes seere,  
þe Griffons þei gan driue bifor þam alle plenere.  
þe kyng Isaak fleih, his men had no foýson,  
At þat tyme he ne deih, his partie gede doun.  
R. cried on hie, “ Londreis folowes me,  
“ Loke ge be me nehí, fulle gode giftes gete ge.

De capel-  
one Ciprim.

“ Take

“ Take we þis Emperour, þat getis þise Griffons,  
 “ Falle salle þis honour for hold of our prisons.  
 Isaak had a spic, þat warned him ay beforne,  
 To tak þe mountayn hie, & bide þer till þe morn.

¶ Whan þe euen cam, R. dred tresoun,  
 Agen to þe water he nam, did set his pauilloun.  
 þe godes, þat þam gan falle geten at þat iorne,  
 Felawes were þei alle, als forthely as he.  
 ysaak sauh his vow <sup>1</sup> till & S. Symeoth,  
 What falle þer of or how þe morn he suld com doun,  
 With schelde & lance in hand to saue his regioun,  
 To mak þe Inglis fleand, þat had robbed his toun,  
 If he of his mot take ouþer erle or baroun,  
 His prison suld he wake, þat wer deppest donjoun.  
 For patriarke no pape, for bulle ne pardoun,  
 þer of suld he not scape, withouten grete ransoun.  
 In tentis R. rested alle þat ilk nyght,  
 His men wer wele gested with brede, wyne & light.

Mane venit  
 ad civita-  
 tem Lymo-  
 sin.

ON þe morn he ros, & went to Lymosoun,  
 A cite large in clos, þe folk were fled þe toun.  
 Griffons þei it held, þei wer scaped away,  
 Vitaile inouh at weld, þei fond of corn & hay.  
 Isaac did it store, to hold for tuo zere.  
 Ariued wer þer bifore dame Jone & Berengere.

<sup>1</sup> F. tille Criste & Syme- | vowa a dieu & Seint Simouns,  
 oun. Nam, Isaqe ad fet son | Gallice.

¶ þat tuo barges mot lede, of þat ware did he fille.  
Tille his siþen he gede, & warned þam fulle stille  
In þe mornýng to rise, þe tyme at þe day sterne  
þe Emperour & hise to seke þei suld alle gerne.  
His barons euerilkone be þat tyme wer dight,  
þe kýng formast to gone, þe way he led þam right.  
Was non in tente ne toun behind him durst be,  
Bot Bernard of Bayoun, þat was kepand þe se.

¶ R. rode stillý neihand þe Emperour,  
He gaf a bold crie, whan he bigan his stour.  
þe tentes down he hew, Isaac to reuile,  
& for non him knew, askaped he þat while.  
¹ Bare in serke & breke Isaac away fled,  
It was not told a leke, þat non of his þien led.  
R. alle ouer ran, & toke alle þat he fond,  
A faire þing þer he wan, þe baner of þe lond.  
Som of þam were gode, to R. gaf bataile,  
Bot allé to dede gode, & lost alle þer trauaile.  
Taken were a partie, bot maste of þam were slayn,  
Als man þat wan maistrie R. turned agayn,  
To Lymoson þam led, his fest he did þer crie,  
Berenger wild he wed, & þer soiorne & lie.  
² þe þrid day of þe fest, Sir Bernard of Bayoun,  
Newed eft þer geste, þe quene he gaf þe coroun.

De fuga  
Isaac Im-  
peratoris.

---

¹ En chemýse, en brayse | terce jour de la feste le Rey  
fuaunt eschapaif, Ses chi- | comaundait, Qe Bernard de  
uals, ses armes al Rey Ri- | Bayoun la dame corounayt  
chard leissait *Gallice.* ² Le | *Gall.*

Ecce totre-  
ges & duces  
venerunt  
ad nupcias  
Regis Ri-  
cardi.

**T**O þat sollempnite com lordes of renoun,  
þat weddyng forto se, for grete affectioun.  
Of Jerusalem cuntre þe gode kýng Gujoún,  
Gaufrey his broþer was he, & Aunfrey of Turoun ;  
Reymoun of Antioche, of Triple þe erle Bumoun,  
Frere <sup>1</sup> Ruffýn Delmount, & þe duke Leoun.  
þise mad R. homage douhteli, kneland down.  
Ageyn þe Sarazin lynage, þat leues on Mahoun,  
Alle þei same þis same, þat zare þei were & boune  
To die in Jhesu name with gode deuocioun,  
þat for vs suffred schame, & died þorgh passioun.  
“ We trowe it is our frame, his resurrectioun!  
R. said his skille, “ lordýnges, þis is resoun,  
“ Bituex vs if ge wille mak obligacioun,  
“ þat I be zour aller broþer, & ge in my bandoun,  
“ þat non faile oþer, ne consent to resoun.  
þei granted alle þerto, kýng, erle & baroun,  
& who þat wille not so, gaf him þer malisoun.

Divisit tur-  
mam Gui-  
doni.

**A**LSO suiþe R. has armes did crie,  
& his oste did parte to þo þat couth it gýe.  
þe noble kýng Guyon tok of his cheualrie  
Oþer lordes of renoun, assigned þam þer partie.  
Whan Isaac herd seie, what help R. was comen,  
& how to stop his weie parties had þei nomen,  
Of his men most worþi, at þam conseile gan take,  
þe best he mot go bi, a córd with R. make.

<sup>1</sup> Ruffýn dez mounz *Gall.*

þo messengers camen, þe conseil þat he ches  
Bifor R. alle samen, & enformed his pes.

“ your wille wille he alle do, & be at your mercý.”

R. ansuerd þerto, “ I, grante it bliþely.

¶ þan com þe Emperour bifore kýng Richard

“ þat I did dishonour, Sir, haf it to no reward.

“ þe dede þat I did ille, mý folý it was,

“ I praye þe with gode wille, forgyue me þat trespas.

“ þi man wille I be bi water & bi land,

“ þis reame to hold of þe, & bowe vnto þi hand.

“ þo men, þat I did take to prison þe toþer morn,

“ Amendes I wille make, & bring þam þe biforn.

“ þi godes þe biken, or þe valow verray,

“ þat þi dronkled men týnt þe toþer day:

“ & with þe wille I go als felawes in ferd,

“ A hundreth knýgbtes mo, armed & gird with suerd.

“ & four hundreth to botc, squieres of gode aray,

“ & fíue hundreth o fote, to whilk I salle pay

“ Ilk day þer wages to þo ilk plenere,

“ Knýght, squier & pages, þe termes of tuo zere.

“ Mý douhter & mýn heýre to loke hir I þe grante,

“ þat þou be in speýre I salle hold conante.

Imperator  
dixit Regi  
humiliando  
se hæc ver-  
ba.

**R**ICHARD curteise was, þat sauh bede suilk loue,

Forgaf alle þe trespas, wirschupid himself aboue.

Tent & pauillon tille Isaac did he signe,

Wirschipped him at reson, right as himself was digne.

---

Ma fylle eýr de mes te. | com coe[sive ceo]couenaunt te  
res te doray a garder, Taunt | aueray fet enteer *Codd. Gal.*

¶ Whan þe day was ent, to rest men wer alle laid,  
 Isaac gan repent, þat he to R. said.  
 Fulle stille away he went, þat was a theues braid;  
 A messenger he sent þat þus to R. said :

¶ “ Isaac wille not grante, to oblige him to þe,  
 “ No to be þi tenante his body bonden be,  
 “ Ne to suilk seruage his heýrs disherite,  
 “ Ne zeld at terme & stage rent mykelle no lite.  
 “ O deucl,” said þe king, “ þis is a foltid man,  
 “ Whan he with trecheltýng bi nýght away so ran.  
 “ þei red him alle a mysse, þat conseil gaf þerto.  
 “ Wenes he our men Englisse for to trecther so ?”

De man-  
 sione per  
 totum.

**N**OW gos kýng R. his purueiance to make,  
 How & whider ward he hoped Isaac take.  
 To þe lordes þat camen, als Bumund & Sir Guþe,  
 & þe toþer alle samen, he toke galeis tuentý,  
 & busses þat were gode o hundreth of þe most,  
 To fare opon þe flode, to waite wele bi þat coste.

Ricardus  
 circuit ter-  
 ram, & ce-  
 pit Nichoci  
 & filiam  
 Isaac

¶ Eft bi Cipres side Isaac to asprie,  
 If he toke any tide out of lond to flie.  
 R. south þe lond with gode folk & hardie,  
 þe tonnes þat þei fond þei felle to his mercie.  
 Roberd of Thornham bare him nobilly,  
 Bi þe se side he nam, & wan it per maistrie.  
 þan turned he to þe kýng after his conquest,  
 þei mad þan a samenýng, to go toward þe West.

<sup>2</sup> Robert de Turnham se marýne ad conquýs nette-  
 mene noblement, La tere souz | ment *Codd. Gallici.*

þe cite of Nichoci þei wan, & were þer in,  
 & a noþer þerbi, a toun men calle Cberin.  
 Doun of the kastelle mote Isaac douhter cam,  
 & felle R. to fote gretand, þat doole him nam.  
 "Lord kȳng," scho said, "oñ me þou haf mercie,  
 & R. hand to laid list hir curteislic,  
 & sent hir tille his wife, & tille his sister Jone,  
 & þer scho led hir life with þo ladies ilkonē.  
 þe castels & þe godes tounes stored wele,  
 Vitaile ynto þer sode R. toke ilk dele.  
 \* Sir Guy & Bumund þei com as þei gede,  
 þe ne tȳnd ne fond, ne were at no dede.  
 Roberd bisouht þe kȳng, to turne toward Bufnet,  
 & þer ouer alle þing his sege þer to set.  
 "In alle Griffonie ne es so strong a toure,  
 " & þat ze wille þer lie, it is to gour honoure.  
 R. also suiþe to Bufnet he gede,  
 His maistrie gan he kȳe, engȳnes dight to dede.  
 Whan þei were alle dight, stalworþely & fast  
 Boþe day & nyght ynto þe toure he kast.

**T**O while þat kȳng R. was kastand to þe toure,  
 Statin his stiward spak to þe Emperoure,  
 Als his mete he sat, & was his seruitoure,  
 "Forto amend gour stat I wille conseiloure.

\* Guyoun & Reymound re-  
 uenent unement, Pur coe  
 [sive ceo], qil ne ount con-

quis tere ne tenement in the  
 French, tho' in one of Mr. An-  
 stis's Copies ne ount is wanting.

Nota de  
 Statino se-  
 nescallo  
 consiliando  
 Imperato-  
 rem, & ecce  
 Imperator  
 amputavit  
 nasum  
 suum cum  
 cultello.

Sir

“ Sir kȳng Isakin I am þi vauasoure,  
 “ Mȳ nam is Statin, I wille be nō traitoure.  
 “ I haf kept þi lande, I se þat dishonoure  
 “ Is now þe nerhand, þorgh þis conquerour,  
 “ þat an Inglis kȳng, a wȳs werreour.  
 “ Loke þou lese no þing for þi fole erreour,  
 “ Ne þe lond be nōt lorn, þat þin ancessoure.  
 “ So wele kept biforn, als noble gouernoure.  
 “ Go & mak his pes, or he do þe more stoure,  
 “ & þou to þi deses may haf þe frute & floure.  
 þan said Isaac tille him, “ ert þou his māyntenour?  
 Fulle broþelȳ & brim he kept vp a trencheour,  
 & kast it at Statin, did him a schamfulle schoure.  
 His nese & his ine he carfe at misauntoire.

**STATIN** vp he stirte, him poulit þerof grete schame,  
 “ Sir þou has me hirte, þerfor þou ert to blame.  
 Als so suiþe he zede vnto kȳng Richard,  
 & schewed him all þat dede of Isaac þe coward.  
 “ Sir be mȳ socoure, & venge mȳn outrage.  
 R. did him honoure, & he mad him homage.  
 Statin wele þan lete, he zalde him alle þe honour  
 Of Baaf & Bufnet, þat he of Is Diendamour.

<sup>1</sup> *Deest es, (i. e. is.) Nam in Codicibus Gallicis, Q̄e Reis est des Englays, e sage gwe-reyour. <sup>2</sup> I. e. Diendamour, that he had of Isaack. But it should be rather read, Candare*

and Diendamour. For the French Copies have, Basse & Buffenet, Candare & Den-damour, Et tōtes les citez dount Isake fu gwȳour.



Castels & citez þat he he of Isaac held,  
 Baronies & fees, he gald him ilk a scheld.  
 þe grete lordes Inglis, þat þe werre had gonnen,  
 Wer fulle glad of þis, Cipres so sone was wonnen.

**B**E side of S. Andrew was an Abbay,  
 Cape þe name men knew, & þer in herd þei say,  
 þat kýng Isaac was priuely hid þer in,  
 To R. so þei spak, he went him out to wynne.  
 Isaac tþing herd, R. com him to seke,  
 Ageyn R. he ferd, to fote he felle fulle meke,  
 & said, " Sir mercý, my life þou saue it me,  
 " Do not þat vilany, fettred þat I be.  
 " In prison þou me do, bot nouht in bondes býnde,  
 " I pray zow it be so, for schame of my kýnde.  
 Said R. " þou salle haue at þin owen deuys,  
 " þi life I salle þe saue," Isaac he did vp rise.  
 " O dele," said þe kýng, " þis is a fole Briton.  
 " He spak no maner þing, for regne to gif raunson,  
 " Ne no þing him bisoult, he was of kýnge's blode,  
 " Bot for prison bisouht, als fole þat couth no gode.  
 " Now er his anens wrouht, of silucre wele ouer gilt,  
 " Dayet þat þerof rouht, his was alle þe gilt.  
 Taken is he to loke to Berenger & Jone,  
 & þei him vndirtoke þo ladies euer ilkone.  
 ' To Statin gaf R. þe cite in kepýng,  
 & bad him be stiward, als ore was with þe kýng.

Captus est  
 Isaac in  
 quadam  
 abbacia, ubi  
 absconditus  
 fuit.

<sup>1</sup> Et le Rey Richard ad schal de Cýpre la garde des  
 mayntenaunt donez Al sene citez. Partaunt com il estait

For Isaac did him schame, his lord suld be,  
 bei caled him þis toname, *Statin þe nasee.*

**N**OW is Cipres lorn fro Isaac & hise,  
 & to R. suorn for his valiantise,  
 þe mene folk (comonly fulle gode men & wise)  
 Com to his mercý, doand him seruise,  
 þat bies woule & wýne, & sellis with conant.  
 “Do com,” said Statýn, “burgeis & merchant,  
 “& knyght & squiere, & mak þam zour tenant,  
 “Citez & tounes sere, hosbond & sergant,  
 “& tak of þam homage, as custom is & haunt  
 “To do þat ilk seruage,” þe folk said, “we graunt,  
 “& þerto half our þing, for to haf þo lawes,  
 “þat Samuel þe gode kýng gaf bi olde dawes,  
 “& sikred it with skrite, hýngand set his seale;  
 & R. gaf it so quite, þat þei suld him be leale.

**N**OW has kýng R. of Cipres þe seignorie,  
 What with nesshe & hard wonne þe maistrie;  
 To Statin þe nasee did he grete curteisie,  
 Alle Cipres gaf him fre ageyn his vilanie,  
 With a suerd to holde, of R. heýres alle  
 Inglis kýnges folde, to whom þe chefe salle falle.  
 Statin þe reame nam, in þat ilk conaunt,  
 þat Roberd of Thornham, if þe kýng wild him graunt,

---

si. vilement maygnez, Statýn	in one of Mr. Anstis's Copies
le nase des ore est surnomez	this verse, Statýn le' nase des
in the French, unless it be that	ore est surnomez, is wanting.

With

With him forto duelle, to maynten þe pes,  
þe foles forto felle, þat rise wild in res.

**N**OW leues Roberd with Statin nasee,  
Tille tīping be more herd, or pes better be,  
With þe kynge's leue þe lond to justise,  
His enmýs to greue, þat ageyn him wild rise,  
His wille has R. sped in Cipres fer & nere,  
& Isaac forth is led with Jone & Berengere  
At Triple to sojourne, & þer þei mad a crie,  
Tille Acres forto turne alle holy þer nauie.  
Bihýnd left non of hise, bot alle with him þei nam,  
Bot he þat was justise, Roberd of Thornhax.  
Now er alle on flote, God gif þam grace to spede,  
With douhtý fo to note, whan þei com to dede.

Ecce de  
navi in  
mari  
capto.

**A**T none þe toþer day þei sauh fer in þe se  
A grete busse & gay, fulle hie of saile was he.  
þe weder was fulle soft, þe wýnde held þam stille,  
þe saile was hie o loft, þei had no wýnde at wille.  
In Philip nauie of France a pencelle þei put oute,  
His armes on a lance ouer alle þe schip aboute.  
So mykelle was þat barge, it myght not lightly saile,  
& so heuy of charge, & þe wýnde gan faile.  
To wite what þei were went a marinere,  
Respons þei gaf him þere, "þei were men of mistere,  
" Fro Antioche were went ynto kýng Philip,  
" & for vs has he sent, & his is þis schip.

*Sic.*

Said

Said þe kýng R. “ Sir prince if þou be,  
 “ Bi tyme turne to me ward, for I wille speke with þe.  
 þe prince com fulle sone, Sir Richard did he calle,  
 “ Do dight & mak zow bone, þe schip ere Sarazins alle,  
 “ Tille Acres þei þam rape, venom for our men lede,  
 “ & if þei vs ascape, þe Cristen may þam dede,  
 þan cried Richard on hie, “ now batale vs belyue,  
 “ þorgh help of our ladie, þat schip salle alle to ryue.  
 1 Ilk man þat may wynne tok to his partie,  
 To set chalange þer inne salle no man be hardie.  
 þe kýnge’s owen Galeie, he cald it Trenchemere,  
 þat was first on weie, & com þe schip fulle nere.  
 Oþer were þer inowe, þat þer after drouh,  
 Bot he com with a suowe, þat þe schip to rof.  
 þe schip cast trokes out, þe galeie to þam drouh,  
 þe kýng stode fulle stout, & many of þam slouh.  
 Wilde fire þei kast, þe kýng to confound,  
 His schipmen were fulle wrask, els had he gon to ground.  
 þe kýng abaist him nouht, bot stalworthly faubt,  
 Alle to dede he brouht, þat his Galeie ouer rauht.  
 þe galeie þer þorgh schete, & þe kýng was gode,  
 þe schip þat was so grete, it dronkled in þe flode.  
 þei teld fueten hundred Sarazins, þat drenkled were,  
 Fourti & sex wer sundred, & alle þe were saued þere.  
 þe summie couth no man telle of gold þat was þer in  
 & oþer riches to selle, bot alle mot þei not wýn.

---

1 Et ait [*sive eýt*] chescun | saunz altre chalenger *Codices*  
 la gwayne [*vel son wayne*] | *Gallici.*

þe venom alle þei hēnt, in þe se cast it away,  
 þe folk it mot haf schent, þat about Acres laȝ.  
 Armour þei had plente, & god besquite to mete,  
 It sanke son in þe se, half myȝht þei not gete.  
<sup>1</sup> Richard bade, “ hale vp hie zour sailes, þer God vs lede,  
 “ Our men at Acres lie, of help þei haf grete nede,  
 þe date was a þousand, a hundreth nienti & one,  
 Fro Cipres he was sailand, a toun he wan Acon.  
 Als grace of God wild be, þe wynde gan him dryue,  
 þe euē of þe Trinite vnder Acres R. gan aryue,  
 Dame Jone & Berengere bifor him fond he eft:  
 Isaac þe Emperere at Triples was left.  
 þe folk of Griffonie, whan R. was gone,  
 To Statin had envie, a monk þei ches ilkone,  
 þat Isaac cosyn was, & corouneð him for kȝng:  
 þei did a foule trespas, it was vnsemly þing.  
 Statin wild þei greue, mispaied was Roberd,  
 He said, “ þei salle mischeue,” whan he þat tȝþing herd.  
 Night & day þei woke, Roberd & Statȝn,  
 þorgh force þe monke þei toke, & brouht him to Cheryn.  
 zit he skaped out, þe monke of prisoun,  
<sup>2</sup> þei cried, “ has armes about Roberd fro toun to toun.  
 þe folk whan þei were comen to Statȝn & Roberd,  
 Eft þe monke þei nomen, at Cheryn þei him sperd.  
 Opon þe þrid day þe folk he did somoune,  
 Lered men & laȝ, fre & bond of toune.

Ricardus  
 applicuit  
 ad portum  
 de Acres.

<sup>1</sup> Le Rey Richard les sy-  
 gles comaunde eschaucē, Et  
 haster vers Akres, les Cri-  
 stiens eȝder, *Gallice.* <sup>2</sup> On

hors de la prisone noctauntre  
 est passe, Statȝn & Robert  
 af armes ount crye, *Gallice.*

A quest þan wild he take of þe monke þat bare þe coroune,  
 His abite he gan forsake, his ordre lete alle doune.  
 & ȝit a noþer sawe of behoues be spoken,  
 Ageyn þe comon lawe, þe prison has he broken.  
 Som chesons þei cast, & som for him said,  
 Bot here now at þe last, what dome was on him laid.

De mona-  
 cho rege  
 suspenso.

**S**AID Sir Roberd, “ monk þou was whilom,  
 “ For wirschip of þe werld forsok þou alle & som,  
 “ To God þou mad a vow in þi professioun.  
 “ His traitour ert þou now, þou did him a tresoun,  
 “ For þe worlde’s blisse þou left þin habite,  
 “ & now þou wost for wisse of boþe ert þou quite.  
 “ We toke þe als robboure in þis ilk cuntre,  
 “ þou rest þe kyng his honour, þat felle not ynto þe,  
 “ To Cheryn þat ilk toun, þider was þou led,  
 “ & þer þou brak prisoun, & away þou fled.  
 “ Est we did þe take, in prison we þe bond,  
 “ þat lawe I salle þe make, þat is Richard lond.  
 “ Galwes do ge reise, & hýng þis cheitefe.  
 “ Better him wer with eise in clostre haf led his life,  
 “ þe seruise of his song recorded & lered,  
 “ þan chalange with wrong þat kyng R. conquerd,  
 “ & þi messe songen, & serued God alle myght,  
 “ þan to be hongen in þi frendis sight.

**N**OW of þis olde monk & þis new kyng,  
 þat was not worth a fonk, don has his endýng.

þe folk was alle pesed, to Statyn wild þei cheue.  
 Of Statyn þat was sesed Roberd toke his leue  
 With ricchesse inouh, þat he to Acres led,  
 & teld kýng R. how of alle þat he had sped,  
 “ þe folk of Griffonie a monk þei chese to kýng,  
 “ Sib Isaak a partie had mað a chalangýng.  
 “ In Cipres wer þei comen, þer maistrie gan þei kiþe,  
 “ & we ageýn þam nomen, & tok him als suiþe.  
 “ To Cheryn we him led, & þer he brak prisonn,  
 “ Eft we toke him fled, brouht him ageýn to toun,  
 “ þe courte opon him sat, þe quest filed him & schent.  
 “ For trespas of þat, he toke jugement.  
 “ Allas! for vilenie,” said R. þe kýng,  
 “ þat a kýng suld so die, hanged for no þing!”  
 “ Roberd þou ert to blame, þou did ageýn resoun,  
 “ Certes þou has don schame tille alle þat bere coroun.  
 “ Sir,” said Roberd, “ þer of is not to speke;  
 “ Late alle þis be sperd, on Gode’s enmýs þe wreke.  
 “ Siben Philip hider cam, he gaf neuer non assaut :  
 “ It wer mykelle scham to mak suilk a default.  
 “ A partie has þou sped, þanked be God alle myght ;  
 “ git salle þou mak þam dred, or com a fourtenyght  
 “ Do reise vp þin engýns, & wyñ of þam þise dikes.  
 “ I trowe þe Sarazins our comýng mislikes.

**RICHARD** als suiþe did reise his engýns,  
 þe Inglis wer þan bliþe, Normans & Peteuýns.  
 In bargeis & galeis he set mylnes to go,  
 þe sailes, as men sais, som were blak & blo,

Ricardus  
 paravit se  
 ad castel-  
 lum.

Som

Som were rede & grene, þe wynde about þam blewe,  
 A selly sight to sene, fire þe sailes þrewe.  
 þe stones were of Rynes, þe noyse dredfulle & grete,  
 It affraied þe Sarazins, as leuen þe fire out schete.  
 þe noyse was ynride, it lasted alle day,  
 Fro morn till euentide, þer of had many affray.  
 To while þei had wondryng, of þis þat þei ne knew  
 Stode R. our kyng, þe chyne in tuo he hew,  
 & sesid þe Sarazin dikes, maugre þam euerilkon.  
 Now þe Sarazins mislikes, to Mahoun mad þei mone.  
 Our Cristen wer fulle fayn, þe sauh R. þerin,  
 þe dikes wer all drawen with iren chynes þrin.  
 “ Certes,” said þe Soudan, þat was in Acres toure,  
 “ þis is a kyng a man, þis is a werreoure,  
 “ Me þink els a wonder, bot he salle do grete wo,  
 “ He salle sched vs o sonder, fro Acres salle we go.  
 “ If he forth haf grace, as he now bigynnes,  
 “ Hiþen salle he vs chace, & alle þis lond he wynnes.  
 ¶ The bissshop of Perouse com to kyng Richard,  
 “ Sir, ouer meruailouse our duellyng here is hard;  
 “ Sir, here biforn of men haf we told  
 “ Fourti þousand lorn for hungre & cold.  
 “ þe hungre was so grete, & þe cold so stark,  
 “ þat a quarter whete was at twenty mark.  
 “ For ten mark men sold a litille bulchyn,  
 “ Litille lesse men told a bouke of a motoun.  
 “ Men gaf fueten schillynges for a goos or a heen,  
 “ For þe grete lordynges bouht to seke men.

Lamenta-  
 tio facta ad  
 Regem pro  
 fame Chri-  
 stianorum  
 per episco-  
 pum.



“ An ay bi it selue for fiue schillynges was bouht,  
“ A p̄ere for pen̄yes tuelue, or þei had it nouht.  
“ þe comon of þe oste bouht þam hors flesch,  
“ Or mules or assis roste, or haf bien mete lesse.  
“ Maný grete mishappes, maný hard trauailé,  
“ Haf comen vs hard clappes, whan þei gan vs assaile.  
“ He told to þe k̄yng maný hard chance,  
“ þat tellis here no þing, bot alle in þe romance.  
¶ He tellis in þe romance, sen Acres wonnen was,  
How God gaf him faire chance at þe bataile of Cayfas.  
¶ Siþen at Nazareth, at þe Assompcion messe,  
At Assur he did to deth þe Sarazins more & lesse.  
¶ Siþen at Japhet was slayn fanuelle his stede,  
þe romance tellis grete pas þer of his douhtý dede.  
Bot þe bisshop sais vnto k̄yng Richard,  
How þam felle oper wais so maný woes & hard.  
“ Bot,” Sir, “ we here wele telle, ze ere so trew a k̄yng,  
“ Our folk þat here duelle, zerne zour comýng.  
“ Ouer alle now is said, his comýng þank we God,  
“ Our hope is on̄ him laid, & fulle wele is it trod,  
“ þat ze salle wele spede, to schorten our soiorne,  
“ & mend our greté nede, to ioý þat it mot torne.  
“ zour wille is euer so gode, & zour treuth so treist,  
“ zour douhtýnesse of blode þe Sarazins salle freist.  
“ Now, Jhesu, for þat croice, þou þoled on̄ passioun,  
“ Here our siunfulle voice, & grant zow wýnne þe toun.

Ecce pro-  
bitas Ri-  
cardi.

Whan

**W**HAN kȳng R. herd, þe Cristen had suilk pȳn,  
 Fulle soft he him ansuerd, wepand with his ine,  
 “ To Criste for me biseke, þat he gȳue me þat grace,  
 “ þe Cristendom to eke, þe Sarazins to chace.  
 R. also suiþe did set his pauilloun,  
 His maistrie soþe gan kiþe, he dight him to þe toun.  
 Now ere þe dikes wonnen opon Gode’s enmȳs,  
 & sautes has bigonnen, þorgh whilk he getis pris.  
 So did kȳng Philip with sautes on þam gan pres,  
 Bot for a forgetilschip R. & he hoþe les.  
 Philip left his engȳnes withouten kepȳng a nȳght,  
 þat perceȳued þe Sarazines, with fire brent þam doun right.  
 For he com on þe morne, assaut he wild haf gȳuen,  
 His Engȳns fond he lorne, brent & tille askes dryuen.  
 R. said his avis, blamed him for þat dede.  
 A werreour þat were wȳs, descecyt suld euer drede,  
 Wele more on þe nȳght, þan opon þe day,  
 In mirke withouten sight wille enmȳs mak affray.  
 R. lent him of hise, Acres for to assaile;  
 Philip withouten fayntise did alle his trauaile.  
 þe to kȳng & þe toþer assailed it so hard,  
 þat þe Soudan broþer cried pes opon forward.  
 Alle þei went to here, what þe Soudan wild say:  
 þe folk com alle in fere with þo kȳnges tueye.  
 þis was þe Sarazins sawe, “ þe toun geld zow we wille,  
 “ If ze grant vs þe lawe, I salle say zow þe skille.  
 “ Late vs alle out com, þis is þe first we chese.  
 “ þat non be slayn ne nom, ne life no lȳmme lese;

- “ & if þat we wille take a baron of zour oste,  
“ & Cristen kýng him make, to regne bi þis coste,  
“ Him þan wille we say, who is moste valiant,  
“ If ze consent þat way, þe marchis of Mounfraunt.

De pace  
tractata  
secundum  
formam in-  
ter Reges &  
Saracenos.

**RICHARD** was hastif, & ansuerd þat stund,  
“ Certes þou lies cheitif, & as a stinkand hund,  
“ Here ere a þousand mo more worþi haf pris,  
“ þan he þou tellis fro, þat ilk traitoure marchis.  
“ It salle auaille him nouht, þat he zour Soudan sent.  
“ I se þat he has bouht þe lond with his present,  
“ & þis lond is oure; & our right wonýng,  
“ For oure ancessoure hereof was he kýng,  
“ & ze ere our enmýs, þe Cristendam to spille,  
“ & now is þe marchis turned to zour wille.  
“ I rede out of þis oste þe marchis go his gate,  
“ Bi God þat myght has moste, he may go to late.  
“ If he þorgh traytorie salle be at zour deuýs,  
“ I salle do him hang hie, or drawe with runcýs.

**SAID** þe kýng of France, “ R. whi art þou wroth,  
“ What is zour distance, þat he is þe so loth?  
“ & he is gentille knyght, of kýnge's blode comen,  
“ If he with vnright oubt of þin haf nomen,  
“ He salle at þi wille mak alle þin amendes,  
“ & late alle be stille, þat þou him defendes.  
¶ **Said** þe kýng R. “ Sir, at zour honoure,  
“ In þat ilk forward he zelde me my tresoure,

" þat my fadere Henry gaf to þe Holy lond.  
 " He toke it wikkedly out of þe Hospiteler's hond.  
 " Fourti þousand pounde, & if he zelde it me,  
 " We salle fare & founde als frendes falle to be,  
 Sir Philip stille he stode, worde he spak he more,  
 In þat same way þei gode, right als it was ore.  
 Richard asked þo landes, þat þe Cristen wan  
 Out of þe Sarazins handes, & chaced þe Soudan.  
 þe Sarazins wild not zelde so mony londes sere,  
 Ne þe kyng's ne wilde acorde in oþer manere.

**O**FT tille our Inglis men was schewed a mervaille grete,  
 A darte was schot to þem, bot non wist who it schete.

In þe schaft was purtreit, þorgh þe holy goste trowe I;

Ecce mira-  
culum.

*In nomine patris, it said, & filii & spiritus sancti.*

Was neuer Cristen man coupe perceyne þe certeyn,  
 Ne wist what tyme no whan it passed out est ageyn,  
 It com fro þat tureile, þat R. had down smyten,  
 Alle þe Sarazins conseil in þe schaft was writen,  
 & alle þer ordinance, kyng R. it wiste,  
 It was a fulle faire chance schewed þorgh Jhesu Criste.  
 R. mad þankyng to Jhesu for þat sond,  
 & for þat schewyng to wirschip him suld he fond.

**T**O Philip & Richard þe Sarazins said þei wild,  
 In a gode forward, þe toun to þam zeld.

---

A Phelipp & Richard les | Sarecyms volaint Souent la  
 cite

Of Jerusalem þe land þei said he suld it hauē,  
 þerto tuenti þousānd of Cristen men to saue.  
 þei treistid not þer tillē, bot þei did it in dede,  
 þe kýnge's withi gode wille vnto assaut gēde.  
 R. had minoures, þat mýned vndere þe walle,  
 A pece with a grete cours at ons felle doun allē.  
 þe Frankis bare þam stoute, þe mýned boþe & cast  
 Vnto a toure Maudut, & wan it at þe last.  
 þe Sarazins som þei slouh, & som for drede fied,  
 At þat týme wele inouh þe Frankis manly sped.  
 þe Inglis at þer triste bifor þam bare alle doun,  
 & R. als him liste þe way had redy roun.  
 Now has R. entre, & Acres taken es,  
 þe Sarazins com fulle fre, & offred him grete riches.

Acres ci-  
 vitas capta  
 est per Ri-  
 cardum.

VNTO Philip of France þe Frankis mad a crie,  
 "þi worschip to auance com in als kýng hardie.  
 "Com in as lord of fe, for hedeles ere þei hopped  
 " & slayn alle may þou se, þat þi way stopped :  
 & now is Acres taken þorgh R. þe conquerour,  
 His banere held þam waken was put of o toure.  
 Kýng Philip did also, his baner was forth laid,  
 & righ it felle þerto, for nō man him withsaid,  
 ¶ þe erle of Ostrece cam, & put his banere out,  
 & R. asked þorgh wham þe erle bare him so stout.

cite rendre & bien promet-  
 taýnt, Ke la seinte tere Je-  
 rusalem rendraynt; Et vint  
 mille Cristiens qen prisouu  
 auaint. Ne Phelipp ne Ri-

chard de ceo se assyaynt, Mes  
 de jour en altre al assalt a-  
 laynt, in *Codd. Gallicis.*

Le duk de Austrice i  
 veent, & banere desplye. *Gall.*

Kýng R. þorgh t hatic after þe Erle sent,  
 & asked, " of what seignorie holdes þou lond & rent,  
 " þat þou has put out here þi baner for maistrie,  
 " Among kýnges baneres, withouten auowrie?

" SIR, said þe duke, " I am now comen here,  
 " þise Sarazins to rebuke, & slo at mý powere.  
 " Mý lond I hold with right, at no man's dome,  
 " Bot of God alle mýgh, & Saynt Petir of Rome  
 " If þou to non þat lyues," said R. " þou chene ne bowe,  
 " þi lond men salle gife tille one þat may it vowe.  
 Grete scathe afterward in a litille þrawe  
 Com tille kýng R. for þat envios sawe.

De obsidi-  
 one castri  
 Pilgrim, &  
 de remoci-  
 one Phi-  
 lipp.

NOW haf þe Cristen won Acres þat was lorn,  
 þe Sarazins ouer ron with force & doun born.  
 þe folk was mýkelle & strong, of mete þei had grete nede,  
 þam burd departe þer þrong, þat lond mot þam not fede.  
 þei parted þe oste in tuo, þorgh comon acordance.  
 R. wille was so; so was Philip of France.  
 A castelle was þer biside fro Acres a jorne,  
 Grete scape it did bi tide to þe Cristen in þe cuntre.  
 þe castelle hight Pilgrým; of alle it bare þe flour:  
 þe Sarazins kept it þat tým for þer chefe warinstour.

*quin & duk etiam infra in MSS.*  
*Gallicis. Adeo ut apud inter-*  
*pretem nostrum idem valeat*  
*erle quod duk, id quod paullo*  
*post etiam liquet, ubi duke*

*plane habet.*

<sup>1</sup> Sire duke, dist le Reis,  
 par le fiz Marie, Si tu nas  
 seýgnour, ta tere ert altrýe,  
 Gallice.

þat

þat castelle was fulle strong, & ille for to wynne,  
þe Sarazins kept it long, þei wer inow þer in.  
Philip went him þidere, þat castelle to conquere,  
þe Frankis alle togider did nouh whan þei com þere.  
¶ Richard oste forth ran, & grace bifor him fond,  
Aubt jornes he wan with in þe Sarazins lond.  
Philip þat þer lay to spede had he no grace,  
It was not worþe an ay, his dede no his manace.  
R. herd it say, he dred an oste mot skip  
Behind, & stop his way bituex him & Philip,  
“ & if þe Soudan ros opon Philip of France,  
“ & I wer þan in clos withouten cheuisance,  
“ So myght it in a while þe gode torn tille ille;  
“ A man salle ay drede gile, þe gode is not at wille.  
R. his oste did turne, tresore he had inouh,  
Nouht wild he soiorne, to Philip fast he drouh.  
¶ Whan kyng Philip hard, þat R. was comand,  
How faire hap with him ferd, so fer wan in þe land,  
þat R. turned ageyn, his marschalle teld him why;  
& said Philip, “ certeyn our dede is not worþi.  
“ Our dede has bene nouht sen we hider camen,  
“ To turne haf I þouht tille Acres alle samen.  
“ If R. hider com, wynne it bifor vs alle,  
“ þat we þis sege nom, schame it wille vs falle.  
“ þan salle men doute vs lesse, men se we do no dede,  
“ þe Sarazins our pruesse not so mykelle wille drede.

**N**OW is þe oste Frankis tille Acres alle went,  
 & comen ere þe Inglis with pauilloun & tent,  
 & loged þam right wele ouer alle þer þam þink,  
 Inouh þei had catele, & plente mete & drynk.  
 Whan þei had alle eten, & watches mad alle preste,  
 To gete þat þei had geten, R. gede to reste.

*Ecce de-  
 precacio  
 Ricardi per  
 totum.*

**I** Orclý on þe morn his messe he gede to here,  
 To Jhesu of Mary born þis was his prayere:  
 “ Lord Jhesu,” he said, “ als so verrayly  
 “ As my luf is on þe laid, & on þi moder Mary,  
 “ Help me to venge þi dede of þis Sarazins kynd,  
 “ þat gaf conseile & rede, þe to bete & bynd,  
 “ & namly on þat blode, þat com of fals Pilate,  
 “ þat wist sakles þou stode, whan he on þi dome sate.  
 “ Jhesu for þin honour, if it be þi wille,  
 “ I ask þe now socoure, my gernyng to fulfille.

*Ecce quat  
 dicit Ri-  
 cardus.*

**R**ICHARD at Godesbord his messo had & his rightes,  
 Here now swilk a word he spak to his knyghtes:  
 “ Of þis kyng Philip haf we no maner of help,  
 “ Togidir I rede we kip, þat men of vs zelp.  
 “ I vowe to Saynt Michael, & tille halwes þat are,  
 “ þat for wo ne welo hiþen ne salle I fare,  
 “ Ne tille Acres go, tille þe castelle be taken,  
 “ þat Philip went fro, for vs has it forsaken.  
 “ For his aven defaut, with vs he has envie,  
 “ Go we to þe assaut þat God vs alle condie.

*De capti-  
 one enstri  
 per Ricar-  
 dum.*

**I** þe diks were fulle wide þat closed þe castelle about,  
 & depe on ilk a side, with bankis hie without.

Was.



Was þer non entre, þat to þe castelle gan ligge,  
 Bot a streite kauce, at þe end a drauht brigge,  
 With grete duple cheynes drauhen ouer þe gate,  
 & fyfti armed sueynes porters at þat gate.  
 With slenges & magneles þei kast to kȳng Richard,  
 Our Cristen bi parcelles kasted ageynward.  
 Ten sergeanz of þe best his targe gan him bere,  
 þat egre wer & prest to couere him & to were.  
 Himself as a Geant þe cheynes in tuo hew,  
 þe targe was his warant, þat non tille him threw.  
 Right vnto þe zate with þe targe þei zede,  
 Fightand on a gate, vndir him þe slouh his stede.  
 þer for ne wild he sesse, alone in to þe castele  
 þorgh þam alle wild presse, oñ fote fault he fulle wele.  
 [ & whan he was withinne, & fault as a wilde leon,  
 He fondred þe Sarazins otuynne, & fault as a dragon.  
 Withoute þe Cristen gan crie, "allas! R. is taken,  
 þo Normans were sorie, of contenance gan blaken.  
 To slo doun & to stroye, neuer wild þei stint,  
 þei left for dede no noye, ne for no wounde no dynt.  
 þat in went alle þer pres, maugre þe Sarazins alle,  
 & fond R. on des fightand, & wonne þe halle.  
 No body bot he alone vnto þe Cristen cam,  
 & slayn he had ilkone, þe lordes bot þre he nam.  
 With þo þre o lyue his messengers went,  
 Tille Acres gan þei dryue, to Philip mad present.

De probi-  
tate ejus,  
quando  
pugnauit  
per se in  
castro.

Dis seriauntz des plus | unt le cors le Reis sa targe  
feres, e de melz vanez, Deua. | ount portez, *Codd. Gallici.*

**N**OW is grete honour comen to Inglis men  
 þorgh R. þe conquerour, his douhtýnes we ken.  
 Kýng Philip of France fulle gretely is he noyed,  
 þat R. had suilk chance, þe castelle had destroyed.  
 þorgh spie þe Soudan wist, þat Philip was no payed,  
 No gamen him ne list, bot held him alle dismayed.  
 To Philip a letter he sent þe Soudan Saladýn,  
 A noþer to R. went, þat brouht a Sarazýn.  
 þus þan gan he seye, als it wer for þer prowé,  
 Unto þe kýnges tueye, “ þe Soudan gretes zow,  
 “ & sais for seuen zere God þan were þe trewe.  
 “ If zour God be so clere, & of so grete vertewe,  
 “ As ze preche oft tide, for sothe ze schew & scie,  
 “ We Sarazins on our side be þat tyme salle-purueie,  
 “ þat þis lond salle be zours, & we bicomé Cristen,  
 “ Withouten mo stours or blode spillýng of men,  
 “ & haf alle þat ze wan withouten gansaying.  
 þerto ansuer gan Philip þe kýng,  
 & said, “ þer men bedis skille, skille men ouh to take.  
 “ þo þat wille not þat tille, skille salle þam forsake.

“ **ALLAS!**” said Richard, “ þat ener it suld be counth,  
 “ Or spoken efterward said of Cristen mouth,  
 “ þat for a Sarazins sawe, contreued of fals quayntise,  
 “ A Cristen man suld him withdrawe fro Jhesu Criste seruise.  
 “ Alle ere we hider comen, Jhesu Criste to serue,  
 “ þe way for him we nomen, for him to lyue & sterue.  
 “ His childre ere we alle, of God our fader biforn,  
 “ bis lond suld to vs falle. ber our fader was born.

“ Jhesu

“ Jhesu was born here, & alle our first lynage,  
 “ We ere his childre dere, we clayme þis our héritage,  
 “ þat þise paen hondes our ancestre haf rest,  
 “ & þorgh hard woundes of þam salle reyme it est.  
 “ Bot if þei wille with pes þis lound zeld vs alle quite,  
 “ þei salle þan haf reles, of fayth gode respite.  
 “ If þei at no certeyn wille zeld it vs with pes,  
 “ We salle wynne it ageyn, þat þei bifor vs les.  
 “ þat dos not his denere with dede no with rede,  
 “ Hastely þis gere falle him þe ferynges dede.

**P**HILIP vnderstode; R. wild not consent;  
 þat ilk conant forþh gode, þat þe Soudan sent.  
 Philip held him stille, & bigan to smyle,  
 Men sais þat comes of ille; & þinkyng som gile.  
 Noþeles day & oþer he purueied priuely,  
 Of mast, saile, & roþer he dight his schip redy.  
 † Oft he sent for leue vuto kyng R.  
 Skenes gan him so greuc, þat he mot wende homward.  
 He was in poynt to zelde þe gaste, & sone to die,  
 For euel he ne myght him welde, in bed behoued him lie.  
 Sen oþer wais ne myght vaile, þan said R. for wo,  
 “ Philip now wille me feile, & alle gate wend me fro.  
 “ Conant holdes he non, þat he to Jhesu hight,  
 “ With body & soule alon to venge him at his myght.  
 “ Sen Jhesu he wille not venge, ne hold his vowe no þing,  
 “ He salle him chalenge þe day of his endyng.

Philippus  
 licentia pe-  
 titi à Ri-  
 cardo ad  
 Franciam  
 se paravit.

† Ke son deuer ne face, | prist, [Hastiement luy prenge  
 pur quay la croice perist, [sive | la male mort subit, *Codd. Gall.*

“ If

“ If he wille go or duelle, as he wille I wille wele,  
 “ þe despite, þat is to telle, to God is don ilk dele.

¶ Fulle oft biforhand bituex þam was distance,  
 For wynnýng of þe land, þat R. wan þorgh chance.  
 Haluendele asked Philip, as for first conant,  
 & for felawschip of Cipres conquerand.  
 Of þat Philip of France, for he suld haf grantise,  
 Mad R. a quite clamance fro him & alle hise,  
 & neuer þorgh no destresse suld clayme þer of no right.  
 Philip with grete mekenesse his trowth þerto plight,  
 Gascoýn & Normundie suld geme at his powere,  
 Withouten vilanie, tillc his comýng were nere.

**P**HILIP tok his leue, withouten more essoýne  
 His suld allo to cheue, tillc Sir Hugh of Burgoýne.  
 Alle þe Frankis oste Sir Hugh had in kepýng,  
 Now sailes fro þat coste, home wendes Philip þe kýng.  
 In þe se sailand he lendes toward Lambardie,  
<sup>1</sup> þe erle of Ostrice wendes with him companie.  
 R. stille he leues, þe lónd he wild more se,  
 & Saladýn he reues þe flom of <sup>2</sup> Cisare.  
 At þat ilk flom Richard gaf bataile,  
 Greuance had hē som, here now of his trauaile.  
 In Antioche, in Acres, in alle þo ilk cuntres,  
 He set wardeýns watres, to kepe alle þe entres.  
 Sýþen toward Cayfas displaied his banere,  
 & euer his nauie was in þe se biside not fere.

---

<sup>1</sup> Le duk de Austrice *Codd.* | rye, *MSS. Gall. tam hęc quam*  
*Gallici.* <sup>2</sup> Cesaree, *sive Cesa-* | & *infra.*

**RICHARD** <sup>1</sup> his his spie on Soudan Saladyn,

Som said he suld lie at þe toun of Joppyn.

To Joppyn whan he cam, þe Soudan was not þere,

þe flom þe Soudan nam, R. forto affere.

Saladyn priuely was bussed beside þe flom,

& spied strete & stie what R. suld com,

þat he suld not pas, ne <sup>2</sup> mo man of his oste.

þe water stopped was, þer passage suld be moste.

<sup>3</sup> Saladyn did stoppe þe dikes <sup>4</sup> kank & bro,

þat non suld oucr hoppe, ne man ne hors suld go

þorgh þat enbussement, þat was so priuely,

R. suld be schent, if þat way he com by.

**RICHARD** fast him drouh toward Cisare,

To witte where or how þe best passage mot be.

Whan R. þider cam, he sauh þer was tre gette,

Passage non he nam, þe forthes wer withsette.

R. beheld aboute, of gile he drede him neid,

Of Sarazins a grete route, (þe lond was vmbeleid,) & alle þat suerd mot bere, or oþer wapen weld,

Were sette R. to dere, enbussed þorgh þe feld.

He said, "Jhesu mercý, & þi moder dere,

"Wherfore we com & why, now we fynd þam here.

Whan he sauh he ne myght passe on non wise,

In þre parties to fight his oste he did deuse.

<sup>1</sup> F. has. <sup>2</sup> F. no. *Nam Codices Gallici*, De Richard ný passe, ne nul de sa partye.

<sup>3</sup> Saladyn les hoers de flum ad saisyé *Gallice*. <sup>4</sup> F. bank.

De Jacobo  
Auenue.

**S**IR James of Auenue he had þe first eschele,  
Was non of his vertu in armes did so wele,  
Gentille of norture, & noble of lynage,  
Was non þat bare armure, þat did suilk vassalage.  
Of werre & of bataile he was fulle auisse,  
þer wisdom suld auaille was non so trewe als he.  
Pere had he non in þe lond þer he was born,  
He praied þe kȳng on one he mot be first biforn,  
& he gaf him þe vamward; þe Sarazins oste to cleue,  
& he at kȳng R. for euer þan toke his leue.  
þe kȳng withoute essoyn suld be in þe midde,  
<sup>2</sup> & þe erle of Burgoyn he suld haf þe þridde.  
With were þe templers, & þer fraternite,  
Fals in alle maners, so tellis þe stori me.

De turmis  
Saladini.

**O**N þe toþer side þe of þe Sarazin,  
In þe vamward suld ride þe Soudan Saladyn;  
Paien most worþi of alle þe lond of his kȳn,  
So told me þe stori þat I fond writen in.  
In þe secund turbie was maister Coradyn  
Lord of Damas, his fader was Safadyn.  
<sup>3</sup> Soudan so curteys neuer drank no wyne,  
þe same þe Romans sais þat is of Richardyn.

<sup>1</sup> In the MS. of the *Heralds Office* tis de Auenues, in one of Mr. Anstis's de Auenue, but in the other de Auenues. Yet below both of Mr. Anstis's Copies have Auenues. <sup>2</sup> Al duk de Burgoyne la terce est co-

maunde, Et. al mestre du Temple oue [sive ou, vel ou] sa fraternete, MSS. Gallici.

<sup>3</sup> Soldan plus curtoys ne goustait vnkes vyn. De la terce eschele mestre fu Melchyn, Seygnour de Bandas, e

¶ & ouer þe þrid pas was maister Sir Melchyn,  
 Lord of Baudas, & Sir Matifasyn,  
 Lord of Galile, & þe stede þat Chaïn,  
 & Sire of þat cuntre, þer Abel was slayn.  
 ¶ James of Auenue, he was verray pilgryn,  
 He gan first remue þe croice mad on his bryn.  
 On þer first eschel he smot in fulle hastif,  
 & þorgh þam ilka del; als grehound or mastif,  
 Tuys withouten encumbre, with suerd in his hand,  
 He slouh withouten numbere, bifor him mot non stand.  
 Biside com a Sarazins, bituex him & a bank,  
 Sir Kalaphes Duryns, he smote of James schank.  
 ¶ þan spak James, “ þo a kosyn help Richard,  
 “ Fulle fer ert þou me fro, kast þe now to me ward  
 “ þi sister sonne am I, þou eam & I cosyn.  
 “ þi fader kyng Henry in þe castelle Constantyn  
 “ My moder þan gate he opon dame Auelyn.  
 “ Countas of Marche was sche; & or I git do my fyn  
 “ My dede salle I venge on Kalaphes Duryn.  
 “ With a gode suerd of lorenge, he smote þorgh þe Sarazin;  
 James lese þer his hand, & died in þat pyn.  
 On þe morn men him fand, & þe frere Baudwyn,

De morte  
Jacobi.

Welchifasyn, [*sive* Wetipha-  
sin] Seyghour de Galyle & del  
leu on Cayn Tua son frere  
Abel par [*vel* on] feloun en-  
gyn *Codd. MSS. Gallici.*

Sire Jaques de Aucunes,  
[*sive* Auenues] verray pelryn,  
Se seygne de la croice & prent  
son chemyn [*sive* chymyn *vel*

chimyn] *MSS. Gall.* Le  
Rey Henry ton pere en cha-  
stel Constantyn Engendra  
ma mere sur dame Auelyn,  
Countesse de la Marche, par  
Dieu & Scint Martyn Venez  
venger ma morte sur ceo Sa-  
racyn, *Codd. Gallici.*

A frere of þe hospitable, þe erle's sonne Paulyn,  
Was lord of Morian alle & of Mount <sup>1</sup> Modyn.

**W**HAN R. herd say, þat James was slayn,  
He wend for dole to deý, he com as a wode man,  
<sup>2</sup> & Saladyn sauh him cam, þer of fulle wele he lete,  
Ageyn R. he nam, togider gan þei mete,  
A kyng & a Soudan of alle þe world þe beste.  
R. tille him ran, a stroke on him he fest,  
He smote him in þe helm, bakward he bare his stroupe.  
þe body he did ouerwhelm, his hede touched þe croupe,  
He felle doun with þe dynt, bot son he ros vp light,  
Herneys nouht ne tynt, bot est on hors fulle wight.

De insultatione regis Ricardi & Saladini.

R. at þat turne þe slom he wan fulle wele,  
For Sarazin ne wild he skurne þat were of his eschele.  
Fourti þousand paien, what drenkled & what slayn,  
& a þousand Cristen, so was þe tale certeyn.  
For soth þe þrid eschele fulle hard was bisted,  
þe templers ilk a dele failed & þign fled.  
þe <sup>3</sup>erle bakward was born, & alle þe Frankis men  
Fulle nere had þei bien lorn, bot þei cried, *help Cristen.*  
þe erle bigan to crie, "turne and help vs Richard,  
"Or els salle we die, þat ere in þis rereward.

---

<sup>1</sup> Moryn *Codd. Gall.* <sup>2</sup> Richard, ia sunt encountrez,  
Quant Saladyn ly vait de *Gallice.* <sup>3</sup> Duk de, Burgoyne  
bone volentez Aproche al Rey *Codd. Gall.*



“ SIR,” said kȳng Guyōn, “ turne ageȳn, I rede,  
 “ Frankis & Burgoillon, els alle gos to dede.  
 “ þe Soudan Saladȳn has þam nere conquered,  
 “ þe templers magre mȳn, fals þei er & ferd.  
 “ If þei had standen nere, þe mȳght haf wonnen pris,  
 “ Non dos þer deuere, bot Raynald þe marchis.  
 Said þe kȳng R. “ if þe duke be taken,  
 “ It salle be þam hard, bot þei haf him forsaken.  
 þe flom sone he left, ageȳn toke his gate,  
 þe duke fro þam he rest, welnere he com to late.  
 ² þe duke at þat bataile lost sex. & þrittȳ knyghtes,  
 þre hundreth of pedaile, a hundreth sergeanz at rightes.  
 þe duke alle þese les, & þo þat were olyue,  
 R. for alle þe pres saucȳ did þam vp ryue.  
 At þat tȳme R. þere manȳ a man slouh he,  
 þe kȳng sonne of Dare he smote in tuo his the.  
 þe Soudan Saladȳn he was fulle vnfȳn,  
 He fled with mȳkelle pȳn vnto þe moutaȳn.  
 R. has þe pris at þe flom of Cisare,  
 þe Sarazin force doun his, Jhesu we þank þe.

<p>           ¹ De Jerusalem le Rey            Guyoun gentȳls Dist al Rey            Richard, Sire tournez le vȳs,            Le duk e sa eschele sunt ia            taunt surpris, Le Soldan Sa-            ladȳn apoy [<i>sive</i> ad poȳ, <i>vel</i> a            poȳ] les ad conquȳs, <i>Codd.</i>  <i>Gall.</i> ² Le duk pardist cel         </p>	<p>           heure chivalers trent &amp; sȳs,            Treis centz de petayle, seri-            aantz cent e dȳs. Et de cel            eschele, qauntz qe sount re-            mȳs, Fet le Rey passer le            flum a [<i>vel</i> ad] lour amȳs,  <i>Codd. Gall.</i> </p>
--	---

' ÞISE Sarazins were so fesid, þat fled was Saladyn,  
 & Cisare has he sesid, Japht & Joppyn,  
 Cades & Ascalon, alle has kyng Richard :  
 Under him kýng Guyon had þam alle in ward.  
 þe duke was in a cas, his wondes wer so grym,  
 þat his leche was in ille hope of him,  
 & R. was fulle dred, þe leche mot him not saue."  
 Tille Acres þei him led, better hele to haue.  
 In þer way ilk dele þei fond voide als hethe.  
 þe toun of Mount Carmele, þe toun of Nazareth,  
 þe strong castelle Pilryn, þat first wonnen was,  
 Alle tok Ricardyn, Caloyn & Kayfas.  
 Ilkon þise þei seised, tome alle þei fond,  
 Seke were þer heised, heled þam of wound.

Saldanus  
 venit tra-  
 ctare pa-  
 cam.

¶ þe Soudan to R. sent, to speke togider in glath,  
 For þe pes it ment, & of no maner wrath.  
 Ne no þing suld it greue vnto þe Cristiente,  
 þe barons said bi leue, welcom mot he be.  
 Saladyn come þider þat day þat he sette,  
 þe barons wer togider, þe kýnge & þam he grette.  
 ¶ "Sir," said Saladyn, "þi God has grete powere,  
 "Er alle þise Cristen þin, þat þou kèpes here ?  
 "þise Inglis," said R. "in my kèpyng þei are,  
 "þe Frankis haf oþer ward, wiþ þe erlc of Burgoyn þei fare.

Richard Reis Englays ad saisye Cesaree, Joppen e Scalon, Cades & Japhe, Et al Rey Guyoun la garde ad done. Le duk de Burgoyne	est si male mene. Qe ly Si- rogene del duk est desperce, Et le Rey Richard mout [si- e mult] desconforte, <i>MSS. Gall.</i>
---	--

“ Bot

“ Bot þei be of þi faith, els do þei wrong,  
 “ þei stand alle to gode graith, whan þou ert þam among,  
 “ & þou ert comen fro ferne, & riche kȳng is of fe,  
 “ If þou pes wille zerne, for þe & þi meȳne,  
 “ & trewe for seuen zere, I consent þertille,  
 “ If þou has þat manere, to do euenhede & skille.

“ **CERTES** Saladȳn, “ said þe kȳng Richere,  
 “ To mak partie ageȳn mȳn zit ha þou gode powere,  
 “ & for þe pes to seke has þou no mȳstere,  
 “ þertille to mak me meke, mȳ herte to zit in wehere.  
 “ þou has power inouh, wherto askes þou pes?  
 “ & mȳ wille wille not bouh, to grante þat þou ches.  
 “ If þou þe lond wille zeld, þerof is to speke,  
 “ & siþen if þou wild þi lay forsake & brcke,  
 “ & take our bapteme of funte, as childre zing,  
 “ I salle gȳue þe a reame, & do þe coroun kȳng.

Responso  
Ricardi.

“ **SIR,**” said Saladȳn, “ þank I auh zow conne,  
 “ þat þou me profers of þin, & has non enchesonne.  
 “ If I mȳght þe paemie justise þam ilkone,  
 “ & non had seignorie bot I mȳ self alone,  
 “ þan I trow mȳ þouht mȳght acord to þin,  
 “ Bot now dar I nouht. \* Mȳ broþer Safadȳn

Saldanus  
dixit.

\* Sire, dist Saladȳn, gre  
 te deȳ sauer, Ke tu saunz  
 desert me vols honourer,  
*Gallice.* \* Mon frere Saf-  
 fadȳn teent son regne entere,

Ses fiz sunt grantez seȳ-  
 gnours, ne volent lesser Tere  
 ne tenement, pur nulȳ prech-  
 er, *Gall.*

“ Is riche of tenement, his sonnes strong & stith,  
 “ þer wille wille not be went, ne lete þer lond ne lith.  
 “ Wild þe bicom Cristen, fulle eth I were to drawe,  
 “ Bot I dar not for þam alle one to leue our lawe.

**RICHARD** said, “ þer fay, gó now & conseile þe,

“ & bi þe þrid day, þat salle haf certeynte.

“ Bi þan I salle þe say, how þat it salle go,

“ Of pes to haf þe way, or werre, on of þe tuo.

Listen now a gile of Sir Safadyn,

Contreued a wikked wile on his broþer Saladyn.

¶ Now wendes Saladyn þer his oste gan lie,

His broþer Safadyn his comyng did spic,

He sent to kyng R. a stede for curteisie,

On of þe best reward, þat was in pacmie :

Bad him bi þat zere token, ware him for tricherie ;

Said, “ Saladyn was fulle foen, on him may non affie,

“ He sais behind þi bak, in strange companie,

“ Wordes þat er to lak, he dar þe wele diffie,

“ If he & þou alone myght zow togider alie,

“ He myght withouten mone of þe wynne þe maistrie :

<sup>2</sup> “ &, Sir, if þou be suilk, als men of þe criie,

“ Rebuke him for þat ilk of þat anauntrie.

“ If I may be anaile of hors or armurie,

“ Forsoth I salle not faile, to mende þi partie:

Bot or þat day felle to stand, þat þer acorde suld be,

Had R. herd tipand out Normundie.

---

<sup>1</sup> Sic. <sup>2</sup> Si tu soys taunt | crye, Rebukez le bien de sa  
 vayllaunt, cem le mounde te | sur quiderye, *Codd. Gallici.*

¶ “ þe folk out of France to Normundie were comen,  
 “ To R. desceyuaunce his londes haf þei nomen,  
 “ Bot he com right son, Normundie to fende,  
 “ His right bes nouht douȝ soner þan any wend.  
 “ Wherfore to som of his heisched þam þe skille  
 To treus on alle wise him burd grant þertille.

**U**NDER þe mount Thabor, in a faire medue,  
 Boþe þe parties wer þore to conseilé for þe treue.”

“ Sir,” said Saladyȝ, “ is it þi wille to say,  
 “ þis day is myȝ & þin, chese þou now what way.  
 For Safadyȝ’s sawe R. had enuie,  
 Wherfore a gode þrawe he stod in a studie.  
 þat sawe þat he þer said, so wela it was of leten,  
 In boke it was vp laid, zit is it not forgeȝen.  
 R. þis ansuerd to Saladyȝ for treu,  
 For þo men þat it herd wrote vs þat word alle new.”

De pace  
tractata &  
ordinata  
per Ricar-  
dum &  
Saladinum.

“ **T**REUS þou askes a þrowe, for tuo zere or þre,  
 “ þo men, þat þe knowe, say þou skornes me.  
 “ þe folk of paiemie þe word þer of fer gos;  
 “ Of alle þat seignorie þorghout þin is þe los;  
 “ In armes is þer none, þat to þi renoun rechis;  
 “ Wherfor þou has gone, & of þi pruesse preches.”

1 Le Rey Richard as vns  
la chos certifýe, Et a parler  
de trewe al Soldan plus se  
plýe, *MSS. Gall.* 2 Est Sa-

ladýȝ venuz en amour saunz  
boýdie, Et pryé al Rey Ri-  
chard, que son plaisir lý dýe,  
*Codices Gall.*

*Ricardus Rex.*

“ þat if þou me mot mete bi our seluen tuo,  
 “ My lif I suld forlete, or my hede for go.  
 “ & if þou wille it proue, þat þou ert so worþi,  
 “ A stede tittle our behoue here is on alle redi.  
 “ Now for þi grete valow, I ask þe a bone,  
 “ þat or we grante trew, fight we als so sone,  
 “ þan on non oþer side body so bolde to be,  
 “ On fote ne hors ride, to socour me no þe  
 “ & whilk of vs is down, & mad is recreant,  
 “ Cleyme & accioun he lese, & þe remanant  
 “ Of þat ilk land, þat Cristen euer auht,  
 “ þat þei held in þer hand of God þat þam it tauht.  
 ¶ þan said Saladyn, “ if þou synd any man,  
 “ Cristen or Sarazin, þat what tyme or whan,  
 “ I mad auancement with þe alone to fight,  
 “ Bot I to bataile went for my reame’s right,  
 “ Here I salle þe gyue alle myn heritage,  
 “ & als along as I lyue to be in þin ostage.  
 ¶ þe maister of þe Temple com procurand þe pes,  
 “ No more of þis to demple, tak þat þat ze first ches.  
 Saladyn for alle hise hette to hold conaunt,  
 Seuen zere at his deuise, & R. þer to graunt,  
 þat ilk a Cristen man suld hold & haue certeyn  
 Alle þat he þer wan, & no þing zeld ageyn.

---

*Id est, that knows or can tell what, &c.*

Now

**N**OW is it in forward alle pesed & wele ent,  
 Now turne kȳng R. tille Acres is he went.  
 After kyng Guyon & for his sonne he sent,  
 Of Antioche Reymon him also he ment,  
 Aunfrey of Turoyn he was þer present,  
 Of Triple erle Bumoun fulle suiþe þider glent,  
 Sir ' Ruffȳn broþer Leoun, alle þise held parlement,  
 Kȳng R. his resoun said þam, " how he was schent,  
 " Philip did him tresoun, destroyed his tenement.  
 " For to stanch his foȳsoun homward haf I ment.  
 " Normundie alle down, mykelle þer of is brent  
 " & slayn blak & broun of alle þat he mot hent.  
 " I wille of þat feloun tak vengeance,  
 " þat so fōrdos my coroun, if grace be to me lent.  
 ¶ " Wherfor ge lordȳnges, ge ere me lese & dere,  
 " I take in your kepȳnges þe londes þat we wonne here.  
 " þe freres of þe hospital, & þe temple also,  
 " Biseke þam I salle, þat þei help zow þerto.  
 " Now haf I don & said, & tauht zow þat I may,  
 " My hope is on zow laid, lordȳnges haf gode day

**T**HE prince of Antioche, & þe kȳng Guyon,  
 Bumunde erle of Triple, & Aunfrey of Turoun,  
 þise had in þer ward cite, kastle & touȳn,  
 þat þe kȳng R. wan of Sarazin feloun;  
 & Isaac þe Emperour takes his liuerisoun,  
 With freres mad soioure in temple domindoun.

Rex dixit  
 baronibus  
 suis & pe-  
 ciit licen-  
 ciam ab eis,  
 & iter ar-  
 ripuit ver-  
 sus An-  
 gliam.

<sup>1</sup> So 'tis also in one of Mr. other; as also in that of the  
 Anstis's Copies. But in the Herald's Office, 'tis Rupȳn.

His doubter with þe quene was for hir warisoun,  
 & so felle it to bene, hir fader lese þe coroun,  
 & as R. home went toward þis regioun,  
 Or he were taken or hent, or holden in prisoun,  
 He gaf his sistere þat while vnto þe erle Reymoun  
 Lord of Saynt Gile, aman of grete renoun.  
<sup>1</sup> I fond in mý boke, what skille ne for whi,  
 þat he his folk forsoke, & ġede so priueli.  
 • Aufrice to aspie him were better haf left,  
 þer in þorgh felonie was he robbed & rest,  
 Taken with enmýs & holden in prisoun,  
 I kan not say þe pris was gyuen for his ransoun.  
 In prison was lte bonden, as þe Romance sais,  
 In cheynes & lede wonden, þat heuy was of peis.  
 A noþer pýne he had, if it may be trod,  
 With <sup>3</sup> iren nayles sad, it sais, his fete was schod.

<sup>1</sup> Forte, I ne fond. <sup>2</sup> Po-  
 tius, Austrice, cum MSS. Gall.

<sup>3</sup> Without all doubt King Ri-  
 chard was used verry roughly,  
 and not agreable to his Royal  
 Dignity, after he was impris-  
 oned. 'Tis for that verry rea-  
 son, that some Historians tell  
 us (notwithstanding 'it' be not  
 mentioned in this Chronicle)  
 that a Lyon was brought to him  
 when he was confined in pri-  
 son, with an intent to have (by  
 that means) destroyed him. But  
 instead of that, he kill'd the  
 Lyon (to the great confusion

and astonishment of his ene-  
 mies) by thrusting his arm into  
 his mouth, and thereby bruising  
 him so at the heart, that he  
 died. John Rastall is one of  
 those, that speaks of this memora-  
 ble Action, taking notice, at  
 the same time, of the causes of  
 his being set upon, and of the  
 vast sum of money that was de-  
 manded and paid for his ran-  
 som. At the same time he like-  
 wise observes, that, according  
 to some, he was called Cure  
 de Lyon from this Heroical  
 Exploit, but, according to o-  
 thers,



thers, (who take no notice of this *Affair*) from his invincible *Courage*. *Rastall* himself seems to think, this *Denomination* was occasion'd by his killing the *Lyon*; and for that reason, as I take it, it is, that the wooden *Cut*, which he hath given us of *K. Richard*, represents him with the *Lyon* between his *Legs*, and thrusting his right *Arm* down his *Throat*. 'Tis probable he had seen old *Pictures* that confirm'd this *Representation*. 'Tis also likely, that his *Brother-in-law* *Sir Thomas More* (from whom he had receiv'd so much assistance in his *Historical Enquiries*) approved of it. Indeed I have not yet seen (that I remember) any other old *Figure*, (besides this in *Rastall*) in which *K. Richard* is drawn after this manner. And yet I cannot but think, that he was surnamed *Cure de Lyon* from some particular *Action*, rather than from his *Courage* in general, it being usual with our *Ancestors* to give *Surnames* from particular remarkable *Accidents*, such as distinguished them in a peculiar manner from other eminent persons. And as *Richard I.* had got a very great name for his overcoming the *Lyon* (as well as he had for abundance of other very uncommon *Instances of Courage*) so others also strived to follow

his *Steps*, and were forward to encounter *Lions*, and were willing to have themselves pictured as engaging with them. And, for better remembrance of such *Adventures*, they were often painted in old *Halls*, just as were also the *Encounters* that *Gentlemen of Activity in Feats of Arms* had with any strange *Knights*, such as those of the *Blesells*, hinted at by *Leland*, *Itin. Vol. VII. p. 61*. Such *Pictures* were look'd upon very justly as great *Ornaments* to *Halls*, and 'tis pity more care hath not been taken to preserve them. Sometimes there were figures in our old *Wainscotts* that had *Allusion* to *Heroical Actions*, and these, therefore, ought also to be regarded by curious *Persons*, who may even from thence be capable of illustrating some *Particulars* in our *History*. I have seen curious *Works* of this nature in some old *Houses* in *Oxford*. They were much in vogue in *Q. Elizabeth's* time, as they had been also in the *Reign* of her *Father K. Henry VIIIth.* when *Cabinets* were, withall, finely adorn'd with *Pictures of Antiquity*, as may appear as well from other instances, as from that which had been *Leland's Cabinet* in the *Bodleian Library*. But instead of expatiating, I

*shall give - Rastall's own words, as I find them in the Copy of his Chronicle that was lent me by my kind Friend Mr. Murray.*—This kynge Rycharde perceyued that the Chrysten people decresyd in the holy lande | aswell by infyrmytes as lacke of vytell | toke a truce for. iiii. yere and returned whomewarde | and sent the quene his wyfe by the see | and he sayled with a small company into Histra & there landed | where he was takyn prisoner by the duke of Ostreche and by him put in prison | and brought to Henry Emperour of Almayne | whiche put hym in stronge prison | and after Raunsomed hym at c. M. li. whiche duke of Ostryche was afterwarde therfore accursed of the pope for the wronge done to kynge Rycharde.

¶ Also for the payment of this sayd Raunsome | afterwarde the well of all the whyte monkes and chanons in Englande was solde | and rynges | iewels of prelates and vessels and chalyces of all the churches thorowe the lande | and dyuers and many shrynes scraped and spoyled of theyr golde and syluer.

Dyuers causes there were as wryters reherse | that the Emperour sholde owe grudge to kynge Richarde | one was because kynge Rycharde had promysed to the Emperour an ayde for the wynnynge of the kyngdome of Cicyle | whiche the Emperour claymed as his inheritance | whiche promyse kynge Rycharde as he sayd brake. Another cause was for that the kyng Rycharde toke from a knyght of the duke of Ostryche the dukes banner and trode it vnder his fete in dispyte of the duke and of the Emperour his lorde | & therfore the duke, & the Emperour were gladd to do kynge Rycharde displeasure.

¶ It is sayd that a Lyon was put to kynge Rycharde beyng in prison to haue deuoured hym | and when the Lyon was gapyng | he put his Arme in his mouthe and pulled the lyon by the harte so hard | that he slewe the lyon. And therfore some say he is called Rycharde Cure de lyon | but some say he is called Cure de lyon because of his boldnesse and hardy stomake.

kynge  
rycharde  
takyn  
prisoner.

þerfor þe pape of Rome cursed þam wroþerheile,  
Alle þat did þat dome, or þerto gaf conseile.  
His moder dame Alienore, & þe barons of þis land,  
For him trauailed sore, & brouht him out of band.

**W**HAN he of bond was brouht for raunson þat was riche,  
His moder so bisouht, he aryued at Sandwiche.  
To Canterbire fulle euen he souht to haf his botc,  
Miles he zede seuen to Saynt Thomas on fote.  
With fulle riche offeryng he wirschipped S. Thomas.  
His praier did him bryng out of his hard cas,  
þanked God & him so wele for him had schaped,  
þat of his anguys grim so lightly was escaped.

**T**O while þat R. was bigond þe se in hold,  
Jon did him trespas, his rentes tok & sold,  
His castels scsed & brak, bigan a grete distance,  
& neuer no word spak of R. deliuerance.  
Bot als a kyng of lond Jon bare him fulle stoute,  
þerfor R. wele fond with dome to chace him oute,  
& deme him als a noþer, for his vnkýnd folie.  
To kyng R. his broþer Jon mercy gan crie,  
þer moder þam bisouht, for to be at one.  
Of trespas þat he had wrouht R. forgaf it Jon  
& said, “ þi misdede be in þi mýnsyng,  
“ Euer more to drede, eft to do suilk þing,  
“ & I wille neuer more on þi trespas þenk,  
“ If þou repent þe sore, þat þou did suilk a blenk.

Dummodo  
Rex R. in-  
carceratus  
fuit ultra  
mare, Jo-  
hannes fra-  
ter ejus  
commisit  
multis in-  
juriis con-  
tra eum.

<sup>1</sup> Sic.

De parlia-  
mento apud  
Londonias.

**R**ICHARD to Londen wendes, to hold parlement,  
For his barons sendes, & þei alle to him went.  
At Westminster ilkone parlement þei held,  
To þam he mad his mone, & þus to þam teld.

¶ “ Lordynges of my chance wele ge auh to wite,  
“ & þat þe kyng of France wille me disherite.  
“ For þat I was bisted bigond þe se in hold,  
“ þerfor Philip is glad, & beres him fulle bold.  
“ My castels he takes, & seises my citez,  
“ Destruction he makes of rentes & feez.  
“ Wherfore barons dere, sais me a gode certeyn,  
“ & how & what manere my lond to gete ageyn.

Ecce comes  
sapiens  
& breuiter  
respondit.

¶ þan spak þe erle Rogere, as a man fulle wys,  
“ Erles with þar powere, barons þat er of pris,  
“ Knýghtes gode & wight, sergeanz alle in ferd,  
“ þise salle alle be dight, & help þe with þer suerd.  
“ Bisshopes & persons, burgeis of citez,  
“ & rich merchandes estsons salle help with þer mone,  
“ Abbay & priorie, & oþer religions,  
“ For vs salle pray & crie in þer afflictions,  
“ Better is holy bede of man þat right lyues.  
“ & standes vs in more stede, þan alle þe gode he gyues.  
þe comen wele was paied of þat consailýng,  
þat it were not delaied so was R. þe kyng.

**N**OW wille kyng R. alle his lond extende,  
Merschalle & stiyward þerfor about dos sende,  
& homage & feaute he askes & releue,  
þe barons er fülle fre, to do as to þer chefe.

Now has þe kȳng wele sped, & comen ageȳn to London,  
 & penies with him led, & spendȳng has he fondon.  
 His barons alle aboute fast tille him drowe,  
 With hors & armes stoute, þer com tille him inowe.  
 R. wendes to schip, he wille no lenger duelle,  
 þe boste of kȳng Philip fayn þan wild he felle.

**A**RIUED is R. at Depe in Normundie,  
 He lay þer half a zere, estres to asprie.  
 & whan he sauh he mȳght, oñ his folk affrie,  
 His werre ordeynd & dight to þo þat couþe þam guye.  
 To Gascoyne þat he were fullc smertly he gan hie,  
 Cursels a castelle þere he wan with maistrie.  
 þe sergeanz þat it held wer in poynt to die,  
 To prison þei þam zeld, bot mercy gan þei crie.  
 zit he tok a pray, þorgh quȳntise & spie,  
 Burrez he wan þat day, boþe hous & seignorie,  
 At þe dangu þat nȳght he tok his herbergerie.  
 To Cursels Philip had tight with alle his companie,  
 He ne wist it golden was, tille he com so nehi.  
 Whan he wist, he fled þat pas, to Gisors tok þe stie.  
 R. perceyued þis, þat Philip to Gisors fled,  
 He comanded his Inglis, þat after fast þei sped.  
 þei com Philip so nere, þat he cried, "tak þe kȳng."  
 Bot non so hardi were, to smȳte him for no þing.  
 Mē þouht kȳng Philip inouh was disconfite,  
 Whan he & alle his trip for nouht fled so tite.

Transfreta-  
 vit versus  
 Normanni-  
 am & Gas-  
 coniam con-  
 tra Regem  
 Francie, &  
 cepit Bur-  
 rez & Gi-  
 sors.

<sup>1</sup> Sa gwere fet ordiner, les | quytaygne sa banere desplye,  
 dutres establye, Deuers A. | MSS. Gall.

\* Pauillon & tent Philip bihýnd him left,  
 To R. was it sent, no þing þerof rest.  
 For mykelle lete þei ligge, þerof mad þei no force,  
 Philip vnto þe brigge þei chaced him of Gisors.  
 On þe brigge werc alle þe vāward & þe rere,  
 Under þam þe brigge gan falle doun in to þe riucere.  
 Philip & his meýne in þe water lay,  
 Schame him was to fle, & so him com þat day.

Markade  
 dixit deri-  
 sionem regi  
 Francie.

**A** Knýght a bourdour kýng R. hade;  
 A douhtý man in stoure, his name was Markade.  
 He sauh kýng Philip als he lay in þe water,  
 “ Sir kýng rise vp & skip, for þou has wette þi bater.  
 “ þou fisshes not worþe a leke, rise & go þi waýs,  
 “ For þou has wette þi breke, schent is þi hernays.  
 þe brigge was brode & long, boþe of tre & stones,  
 Whan so mykelle þrong was þer on at ones.  
 Sex hundredþ mot men se, so fele fallen þer were,  
 Of whilk þrittý & þre did þer eadýng þere.  
 R. comanded alle gate, þat Philip suld men saue,  
 For no þing suld þei late, bot help þat lif mot haue.  
 Of Mount Morice Mathi a baron renome,  
 Sir Alaýn of Russie, Sir Fouke de Gessre,

Tent e pauyllioun, ke  
 Phelipp werpist, Sunt al Rey  
 Richard tote sauuz countre-  
 dit. Phelipp oue [sive ouf]  
 ses Fraunceýs al aler se prist,  
 Richard oue [sive ouf] ses  
 Englaýs chacaunt [sive chas-  
 chaunt; vel chasaunt] les suist

Al pount de Gysors, qe nest  
 pas petit. En la rere garde  
 nes vn Fraunceýs remist.  
 Molt fu le pople grant, qaunt  
 le pount chaist, Le Reis en  
 la Rýuere entre les autres  
 gist, *MSS. Gall.*

þise grete were alle taken, & þer knyghtes þam bi,  
 Makade held þam waken, & tok of þam tuenti.  
 þe prisons he had in ward, for he was gode & trewe  
 Now turnes kȳng R. to se his lond Anjowe.  
 Sen þis ilk tȳme bifore or afterward,  
 I knowe no more to rȳme of dedes of kȳng R.  
 Who so wille his dedes alle þe soth se,  
 þe romance þat men redes þer is þe propirte.  
 þis þat I haf said it is Pers sawe,  
 Als he in romance laid, þer after gan I drawe.

**T**HE ferth day formest next Palmesonenday,  
 þe tȳme, as I gest, R. zede to play  
 þorgh a cuntre, men calle it Lȳmosin,  
 þe castelle manaced he þat Philip had þer in.  
 R. com oucr nere, þe castelle to aspice,  
 þat sauh an ablastere, a quarelle lete he slic,  
 & smote him in þe schank, for þat stroke, allas!  
 It bigan to rank, þe querelle envenomed was.  
 Siben on þe nyent day died kȳng Richard,  
 He ligges at an abbay men calle Founz Ebrard.  
 He regned nien zere, & sex monethes mo,  
 Maugre þe ablastere, þat þus R. gan slo.  
 I wene it hate Chahalouns, or it hate Galiard,  
 Ouper þe castelle or þe toun, þer smȳten was R.  
 A thousand & a hundred þe date nienti & nien,  
 þat R. fro vs sundred, dede he was with pine.

De morte  
 Ricardi  
 per balli-  
 sterius.

M<sup>o</sup>. C<sup>o</sup>.  
 XC<sup>o</sup>. IX<sup>o</sup>.

Now

**N**OW is kȳng R. dede, & laid in stōnt, "  
 Non heire was afterward, bot his broþer Jon.  
 His broþer erle Geffrey right heire felle to be,  
 (Bot after R. day Jon tok þe dignite  
 Or Arthure his <sup>2</sup> sonne,) if he had had his lif.  
 Bot Jon was þe onchesonne, & moued þer a strif.  
 Tiping here we say, þat Jon wille wedded be,  
 þe erle of Aquileý his doughter takés he,  
 Elizabeth þe gent, fair lady was sche,  
 Tuo sons of þer descent, tuo doughters ladies fré.

Johannes  
 Rex coro-  
 natus est  
 per Huber-  
 tum Archi-  
 episcopum  
 Cantuarie.

**T**HE Ersbisshop Hubert of Canterbire þe se  
 Com with gode hert, to do þe solemnite  
 At Westmȳnster, þorgh assent of erle & barouþ,  
 \* To þat I ore ment Hubert gaf þe coroun,  
 & enoýnted he was als kȳng þorgh reþoun.  
 Jon did aý trespas, men fond in him enchesoun,  
 He lýued in wo & strife, & in tribulacioun.  
 He was of licherous life, þorgh what his nacioun  
 Partic ageyn him chés, & wild haf þorn him doun.  
 Normundie he les at his obfusacioun,  
 In þe courte of France he was cald a feloun.  
 For Arthure dede þat chance, his broþer some Geffroun,  
 Erle was of Bretayn, þat to his lond had right  
 For to haf bien cheftayn. If Jon his dede had dight  
 Mý maister nouht he wote, to write þe me forbede.  
 Noþeles wele I wote, siþen þe child was dede,

<sup>1</sup> *It est*, Geffrey's.    <sup>2</sup> A | oue [*sive* ouf] grant deuoc-  
 Johon le fiz Richard ad done | cioun, *MSS. Gall.*  
 'la coroun, Enoýnt est en Reis |



Jon had right bertille, þe lond to haf in ward.  
þat Arthur suld bi skille haf bien heyre next Richard :  
Arthur's sister zing for dole þat maiden suete  
For sorow scho mad' endyng, hir name was *Margarete* :

**N**OW þe bode is gon to France, Arthure is dede,  
& somond haf þei Jon, to Philip courte him dede,  
To tak his Jugement of þat <sup>1</sup>felonse,  
His dede to him þei ment, Arthur's þe Bretaynie.  
Jon dred þat wendýng, to France wild he nouht,  
Wherfor Philip þe kýng oñ londcs souht,  
Toulouse & Tolousan seised & Normundie,  
þorgh slauhter of þat man Jon les þat seignorie.  
What dos þe kýng of France? atires him gode nauie  
Tille Inglond, ochance to wynne it with maistrie.  
He wend haf wonne þis lond as he did Tolousan,  
þe cuntre sone he fond in his berd redý ran.  
þe Walsch & oþer inow, with þam of Peucenese,  
þe Frankis men þei slow, Philip was fayn to fle.

**N**OW is Philip fled, here wan he bote lite,  
& Jon Northward him sped, his lond for to visite.  
Unto Scotlond he sent after kýng William,  
To Lincoln William went, & Jon ageyn him cam,  
Withoute þe toun a myle, & in þe wýntertide,  
þe day of Saynt Cecile þer parties gan abide.  
Homage he did him suere, & feaute in fere,  
þat faith he suld him bere, at alle his powere.

---

<sup>1</sup> *L. felonie.*

Boke þer was non fette, ne non þer after fore,  
 Hubert his croiçe doun sette, & William þeron suore,  
 þis is þe same Hubert, þat þe saw of nam,  
 þat trnslate S. Gilbert in þe hous of Sempyngham.

De morte  
 Huberti, &  
 electione  
 conventus,  
 & minaci-  
 one Regis  
 apud con-  
 ventum &  
 archiepi-  
 scopum.

**N**OW Hubert is dede our Sire, & to God is gon,  
 þe Prioure of Canturbire sendes to k yng Jon,  
 Bisouht him of leue, to mak eleccion,  
 To chese þe suld cheue aman of gode renoun.  
 Jon wrote to þe couent, bisouht þam alle holyche,  
 þat þei wille make present to þe bisshop of Norwýche.  
 Of som he had grantise his wille forto do,  
 & som said oþerwise, þat it suld not be so.  
 Alle þe priour side þe suppriour þei ches,  
 Oþer for enuie & pride þe voice of many he les.  
 þe priour said, “ þis day þe suppriour chese we,  
 þe toþer side said, “ nay, þe k ynge’s praier salle be.  
 With him of Norwiche grete partie gan hald,  
 Wherfor boþe holyche to Rome þe parties cald.  
 Monkes fourtene with him of Norwýche held,  
 In a voice alle bidene vnto þe k yng þe teld,  
 & suore him in leaute; how so euer bitid,  
 Norwýche he suld be Ersbisshop sacrid.  
 þise monkes stoute & stark, to spede welc þei wend,  
 þe k yng þre hundreth mark gaf þam forto spend.

. Now

**N**OW er þei alle on gate, vnto þe courte þei cam,  
 Eleccion þorgh hate it falles to no fram.  
 To þe pape of Rome þei mostred þer resoun,  
 þe pape at his dome þer elites quassed doun,  
 Est he bad þam chese a man of gode renoun,  
 Or þei suld þer voice lese of alle þer eleccioun.  
 Now is þer voice alle laid to Norwýche partie,  
 Bifor þe pape þei said, Norwýche is most worþie.  
 þe pape wild not consent, he quassed þer elite.  
 þe monkes alle were schent, suspended þam als tite.  
 þe pape þei felle biforn, mercý gan him crie,  
 Unto þe kýng þe suorn, to maýnten his partie.  
 þe pape þam assoled, & set þam vp at des,  
 So þei were conseiled, of Langton Steuen þei ches.  
 þise monkes were dismaied for Steuen of Langton,  
 þe pape þer of was paied, mad þe confirmacion.  
 Maister Steuen of Langtone Ersebisshop salle be,  
 þe kýng casten doun. who was wroth bot he ?

**W**HAN þe kýng vnderstod, þat his clerk was forsaken,  
 For soth þan was he wode, & maister Steuen taken,  
 þe clergie of þat schire so euelle he þam led,  
 þe monkes of Canterbire fro þer cloistere þam fled,  
 & gaf it to Brabans þe cloister in kepýng.  
 þorgh conseil of Sathans wrouht þer Jon þe kýng,  
 þe pape sauh out of cours þe wikkednes of Jon,  
 Him & his fautours he cursed euerilkon,  
 & enterdited þis loud, þat messe was non said,  
 A ded man if men fond, in kirke-gerd was non laid.

De feritate  
 Jobannis.

De Anglia  
interdicta  
& Rege ex-  
communi-  
cato,

He was a fole of lif, & vsed lichorie,  
Both mayden & wif alle wild he ligge bie.  
What did þe baronage & burgeis of Cite?  
Distroied & did outrage of castelle, toun & fe.  
About þei gan him chace, & hunted him als hayre,  
Long had he no space to duelle no wele fare.  
Maný men of his kýnde sauh him so abaued,  
For him þei fauht with mýnde, & oft so was he sauced.

De Rege  
Scottorum.

**A**Ls þis wo was lastand in cursýng perilouse,  
Kýng William of Scotland did his douhter spouse  
To þe erle of Boloýn, & whan Jon it wist,  
Withouten any essoýn, North alle gate him list.  
Son he wan Berwik, a castelle he þouht to reise,  
He cast þe groundwalle þik, his folk he þouh þer eise.  
William he þouht to greue, for þat grete despite,  
þat he withouten leue, his douhter gaf marite.  
Edenburgh & Rokesburgh vp þat he asked quite,  
& his sonne Alisander: for ostage zeld him tite.  
Bot þe kýng William alle þis ageýnsaid,  
In conaunt þat þei nam with pes alle was it laid.

¶ Of William has Jon þe pris, toward þe South he drouh;  
& rennes on his enmýs, & dos þam schame inouh,  
& his enmýs on him, & destroyed alle his fez,  
Ilk one tille oþer were grim þorgh tounes and citez.  
So þat holy kirke, & alle þe ordinez,  
& bisshop wo he wike, & clerkes of dignitez:  
þei rene þam prouendes, þorgh power þat þei haue,  
& no man þam defendes, no wille þam help no sauc.

De contu-  
melia regis  
& baro-  
num.

¶ Oft was þe pleynt mad vnto þe pape.  
 þe manfesours ateynt, & cursed ouer þe nape.  
 þe pape of þer erroure had fullē grete pite,  
 H sent to þer socoure tuo legates ouer þe se.  
 At Douere þei gan ariue, Pandolf & Durand,  
 To London gan þei driue, þe barons þer þei fand,  
 þorgh Pandolf prechýng þer werre was brouht tille ende.  
 þe barons & þe kýng were mad felauhes & frendes,  
 Asoiled & alle on euen, bot þe kýng an oth suore,  
 He suld him venge on Steuen, whider so euer he fore,  
 & of þo fourtene monkes, where men mot þam finde,  
 Be beten alle fonkes or in prison þam binde.

¶ Pandolf & Durand did com forth þe Ersbisshop,  
 & þe monkes forþ þei fand, Jon said, þei suld hedeles hop.  
 Pandolf proued þe kýng, in his disputeson,  
 He mayntend wrongfulle þing, & wild to no reson.  
 He proued þorh wisdom in ilk manere cas,  
 þat þe kýng misnam, & did grete trespas.  
 Alle gate þe kýng he pesed, so þat þe werre was ent,  
 & ilk a clerke sesed ageýn to haf his rent.  
 Pandolf tok his leue, & to Rome went,  
 I trow on him gan cleue many riche present.  
 Now is Pandolf gone, & Steuen Ersbisshop es,  
 Assoiles kýng Jone of alle his wikkednes.  
 Jon has sonnes tuo bi Elizabeth þe quene,  
 & tuo douhters also, fairere were non sené.  
 Henry was eldest, heýre of alle his þing,  
 & Richard zongest, of Almaýn chosen kýng.

De pace  
per legatos.

De filiis &  
filiabus  
Regis.

Isabelle fair as floure, þat neuer childe had,  
Frederik þe Emperour Emperice home hir lad.

De morte  
Johannis.

þe erle of Leycestre þe toþer weddid here,  
& Jon regned in þis estrekyng auhten zere.  
At þe abbay of Suynesheued þer he drank poýson,  
At <sup>1</sup> Hauhe his lif he leued, so say men of þat toun.  
A þousand & tuo hundred þe date was & sextenc,  
His tyme was alle forwondred, & endid alle with tene.

M<sup>o</sup>. ccm<sup>o</sup>.  
3 xiiii<sup>o</sup>.

Henricus  
tercius  
coronatus  
est.

**AT** <sup>2</sup> Westmýnstere cuen es Jon laid solompnely,  
þe Ersbishop Steuen corouned his sonne Henry,  
A gode man alle his lýue, of pouer men had mercie,  
Clerkes þat wild þryue, auanced þam richelie :

<sup>1</sup> *What he says here about King John's dying at Haughe (which is in Calceworth hundred in Lincolnshire) is very remarkable, and contrary to other Historians, who make him die in the castle of Newark. But it seems Robert of Brunne (for 'tis not in the French) had it from tradition, the people of Haughe talking frequently of it in his time.*

<sup>2</sup> *It should be rather Worcester, as it is in other Historians, and indeed in the French Peter de Langtoft. En labbeye de Swýnheued home lenpusonayt, Il gist a Wircestre, il memes le volait. Ore est le Rey Jon mort, e senelye Lerceuesqe Esteuen ad coroune Henry.*

Prodhome fu touz jours, des pouers aueyt mercý, Plus ama seinte Egleyse qe nul Rey deuaunt ly. Clers ke chaunterent bien sunt tost enrichý. Eglýses & prouandes ne sunt esparný, Ke Clerk de la chauele nait porcioun par my, in the MS. of the Heralds Office. But in one of Mr. Anstis's Copies we have, home lem poýsonayt, Egista Wyrcestre, and a little after, plus amaseynt Eglises, and after that, Eglises ne prouandres. Which variations are not of so much consequence as those in the other of Mr. Anstis's Copies, where the whole passage is read thus: Al Abbaye de la Swýnheued home lenponsonait, Il

Kirkes wild he dele prouendis þat wer worþie,  
To clerkes of his chapele, þat wele couþ syng & hie.

**H**ENRY kyng our prince at Westmýnster kirke  
þe erlys douhter of Prouince, þe fairest may o lif,  
Hir name is Helianore, of <sup>1</sup> gentille norture,  
Bigonð þe se þat wore was non suilk creature.  
In Ingland is sche corouneð þat lady gent,  
Tuo sonnes, tuo douhteres fre Jhesus has þam lent  
Edward & Edmunde, knýght gode in stoure,  
Of Laicestre a stounde was Edmunde erle & floure.  
Vnto þe Scottis kyng was married Margarete,  
Of Bretayn Beatrice zing þe erle had þat mayden suete.  
Faire is þe werk & hie in London at Westmýnster kirke,  
þat þe kyng Henric of his tresore did wirke.  
Grace God gaf him here, þis lond to kepe long space,  
Sex & <sup>2</sup> fifty zere withouten werre in grace;  
Bot sone afterward failed him powere,  
Bot his sonne Edward was his conseilere.  
Our quene þat was þen dame Helianore his wif,  
þe gode erle of Warene <sup>3</sup> Sir Hugh was þan olife,

gist a Wilcester, il meme le volait.

Anno Domini M. cc. xvi.

Ore est le Ray Joh mort, et en senely Lerceneske E. steuene ad corounet Henri. Prodhome fust tuz jeurs, de pouers auait mercy, Plus ama seint eglise ke nul Rays deuaunt ly. Deus en sa chapele fu noblement seruý, Par

chapelayns et clers de la reuestery. Clers ke chaudent ben sunt tost en richi. Eglises et prouendes ne sunt pas esparny, Ke clerk, de la chapele nad porcioun par my.

<sup>1</sup> De gentyl parente *MSS. Gall.* <sup>2</sup> *Rectius*, fourty, *cum Codd. Gall.* <sup>3</sup> Sire Hugespenser *MSS. Gall.*

Sir William of Valence, Sir Roger Mortimere,  
 Jon Mauncelle þe clerke, & an erle Richere,  
 & oþer knyghtes inowe of bi zond þe se,  
 To þe kýng drowe, auanced wild þei be.  
 Edward suffred wele, his sadere haf his wille,  
 þe barons neuere a dele said þe kýng did ille,  
 Aliens to auance ouþer in lond or rent.  
 To mak disturbaunce þei held a parlement.  
 Of þe aliens ilk taile þe lond voided clere,  
 Of þe kýng & his consaile þei sent a messengere.  
 þe kýng sent þam ageyn, his barons alle þei grette,  
 At Oxenford certeyn þe day of parlement sette.

**A**T þis parlement rested þat distaunce,  
 For þer was it ent, aliens to auance.  
 þe kýnge's state here paires, þorgh conseil of baroun,  
 To him & his heýres grete disheriteson.  
 Of wardes & relese þat barons of him held,  
 þer ne was ore of chefe, tille him no þing suld zeld;  
 & oþer þat held of þam, þer þe kýng felle be partie,  
 Nouht of þat suld claym of all þat seignorie.  
 Tille ilk a lordýng suld ward & relese fälle,  
 Bot tille þe kýng no þing, he was forbarred alle.  
 þe kýng perceyued nouht of þat ilk desceit,  
 þe chartre was forth brouht with wittnes enseled streit.

---

Le Reis les respount, [vel, droyt] a Oxenforde la parle-  
 Le Rays pur respouns] jour | menter, [vel, a Oxenford v tout  
 les fet doner, Tut draít [vel, parlementer,] MSS. Gall.



' Ne no men þat were strange in courte suld haf no myght,  
 Ne office to do no chance withouten þe comon sight.  
 þis þei did him suere, als he was kȳng & knyght,  
 þat oth suld he were, & maynten wele þat right.

**T**HE kȳng was holden hard, þorgh þat he had suorn,  
 His frendes afterward, þo þat were next born,  
 þe com to him & said, " Sir, we se þin ille,  
 " þi lordschip is down laid, & led at oþer wille.  
 " We se þis ilk erroure nouht þou vnderstode.  
 " It is a dishonoure to þe & to þi blode,  
 " þou has so bonden þe, þei lede þe ilk a dele.  
 " At þer wille salle þou be, Sir, we se it wele,  
 " Calle ageȳn þin oth, drede þou no manace,  
 " Nouþer of lefe ne loth; þi lordschip to purchase,  
 " þou may fulle lightly haf absolutioun.  
 " For it was a gilerȳ, þou knew not þer tresoun.  
 " þou has frendis inowe in Ingland & in France,  
 " If þou turne to þe rowe, þei salle drede þe chance.  
 ¶ þe kȳng listned þe sawe, at þat consail wild do,  
 þe barons had grete awe, whan þei wist he wild so,

Barones  
 miserunt  
 pro Sȳ-  
 mone de  
 de' monte  
 forti.

<sup>1</sup> Et qe nul estraunge en court eyt pussaunce, Ne qe le Rey saunz els de tere nul auaunce, Ne mette en baylle saunz lour ordinaunce, *in the French MS. of the Herald's Office. And so also in one of Mr. Anstis's Copies, unless it be that it hath ey for eyt; but in*

*the other of his Copies the passage is read thus: Ke nul alȳens en curt eust pussaunce, Si noun par assent de commun volȳaunce. Et ke la Rays apres de terres nul auaunce, Si Englays ne sait et de la nessaunce. <sup>2</sup> Dele.*

þei tok & sent þer sond after Sir Sýmoun.  
 þe Mountfort out of lond was, whan þis was don.  
 A message þei him sent, þe Mountfort son home cam,  
 þe barons with on assent to Sir Sýmou þei nam.  
 þei told him þe processe of alle þer comon sawe,  
 & he as fole alle fresse fulle eth þer to to drawe.  
 Withouten his conseile, or þe kýnge's wittýng,  
 To maýnten þer tirpeile he suore ageýn þe kýng,  
 þe statute for to hold in werre & in pes,  
 þe poyntes þat þei him told, þerfor his life he les.  
 Hardely dar I say he did a pette folie,  
 Als wýs men þis way, here first þe toþer partic.

De guerra  
 inter regem  
 & barones  
 & de  
 Mounfort.

**SIR** Sýmou was hastif, his sonnes & þe barons  
 Sone þei reised strif, brent þe kýnge's tounes,  
 & his castels tok, held þam in þer bandoun.  
 On his londes þei schok, & robbed vp & doun.  
 þo þat þer purueiance of Oxenford not held,  
 With scheld & with lance fend him in þe sold.  
 In alle þis barette þe kýng & Sir Sýmou  
 Tille a lokýng þam sette, of þe prince suld it be don.  
 An oth suore þei þare, to stand to þe ordinance,  
 Ouer þe se to fare bifor Philip of France,  
 At his dome suld it be, withoute refusýng.  
 þer for went ouer þe se Sir Henry our kýng.  
 þe quene wild not duelle, to þe kýng gan hir hie.  
 þus my boke gan telle, scho tok grete vilanie  
 Of þe Londreis alle, whan scho of London went.  
 Whi þat it suld falle I ne wote what it ment;

Bot whan þe kȳng of France had knowen certeynlȳ,  
 þat þe puruēiance disherite kȳng Henry,  
 He quassed it ilk dele þorgh judgement.  
 þe kȳng was paied wele, & home to Ingland went.  
 Whan Sir Sȳmon wist, þe dome ageȳn þam gon,  
 His felonie forth thrist, samned his men ilkon,  
 Displaied his banere, lift vp his dragoun,  
 Sone salle ȳe here þe folie of Sȳmoun.

**T**HE erle did mak a chare at London þorgh gilerȳ,  
 Himself þer in suld fare, & seke he wend to lȳ.  
 Sexti þousand of London armed men fulle stoute  
 To þe chare were fondon, to kepe it wele for doute.  
 þer þe bataile suld be, to Leaus þai gan þam alie,  
 þe kȳng & his meȳne were in þe priorie.  
 Sȳmoun com to þe feld, & put vp his banere,  
 þe kȳng schewed forth his scheld, his dragon fulle austere.  
 þe kȳng said on hie, "*Sȳmon ieo vous desie*;  
 Edward was hardie, þe Londres gan he ascrie.  
 He smote in alle þe route, & sesid him þe chare,  
 Disconfited alle aboute þe Londreis þat þer ware.  
 Edward wend wele haf fonden þe erle þer in,  
 Disceȳued ilk a dele, he went & mȳght not wȳn.  
 Towhille Sir Edward was aboute þe chare to take,  
 þe kȳnge's side, allas! Sȳmoun did down schake.  
 Unto þe kȳnge's partie Edward turned tite,  
 þan had þe erle þe maistrie, þe kȳng was disconfite.  
 þe soth to saȳ & chese, þe chare's gilerie  
 Did Sir Edward lese þat day þe maistrie.

De bello  
 apud  
 Leaus.

þe ʒ fourtend day of May þe batail of Leaus was  
A þousand & tuo hundreth sexti & foure in pas.

Rex Al-  
mannie  
captus est,  
multi alii.

¶ þe kyng of Almaýn was taken to prisoun,  
Of Scotlond Jon Comýn was left in a donjoun.  
þe erle of Warene, I wote, he scaped ouer þe se,  
& Sir Hugh Bigote als with þe erle fled he.  
Maný faire ladie lese hir lord þat day,  
& maný gode bodie slayn at Leaus lay.  
þe nombre non wrote, for telle þam mot no man,  
Bot he þat alle wote, & alle þing ses & can.  
Edward, þat was zing, with his owen rede,  
For his fader þe kyng himself to prison bede.  
For þe kyng of Almaýn his neuow was ostage,  
In prison nere a zere was Edward in cage.

<sup>1</sup> *Others say the 12th. of May. See Stowe's Annals, pag. 194. Ed. fol. But not so rightly, as I take it. See Dugdale's Baronage, Tome I. p. 408. Rastall says in his Chronicle, that it was fought the 23d. of May.—And than (says he) the barons with a great multytude of the cite of London | and with a great hoost of other people came agaynst the kyng—betwene whome the. xxiii. day of May was fought a maruelous cruell battell at Lewys | and the Londoners that gaue the fyrst as- sent | by reason of the sharpe shot of Arowes & strokes gyuen*

by them of the kynges partes began to drawe backe.

• But the barons incurraged theyr men in suche wyse that they nat onely set vpon them with fresshe men | but incurraged so them that gaue backe | that they turned agayne & fought so fersly that the kynges parte gaue backe | & the kyng lost the fylde. where the kyng hym selfe & the kyng of Romayns & Edwarde the kynges son were takyn prisoners & many other mo | and. xx. M. men slayne for this battell contynued the more part of the day. <sup>2</sup> *Præfige, &*

The ba-  
telle at  
Lewys.

Aboute

Aboute with Sir Sýmoun þe kýng went þat zere,  
 Cite, castelle & toun alle was in þe erle's dangere.  
 It was on a day Edward þouht a wile,  
 He said he wild asay þer hors alle in a mile.  
 He asayed þam bi & bi, & retreied þam ilkone,  
 & stoned þam alle wery, standand stille as stone.  
 A suýft stede þer was a lady þider sent,  
 Edward knowe his pas, þe last of alle him hent,  
 Asaied him vp & doun, suýftest he was of alle.  
 þat kept him in prisoun, Edward did him calle,  
 "Maister haf gode day, soiorne wille no more,  
 "I salle zit, if I may my soiorne, trauaile sore.  
 þe stede he had asaied, & knew þat he was gode,  
 In to þe watere he straied, & passed wele þat flode.  
 Whan Edward was ouere graciously & wele,  
 He hoped haf recouere at Wigemore castele.  
 Edward is wisely of prison scaped oute,  
 Felas he fond redy, & mad his partie stoute.  
 þe erle's sonnes wer hauteyn, did many folie dede,  
 þat teld a knyght certeyn to þe erle als þei boþe gede.

Edwardus  
 evasit de  
 carcere  
 Herfordia,  
 Et de eva-  
 sione ejus.

**T**HE erle gede on a day, to play him with a knyght,  
 & asked him on his play, "what haf I be sight?  
 þe knyght ansuerd & said, "in zow a faute men fynde,  
 "& is an ille vpbraid, þat ze ere nere blynde.  
 þe erle said, "nay perde, I may se right wele.  
 þe knyght said, "Sir nay, ze vnneþ is any dele.  
 "For þou has ille sonnes, foles & vnwise,  
 "þer dedes þou not mones, ne nouht wille þam chastise.

Ecce dis-  
 tum militis  
 ad comitem  
 de filiis.

“ I redē þou gyue gode tent, & chastise þam sone,  
 “ For þam ze may be schent, for vengeance is granted bone.  
 þe erle ansuerd nouht, he lete þat word ouer go,  
 No þing þer on he þouht, tille vengeance felle on þo.  
 Euer were his sonnes hauteyn, & bold for þer partie,  
 Boþe to knyght & sueyn did þei vilanie.  
 For lese ne for loth, folle wild þei not spare,  
 Wherfor wex with þam wroth Sir Gilbert of Clare.  
 Sir Gilbert herd say of þer dedes ille,  
 Of non þe had ay to stýnt ne hold þam stille.  
 þer of Edward herd say, þat Gilberd turned his wille,  
 To Gilbert tok his way, his luf to tak & tille.  
 Sone þei were at one, with wille at on assent  
 His luf fro Munfort gon litle Sýmon for schent.  
 Treuth togidere þei plight Edward & Gilbert,  
 Ageyn Sýmon to fight, for ouht þat mot be herd.  
 Mercý suld non haue Sýmon no his sonnes,  
 No raunson suld þam saue for doute of drede estsones.  
 Schent is ilk baroun, now Gilbert turnes grim,  
 þe Mountfort Sir Sýmoun most affied oñ him.  
 “ Allas! Sir Gilbert þou turned þin oth,  
 “ At Strýuelyn men it herd, how God þer for was wroth.

De filiis  
 Symonis &  
 stultitia eo-  
 rum per  
 totum.

**T**HE erle sonnes vp & down of parties mad þei bost,  
 Towhils at Northamptoun þise kýnges gadred ost.  
 Sýmon sonnes it lest, to Killýngworth þei went,  
 & þer þe soioined est, þer rioterie þam schent.  
 Suilk ribaudie þei led, þei gaf no tale of wham,  
 Towhils Sir Edward had seisid alle Euesham.

¶ þe fift day it was after Lammesse tide,  
 & writen is in þat pas, at Euesham gan þei ride.  
 In þe alder next þat þe bataile was of Leaus,  
 þe gynnýng of heruest, as þe story scheawes,  
 Com Sýmon to feld, & þat was maugre his,  
 Or euer he list his scheld, his wist it ged amýs.  
 He was on his stede, displaied his bancre,  
 He sauh þat treson gede, doun went his powere.  
 He sauh Sir Edward ride, batailed him agecýn,  
 Gloucestre þe toþer side, þan wist þe erle certeýn,  
 His side suld doun falle, till he he said sone :  
 “ God haf our saules alle, our dayes ere alle done,  
 Edward first in rode, & perced alle þe pres.  
 þo þat him abode þer lýues alle þei les. }  
 He mad his fader quite of prison þer he lay,  
 Deliuerd him als tite with dýnt of suerd þat day.  
 Hard was þat bataile, & ouer grete þe folie,  
 So scharply gan þai assaile, so mykille folk gan die.  
 Stoutly was þat stoure, long lastand þat fight,  
 þe day lost his coloure, & mirk was as þe nýght.  
 þe lif of many man þat ilk day was lorn,  
 þo þat it first bigan wrotherhaile wer þei born.

**N**OW is þe bataile smýten, Sir Sýmon is þer slayn,  
 His sonnes, als ze witen, died on þat playn.  
 His membres of þei schare, & bare þam to present  
 Sir Hugh Despenser, þare als he to dede went.  
 Sir Rauf þe gode Basset did þer his endýng,  
 Sir Pers of Mountfort fet his dede at þat samenýng.

De bello de  
 Euesham  
 per totum  
 lege.

Sir

Sir Guy Baliol died þore a zong knyght & hardý,  
 He was pleyned more þan oþer tuenty.  
 þise & maný mo died in þat stoure,  
 þe kýng may sauely go, & maynten his honour.  
 Pris þan has þe sonne, þe fadere maistric,  
 þer went Northampton, so wild kýng Henric.

**A**T þe parlement was flemed barons fele,  
 þe countas of Leicestre, hir sonnes wild no-man spele.  
 Oþer lordes inowe of erles & barouns,  
 To þe wod som drowe, & som left in prisouns.  
 To say longlý or schorte, alle armes bare.  
 \* Almerik or Mountfort depriued was þare,  
 & þe tresorie, þat he had in kepýng,  
 & gaf þat ilk bailie tor þe Mortimere sonne zing.

De parliamento apud Northamptoniam.

D. De Octobono legato.  
 Sy  
 st  
 ru  
 tot

**I**A legate Ottobon þe pape hider sent,  
 To mak þe barons on þorgh his prechément.  
 þe queene com out of France, & with hir alle þo,  
 þat for þe puruciance were exild to go,  
 Saue Jon þe Maunselle, he died bigond þe se,  
 Als chance for him felle, þe toþer welcom be.

A. M. C. C. C. LXVI.

**I**A thousand & tuo hundred, & sex & sexti,  
 þat þat er fled & sundred þo rise ageýn Henri.  
 For after þe takýng of Kilýngworth castelle,  
 þe flemed ageýn þe kýng ros est fulle rebelle.

---

* Emerike de Mountfort sloques fu prýuez De la tresorýe, dount fust estallez En leglýse	Seint Pere, de Euerwik nomez, Als fiz le Mortýmer le Rey lad donez, <i>MSS. Gall.</i>
---	---

For



For þe men þat were fled disherited of þer londés,  
To purches þam þei sped, now ilk of þam so fondes.  
Robert of Ferers he robbed boþe & slouh  
Bi nýght in stede sers, & tillé his felawes drouli.  
Of þam was þer non þat lufed kýng Henry,  
To Chestrefeld ilkon þe com vngratiously.  
þe kýng did þam spic with gode men of renoun,  
Com on þam prinelié, assailed þam in þe toun.  
þe barons fault ageyn, þei wist of no socoure,  
Many of þam wer slayn, & som passed at honour.  
þat was þe gode Deyuile, he did wele his deuere,  
þat stoure he held a while, & passed quite & clere.

¶ In þe monyng eft bigan a new stoure,  
Robert Ferers þer left, Baudewyn þe vauasoure  
Lord of Chestrefeld, þise mýght not lightly fle.  
þer side alle doun held, taken were þer meyne.  
Robert Wollerton, I trowe for som trespas,  
He had grete renoun, on Kene hanged he was.

¶ þis douhty Deyuile his name was Sir Jon,  
Of Axholm to þe Ilc he scaped himself alon.  
For to robbe & renc, þer he held his haunt,  
He wild spare ne leue burgeis no merchaunt.  
& whan he dred him ouht, for ouercomýng of mó  
Toward þe South he souht, als he were non of þo,  
Bot as a passand man, felawes forto seke,  
So often away he wan, & vmwhile cheke bi cheke.  
þus did þe Deyuile more þan haf a gere,  
& gadred him þat while inouh of powere.

De rapaci-  
tate Judeis-  
mi apud  
Lincol-  
niam.

¶ Whan þei wer inowe, on whilk þei mot asie,  
To Lyncoln þei drowe, & þer þei suld relie.  
þe tuelft day of Aprile, whan þer powere was grete,  
& went alle at o wile, in to Lyncoln þei schete.  
þorghout þe Juery þei robbed þam & slouli,  
þe cofres with tresory þe braken & þe away drouli.  
þe chartres. & þe scris þat noied Cristen men,  
þat lay for vsure in pris elleuen als for ten,  
Were casten in sire & brent in podels vilaynly,  
Of Jues slayn & schent a hundred & sixty.  
Whan Sir Edward herd, þat þei had Lyncoln taken,  
& þe Juerie misferd, þer tresorie ouerschaken,  
He sped him þider in haste, with hilled hors of pris,  
He com & fond alle waste, away were þe enmys,  
þei went to þe ilde of Hely vnto Sir Hugh Pecche,  
þei manned þam so boldely, on þam had non entre.  
Edward lese not wele, þat he with þam not mette,  
To Kilyngworth castole he went, þe sege to sette.  
Fro Midsomeretide to þe Apostle S. Thomas  
þe fled mayntend þer side, þe castelle hoklen was.  
For alle þat þider went, Sir Edward & ilkon,  
Untille þe pape sent his legate Ottobon.  
Whan þis legate was comen, of som he was bisouht,  
In forward out þei nomen, els wild þei nouht.  
Sir Henry of Hastyng he gald it bi his wille,  
Ouer alle maner þing life & lymmes haf stille,  
& alle þer tresorie, þat þerin was fonden,  
Withouten vilenie vnto þe pes bonden.

þis legate Ottobone mad a cursyng hard  
Of þam euerilkone, þat brak þat afterward ;  
& som of þer heýres so hard charged wore,  
& zit many it peýres, & som has satled sore.  
¶ þan went þis Ottobone þorghout þe cuntre,  
& quaynted him with ilkone, lewed & ordine,  
& many of þam wer mendid of folies þorgh his dome,  
& he þe better spendid als he went to Rome.

**SIR** Edward vnto þe ilde he went of Hely,  
With many man fulle wilde to bataile redy.  
Edward alle aboute he spied in to ride,  
With in had þei no doute, defendid on ilk side.  
So ageyn Edward þei held it half a gere,  
þei sauh þe sege so hard, þei sent a messengere,  
þei ilde forto zelde at his owen biddýng,  
If he þam saue wilde ageyn Henry our kýng.  
Edward was curteýs, & man fulle of mercý,  
With hors & herneys he went to kýng Henry.  
¶ Right in alle þis fare wex an euell chek,  
Ageyn Gilbert of Clare þe kýng was in contek.  
Sir Edward was witnes, whi þe wrath suld be,  
Bot zit to me it es forsoth als priuete.  
þe men þat were in þe ilde of þis contek herd,  
þe conseiled þam a while, & siþen to London ferd  
To Gilbert of Clare, & mayntend his powere.  
With him bileft þei þare a quarter of a gere.  
Men in hert it kast, þat were of gode avis,  
It myght not long last suilk werre & partis.

þe partis conseile hent, messengers þei chés,  
 Unto þe kýng þei sent, for a finalle pès.  
 At þe last right nede, pèsed behoued it be,  
 So þat ilk man gēde with pes tō his cuntre.

**EDWARD** als so quik toward þe Nørth him sped,  
 þe castelle of Alnewik he tok, & with him led  
 þe gode lord Vescý, þat was so trēw a knýght,  
 To kepe þat seignory he tok tillē on þat mýght.  
 Sir Edward com to London, þer was his fader Henry.  
 On knes he felle to grounde, & praied for the Vescý.  
 þe kýng was fulle curteis, forgaf him ilk a dele,  
 þe lord of Kilyngworth als þat tyme sped wele.  
 His body did þe saue withouten prisoun,  
 His londēs forto haue, he gaf þe kýng raunson.  
 ¶ Right als þis werre was ent, & þe lond in state,  
 þe pape his bulle sent hider vnto þe legate,  
 & comanded him to preche þorgh alle þe lond,  
 þe Sarazins do grete wreche, þe Cristen for to schond.  
 Unto þe kýng of Francē was sent an oþer legate,  
 þat teld him of þat chance, whan Lowýs herd of þat,  
 Himself þe first was croised on his flessch.  
 Forto wend þat pas, his wille was euer fressh.  
 Sir Henry of þis lond was þat ilk wille,  
 His sonne þer to him bōnd, his fader mot leuc stille.  
 Sir Edward tokē þe croice, for his fader to go,  
 Jhesu þou grant him voice, to venge him on þi fo.  
 A þousand tuo hundred mo, & se. . . . . ten,  
 Sir Edward forto go he gadres him doubtý men.

**T**HE next Letenes tide Sir Lowys went his way,  
 No langere wild he bide, for þing þat men mot say,  
 With crles & barouus, with knyghtes gode of plight,  
 Als suilk prince of renoun felle, to haf þorgh right.  
 He hied him fulle gure toward þe Grokis se,  
 þank God his gode fare, whan he schipped suld be.  
 Withouten any hime þe wynde gan him driue  
 Untille þe lond of ' time, & þer he gan vp ariue.  
 þe Sarazins to destroie fulle nobilly he gan,  
 þe Cristendam mot it noie þe dede of suilk a man.  
 \* Long dured he nouht, siben he comen was,  
 Bot þat God wille haf wrouht els his dede, allas!

**T**HE next heruest folowand Edward was fulle gure,  
 Bi Rome he went þat land, with þe pape spak he þare.  
 Siben in Cozile alls þe wyntore he lay,  
 þe somer com in a while, & he went on his way,  
 In þe se sailand to ° time, & whan he com to lond  
 Tipping com him vntime, Sir Lowys dede he fond.  
 þor duelled he no more, till Acres went our kyng,  
 þe Cristen þat þer wore wer suyn of his comyng.  
 Grette folk of Frisland, þat to Acres were comen,  
 Tille him þei were willand, for lord þei alle him nomen.  
 þe oste was sprede fulle wide, about Acres þat lay,  
 Alle pæmie þat tide was in grette affray.

Iter oriel.  
 puit versus  
 coram  
 sanctorum.

' Sic MS. *Rectius*, Tuno, (i.e. Tunes, sive Thouues, ut in Codd. Gall.) \* Mout þ' þrant damage, qe viuer nē þ'auyt, Mort le prist, allas! sa vie

tormiauyt, MSS. Gall. \* *Siu otium & hoc loco MS. nostr. Angl. et Tuno potius legend. Nani. Tunes sive Touna in Codd. Gall.*

Of men of armes bold þe nombre þei ame,  
 A thousand & tuo hundred told of Cristen men bi name.  
 ' þe lond þei suld haf woune þorgh powere þat þei had,  
 Bot if treson had gonne, & þorgh disceit bien lad.  
 Mykelle was þe drede þorgh out paemie,  
 þat Cristendam at nede mot haf suilk cheualrie.  
 þe Soudan was in wehere þe Cristen had suilk oste,  
 Sir Edward's powere ouer alle he dred moste,  
 þerfor day & nyght he was in grete studie,  
 On what manere he myght Edward slo þorgh spie.

De haut  
 assise, locus  
 nobilitatis  
 Inter Sava-  
 ceas, ubi  
 custodiun-  
 tur pueri  
 conjugatio,  
 nec metunt  
 mortem, sed  
 continent  
 semper vi-  
 vere.

**T**HER es a stede of wynde, þei calle it *haut assise*,  
 Men norise childre þer inne, on merveilous wise,  
 Euer in joy & blisse, in alle þat þei may do,  
 þei wene it salle neuer misse, ne oþer dede com to.  
 þei saire right als dos soles, þei doras men þam sauy,  
 þe childir of þo scoles, þei þink to lyue ay.  
 þe Soudan of þo in cloþes of gold him clad,  
 Tille Edward suld he go, & do as þe Soudan bad.  
 A letter þis solo tok, bad him for nesh or hard  
 Jeron suld no man loke, bot only Sir Edward.  
 Eavenomed knyfe he bare also priuely,  
 þat non þer of were ware, who so stod him by.  
 Bi þam self alone in chambir suld þei be,  
 So bad þe Soudone schewe him his priuete.

---

' La terre fu leur wayne | fust la meschaunce, qe les  
 par poer sanz desceit, No | encombrayt, *Gallice*, <sup>a</sup> *Sic*.

“ & whan þou sees leysere, þat he ne perceyue þi witte,  
 “ With þe knyht<sup>1</sup> him to with þe knyfe him to smite.  
 ¶ Comen is þe Sarazin<sup>2</sup> to speke with Sir Edward,  
 Clad in cloþes fyn, himself is a mosard.  
 He said he wild speke with þe kȳng priuely,  
 Conscile non to breke, no telle it alle oñ hy.  
 Sir Edward granted wele, tille his chambre him brouht,  
 Of treson neuer a dele, no þing þer on he þouht.  
 þe letter in his hand laid, enselid & in silke bounde,  
 þe envenomed knyfe out braid, & gaf Edward a wounde.  
 To, I wene, he lauht, als his Romance sais,  
 A trestille Edward rauht, þat heuy was of pais.  
 þe Sarazin so he amois in þe hede with þat treste,  
 þat brāyn & blode alle hote & lgen alle out gan brest.

De vulne-  
 racione  
 Edwardi.

**N**OW for Edward woundes þe Cristen ere sori,  
 þat with in so stoundes ere chances fallen solli.  
 His suglen him tolde, if he suld him saue,  
 & his lif holde, reste behoued him haue.  
 þat was a mischance, þat þer hede down laf,  
 & þe kȳng of France died þat oþer day.  
 A noþer zit more stark, þe pape þat tȳme was dede,  
 & þe patriark þe legate liggis in lede.  
 þe kȳng of Nauer hight his help to Sir Edward,  
 In Cecile þe dede him dight, als he was þiderward.  
 ¶ To God his fader foundes mad his testament,  
 Sir Edward of his woundes was in grete tourment.

---

<sup>1</sup> Sic cum spatio. quodnam | è Gallicis non collig. <sup>2</sup> Sire  
 vero verbum desit: vernaculum, | Edward par ses playes est en  
 grant

After þe Martýnmesse þat he died here,  
 He reigned more ne lesse þan ~~six~~ & fiftý yere.  
 At Westmýnstere he his tounbed richely,  
 In a marble bis of him is mad story.  
 Son þat he was dede God has schewed his life.  
 Edward with his rede in his lyue tok a wise,  
 þe kýnge's doulter of Spayn da Helinore tulle zing.  
 Of hir fairhede was sayn Edward our zong kýng.  
 In Acres of hir is born a mayden childe dunc Jone,  
 Was non fairer biforn of Ing, his als scho one.  
 A þousand & tuo hundred þe date sexti & tuelue  
 Sir Edward help is sundred, o lyue is bot him selue.  
 ¶ þe day of Saynt Edmound, þat martir<sup>1</sup> is & kýng,  
 Sir Henry at Londoun in God land his endýng.  
 þat tyme his sonne Edward was in pæmie,  
 His chance seile þer so hard, þat houn behoued him lie.  
 For alle his help was dede, als I said befor,  
 þis lond behoued haf hede, his heritage in born.  
 þe date of Criste purdrel, þes sele zeas to mene  
 A þousand & tuo hundred sexti & fourtene.

Anno. m.  
 ccmo.  
 lxxxii.

De morte  
 Henrici  
 Regis tertii.

Anno.  
 m. cc.  
 lxxxii.

grant torment, Le Rey Henry  
 son pere ad fet soun testament.  
 Apres le seint Martýn kaunt  
 Maladye luy prent, L. & vi.  
 annz fu Reis eutere ment. Il  
 gist a Wemouster eon tounbe  
 [vel en tounbez] richement,  
 Sachez ke dien [vel deus] pur  
 ly ouer apertement, MSS.  
 Gall.

<sup>1</sup> This is the 20th. of Nov.

but then others (among whom  
 is Rostall) observe, that he died  
 on the day of Saint Edmund  
 archbishop of Canterbury,  
 which is the 16th. of that  
 Month, and this I look upon as  
 the trust account, notwith-  
 standing the former is followed  
 (through mistako) by Dr.  
 Brady, contrary to his own  
 Author Matthew Paris.





00053537





